















ABRIDGED HISTORY

OF THE

UNITED STATES;



REPUBLIC OF AMERICA.

OR,

NEW AND ENLARGED EDITION.

BY EMMA WILLIAMS.

NEW YORK:

PUBLISHED BY A. S. BARNES & CO.

CINCINNATI:—H. W. DERBY & CO.

1850.

E178  
.1  
.W5

LINES TO EXPLAIN THE TITLE VIGNETTE.

In Union's Chain, within its spell,  
FREEDOM and PEACE and SAFETY dwell;  
Nor Lion Force, nor Serpent Guile,  
Shall harm the blessed Maids the while.

CITY OF NEW BEDFORD, MASS.,  
*January 15, 1850.*

At a meeting of the SCHOOL COMMITTEE, held this evening, it was  
*Voted*, That "WILLARD'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED  
STATES," be introduced into the High School, and the several Gram-  
mar Schools in the City.

WILLIAM HOWE, SECRETARY.

9800

---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1849,

By A. S. BARNES & CO.,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of  
New York.

---

---

F. C. GUTIERREZ,  
PRINTER,

Cor. John and Dutch-streets, N. Y.

---

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE leading objects of the author of this work, have been to give the events of the history with clearness and accuracy ; with such illustrations of time and place addressed to the eye, as shall secure their retention in the memory ; and, at the same time, with such an order of arrangement, as will enable the mind to recall, at need, what it thus retains. This we regard as important, not only with respect to this particular study ; but as rightly laying out the ground-plan of the intellect, so far as the whole range of history is concerned. We have endeavoured to make the book convenient,—by side notes with dates,—by numbered paragraphs of suitable length for reading classes,—and by questions on each paragraph, placed at the bottom of the page. These questions are so put, that youthful teachers may avail themselves of the author's long experience, to acquire a manner of questioning, which, while it is not obscure, will yet oblige the pupil to think, and which will bring into relief prominent points.

We have, indeed, been desirous to cultivate the memory, the intellect, and the taste. But much more anxious have we been to sow the seeds of virtue, by showing the good in such amiable lights, that the youthful heart shall kindle into desires of imitation. And we have been careful to give clear conceptions of those deeds, which are proper to imitate ; while with regard to bad actions, we have, as far as possible, given the result, rather than the detail.

There are those, who rashly speak, as if in despair of the fortunes of our republic ; because, say they, political virtue has declined. If so, then is there the more need to infuse patriotism into the breasts of the coming generation. And what is so likely to effect this national self-preservation, as to give our children, for their daily reading and study, such a record of the sublime virtues of the worthies of our earliest day,—and of Washington and his compatriots, as shall leave its due impress ? And what but the study of their dangers and toils,—their devotion of life and fortune, can make our posterity know, what our country, and our liberties have cost ? And what but the History of our peculiar, and complicated fabric of government, by which, it may be examined, as piece by piece the structure was built up, can impart such a knowledge of the powers it gives, and the duties it enjoins, as shall enable our future citizens, to become its enlightened and judicious supporters ?

*Hartford, Conn.*



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## INTRODUCTION.

Chapter.	Page
I. Definitions, &c. . . . .	13
II. The Aborigines, . . . . .	16

## PART I.

PERIOD	I. First Discovery—Columbus, &c. . . . .	21
I.	II. English Discoveries—French, . . . . .	24
1492.	III. Spanish Discoveries, Adventures and Cruelties—St. Augustine, . . . . .	27

PERIOD	I. Unsuccessful attempt of Gilbert, Raleigh, and others, . . . . .	33
II.	II. First settlement of Virginia, . . . . .	38
1578.	III. Early settlement of Virginia—continued, . . . . .	42
	IV. Virginia—Hudson river—Canada, . . . . .	45

PERIOD	I. Departure of the Pilgrims from England and their sojourn in Holland, . . . . .	51
III.	II. Progress of the Pilgrims from Holland to America, . . . . .	55
1620.	III. The Savages—Massasoit's Alliance—Winslow's Visit to the Pokanokets, . . . . .	58
	IV. Grand Council of Plymouth—New Hampshire—Massachusetts Bay, . . . . .	61
	V. The Colony of Massachusetts Bay, . . . . .	63
	VI. Rhode Island and its Founder, . . . . .	65
	VII. Connecticut and its Founders, . . . . .	68
	VIII. The Pequod War, . . . . .	72
	IX. Intolerance of the times—Anne Hutchinson, R. Island . . . . .	75
	X. Maryland—Virginia from 1631 to 1641, . . . . .	78
	XI. Massachusetts threatened—the Puritans in England—Vane—UNION BEGUN, . . . . .	81

## PART II.

	Chapter.	Page.
PERIOD I. 1643.	I. Virginia—Second Indian Massacre—Bacon's Rebellion, 87	
	II. New York settled by the Dutch—taken by the English, 92	
	III. Pennsylvania and its Founder, . . . . . 95	
	IV. New Jersey—its settlement, and various claimants, . 99	
	V. Miantonomoh—Rhode Island and Connecticut obtain Charters—Elliot, the Apostle of the Indians, 101	
	VI. King Philip's War—Destruction of the Narragansetts and Pokanokets, . . . . . 104	
	VII. The Regicides—New Hampshire and Maine—Charter of Massachusetts annulled, . . . . . 108	
	VIII. New York—its Governors—Leisler—Quakers in Mas- sachusetts, . . . . . 112	
	IX. Jesuit Missionaries of France—their Discoveries, - 115	
	X. North and South Carolina—The Great Patent—Mr. Locke's Constitution, . . . . . 120	
	XI. French and Indian War, . . . . . 122	
<hr/>		
PERIOD II. 1692.	I. Sir William Phipps—Cotton Mather—Salem Witch- craft—Schools—Yale College, . . . . . 127	
	II. European Politics—Peace of Ryswick, which closes King William's War—Queen Anne's War soon begins, . . . . . 130	
	III. Fletcher—Piracy—The Jerseys united, and joined with New York, . . . . . 133	
	IV. Pennsylvania—Penn's second visit—Maryland, - 135	
	V. The Huguenots—War with the Spaniards—Tuscaro- ras and Yamassees, . . . . . 136	
	VI. Extension of the French Empire—New France, - 140	
	VII. Controversy in Massachusetts, respecting a fixed salary for the royal governor, . . . . . 141	
<hr/>		
PERIOD III. 1733.	I. Georgia and Carolina engaged in war with the Spa- niards of Florida—The Slave Trade—War of the French with the Chickasaws, . . . . . 147	
	II. Old French War—Capture of Louisburg—French and English claims to the basin of the Mississippi, - 150	
	III. George Washington—his birth, parentage, and educa- tion—his conduct in places of trust, private and public, . . . . . 153	

Chapter.	Page.
IV. Congress at Albany—Convention of governors in Virginia—Braddock, . . . .	157
V. Remainder of the Campaign of 1755—Campaign of 1756,	161
VI. Campaigns of 1757 and 1758, . . . .	163
VII. The Campaign of 1759—Wolfe, . . . .	166
VIII. Wars with the Indians, . . . .	170

**PART III.**

PERIOD I. <b>1763.</b> <i>Ten years</i>	I. Causes of the Revolutionary War, . . . .	175
	II. Congress at New York—Repeal of the Stamp Act,	179
	III. Second attempt to tax America—Opposition, . . . .	182
	IV. Seizure of Tea—Boston Port Bill—Arrival of British Troops, . . . .	186
	V. Congress at Philadelphia, . . . .	188
	VI. War approaches—Massachusetts—British Parliament,	190
	VII. The War begins by the Battle of Lexington, . . . .	193
	VIII. Battle of Bunker Hill—Washington commander-in-chief, . . . .	196
	IX. Invasion of Canada—Death of Montgomery, . . . .	199
	X. Washington enters Boston—Disasters in Canada, . . . .	203

PERIOD II. <b>1776.</b>	I. Lord Howe attempts pacification—American defeat at Long Island, . . . .	209
	II. Disasters following the defeat on Long Island, . . . .	212
	III. American successes at Trenton and Princeton, . . . .	216
	IV. Difficulties and exertions of Congress—Campaign of 1777, . . . .	218
	V. Burgoyne's Invasion,—1777, . . . .	220
	VI. Battle of Brandywine—British in Philadelphia—German town,—1777, . . . .	224
	VII. Battle of Monmouth—Seat of War transferred to the South,—1778, . . . .	229
	VIII. Campaigns of 1779 and 1780—the British conquer the South, . . . .	232
	IX. Arnold's Treason, . . . .	237
	X. Robert Morris—Revolt of the Pennsylvania Line—Cornwallis at the South, . . . .	241
	XI. Campaign of 1781—Battle of Eutaw Springs—Cornwallis taken at Yorktown, . . . .	243

Chapter.	Page.
XII. Vermont—Measures of Peace—Fears and Discontents of the Army happily quieted, - - -	248
XIII. Depression subsequent to the War—Shays' Rebellion —Constitution formed, - - -	251

## PART IV.

PERIOD I. <b>1789.</b>	I. Organization of the New Government—The Funding System—Party lines strongly drawn, -	257
	II. The Moravians—The Indians of the North West, -	260
	III. America resents the indignities of France—Adams's Administration—Jefferson's, - - -	266

PERIOD II. <b>1803.</b>	I. War with Tripoli—Troubles with England and France, -	273
	II. War of 1812—Condition of the Country—Hull's Sur- render, - - - - -	279
	III. Naval Successes, - - - - -	282
	IV. Campaign of 1813—Massacre of Frenchtown, -	285
	V. Northern Army—Loss of the Chesapeake—Creek War, - - - - -	289
	VI. The Niagara Frontier—Battles of Chippewa and Bridgewater, - - - - -	291
	VII. Washington taken by the British—Baltimore threat- ened, - - - - -	295
	VIII. British invasion and defeat at New Orleans, -	300
	IX. Peace with England—Naval combats—War with Al- giers, - - - - -	302
	X. Internal Improvements—Seminole War, - - -	305

PERIOD III. <b>1820.</b>	I. The Missouri Question—The Tariff—Gen. Lafayette's Visit, - - - - -	311
	II. Black Hawk's War—The Cholera—Nullification, -	315
	III. The Aboriginal Tribes of the Mississippi go to the Far West—The Florida War, - - - - -	319
	IV. The Bank Question—The Revulsion.—Van Buren's Administration—Harrison's Election and Death. -	324
	V. Mr. Tyler's Administration—Mobs—Disturbances in Rhode Island-- Anti-Rentism—Mormonism, &c. -	328

Chapter.	Page.
VI. Texas—Mexico—Causes of Annexation and the Mexican War, - - - -	333
VII. Mexican War—Army of Occupation, - - -	343
VIII. Army of the Centre—General Wool's march—Battle of Buena Vista, - - - -	351
IX. Army of the West—Conquest of New Mexico and California, - - - -	357
X. Doniphan's Expedition to Chihuahua—Revolt in New Mexico, - - - -	362
XI. Scott's Invasion—Vera Cruz—Cerro Gordo, -	365
XII. State of the Army—Its march—Contreras—Churubusco, - - - -	369
XIII. Armistice—Molinos del Rey—Chapultepec—Mexico,	374
XIV. Puebla—Huamantla—Atlixco—Treaty of Peace—Conclusion, - - - -	379

---

## APPENDIX.

American California, - - - -	387
------------------------------	-----

THE  
STUDY OF AMERICAN HISTORY,

INTRODUCED BY  
TEACHING THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

---

1. THE large painted chronographer, prepared to accompany this work, is to be hung in full view of the class, and the teacher furnished with a pointing rod about four feet in length, black at the end, as the paper of the chronographer is white.

2. *The proper use of the pointer constitutes an intelligible language addressed to the eye.* Therefore, the person using it should use it significantly, and never otherwise, and should always point in the same manner when he means the same thing.

3. In teaching the chronographer, when the person pointing has occasion to refer to a simple date, which is a point of time, let him carry the pointer directly to that point, and, without zigzag motions, rest it there while he has occasion to speak of that date or epoch. But if he is speaking of a period of time between two dates or epochs, as, for example, of Period I., let him carry the pointer directly to the earliest date (1492), and then move it slowly, and without wavering, over Period I., stopping exactly at its close (1578); always, in such cases, carrying the pointer with the course of time—that is, from left to right.

4. Whenever the teacher is using the pointer, to teach the chronographer, the pupil must give his eye, his ear, and his mind ; and then the chronographer will, by a mysterious process of the mind, be formed within, and become a part of the mind of every attentive scholar—where he may, ever after, have the plan, and read the principal dates of his country's chronology. But in order to have the internal chronographer perfect, it is necessary to observe attentively, and to learn patiently, at various times and in repeated lessons, the different parts of the one presented to the eye.

5. As success, in this case, depends on the class fixing their eyes on the chronographer, with the desire to learn it, short and lively lessons, in which the class shall be questioned as the teacher points, and in which all answer together, will be much better than long and dull ones.

6. Some explanations of the chronographer will, however, be needed. They will be given here, in connexion with questions and instructions on the general subject of chronology.

#### CHRONOGRAPHER EXPLAINED.

7. The word *chronographer* literally signifies something which delineates time. It is composed of two Greek words—*chronos*, time, and *grapho*, to delineate.

8. The picture presented is a chronographer of American history, because it refers to that history only. It is divided into two parts. The *outer part* is composed of several circular lines, the whole of which, taken together, make up what is here called the *circle of time*. It represents the whole time of the American history ; that is, the complete succession of years from the discovery of America in 1492, to the present day.

9. The *inner part* of the chronographer is called the *historic tree*. The *four large limbs* of this tree represent the four



parts into which the history is divided. *The branches* of these limbs represent epochs of the history. The body and limbs of the tree are painted wood colour, and the branches are painted green.

10. An epoch is an important event in any history, which, having happened on some certain day, or in some one year, is regarded but as a point in time. These branches, then, which represent the epochs, *meet the circle of time in certain points.*

11. In mathematics, the place where one line meets another is called a point. Points may divide a line : so we suppose *our circular line of time to be divided, by these points or epochs, into periods.* The word *epoch* marks the exact time at which any event of history may have happened ; and the word *period* is here used to denote an unbroken succession of years, whether few or many.

12. To avoid confusion, remark here, that each of the four parts of the history has one more epoch than period ; for example, Part I. has four epochs and three periods. It of course has four branches, and three spaces between them. Parts II. and IV. have also each four branches and three spaces. Part III. has three epochs and two periods. The reason of this is, that the same epoch is used for the end of one period and the beginning of another.

#### CIRCLE OF TIME.—LINE OF CENTURIES.

13. The outer circumference of the circle of time is the *line of centuries.* It represents the three centuries and a half into which the American history is divided. A century is a hundred years.

14. All Christian countries reckon time from the birth of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, which is called the Christian era, or great Christian epoch. In 1850, there will have been just eighteen centuries and a half from that point



of time. During nearly fifteen of those centuries, America was unknown to the people of Europe, from whom we are descended.

15. This continent was discovered in 1492, eight years before the close of the 15th century. Tracing, then, on the chronographer, from 1492 to 1500, we find eight years only belonging to the 15th century. From 1500 to 1600 is the whole of the 16th century; from 1600 to 1700, the 17th century; from 1700 to 1800, the 18th century; and from 1800 to the *present day*, is nearly half of the 19th century: so that the whole course of American history is about three centuries and a half. It was exactly three centuries and a half in the year 1842.

16. Since the end of the year 1800, we have lived in the 19th century: so, young persons past eighteen are said to be in their nineteenth year. When the year 1800 had passed, then *eighteen centuries* were completed from the birth of our Saviour, and the time since, and now going on, belongs to the 19th century, and will belong to it till the year 1900 is completed.

17. Some persons have disputed whether the dates which make exact hundreds, such as 1700 and 1800, belong to the 17th and 18th centuries. They say, "As 1701 belongs to the 18th century, why should not 1700 also?" Now, to make this matter plain, let us go back to the 1st century.

*Teacher.* Would 99 years make a century?

*Class.* Ninety-nine years would not make a century.

*Teacher.* When would the 1st century be completed?

*Class.* The 1st century would be completed at the end of the 100th year.

*Teacher.* Would 199 years make two centuries?

*Class.* One hundred and ninety-nine years would not make two centuries.

*Teacher.* What year must be added to make two centuries?

*Class.* The 200th year must be added to make up the two centuries.

*Teacher.* To what century does the date 100 belong ?

*Class.* To the 1st century, since that century is not completed till the *end* of the year 100.

*Teacher.* To what century does the date 101 belong ?

*Class.* To the 2d century.

*Teacher.* To what century does the date 300 belong ?

*Class.* To the 3d ; for the 3d is only *completed* at the close of this year.

*Teacher.* To what century does the date 1700 belong ?

*Class.* To the 17th.

*Teacher.* To what century does the date 1845 belong ?

*Class.* To the 19th century.

*Teacher.* You now understand that any date in a century belongs to a century one higher than the *hundreds* which express the date—excepting only those dates which are expressed by exact hundreds. Thus, 1704 belongs to the 18th century ; 1825 to the 19th ; while 1700 belongs to the 17th century, and 1800 to the 18th.

18. *Teacher.* The graduated part of the circle of time is called the *scale of years*. This is first divided, as you see, by alternate light and shade, into *tens of years*. Then, by black lines through the light tens, and white ones through the black tens, the whole scale is divided into years : so that, having any given date, you can at once refer it, on the chronographer, to its proper place. For example, suppose I ask you, where, on the circle of time, is the place of King Philip's war, which occurred in 1675 ? First, look for the large figures which denote the centuries, until the eye catches **1600** : then trace along to the right, through 70, until you reach 75.

## HISTORIC TREE.

19. The first large limb of the historic tree represents Part I. of the history. Observe the points of intersection of the first and fourth branches with the graduated circle of time. The first point is at 1492, the epoch of the discovery of America by Columbus; and the fourth is 1643, when the first *Confederacy* or *Union* took place. This is an important epoch, as it marks the time when several colonies confederated together, thus laying the foundation of our great Federal Republic.

20. This **FIRST PART**, then, extends from 1492 to 1643. Its subject, as you read just above the scale of years, is, **THE DISCOVERY AND EARLY SETTLEMENT** of the different parts of the country. It occupies, as you see, a century and a half, viz., eight years of the 15th century, the whole of the 16th, and nearly half of the 17th. It extends through a longer time than either of the other parts of the history. There are, however, fewer events in it for the historian to notice.

21. The **SECOND PART**, as you perceive from the points of intersection of the extreme branches, extends from 1643, the epoch of the beginning of the confederacy, to 1763, the close of the French war. Previously to this war, the English had the government over what has since been called the United States. By the war they gained dominion over Canada also—taking it from the French, who had discovered and settled that country. The Second Part of the history, as you see by the graduated circle, occupies 120 years. It embraces the last half of the 17th century, and the first part of the 18th. When we speak by centuries, we do not pretend to be perfectly accurate. The subject of the Second Part is, **COLONIZATION—FRENCH AND INDIAN WARS**: that is, the colonization of this country by the English, and

the wars which our hardy and suffering forefathers had with the natives and the French of Canada.

22. The **THIRD PART** of the history is shorter in time than either of the others, comprising only 26 years in the last half of the 18th century. Interesting events in this part of the history are more numerous than in either of the other parts. Its subject is, **THE REVOLUTION**—in which the Americans, having been oppressed by the British Government, fought the troops which they sent over, and, under the command of Washington, defeated them, and made the United States of America a free and independent nation. The epoch to which this part extends, is the adoption of the present constitution of the United States—1789.

23. The **FOURTH PART** extends from the adoption of the constitution to the present time. It comprises, to now, in 1845, fifty-six years—the whole time of our *free constitutional Government*. It occupies the last portion of the 18th century, and what is passed of the 19th.

#### GENERAL REMARKS.

24. The pupils, having now learned the general plan of the chronographer, will be able to answer questions from it; and while the class are studying the book, the teacher should give them some exercises every day.

25. To acquire our system of chronology, the description of the chronographer should not only be well learned, but the attention of the pupils should be called to it during every recitation, by requiring them to show to what part of the plan given, dated events belong.

26. In regard to Geography, as connected with History, it is no less important that the association of the event, with the visible representation of its place on the map, should be strongly made. Hence, the pupils should always be required to trace on their maps the routes of navigators,

armies, &c., and to show the locations of cities and battle-fields. The best of all plans in this respect is, for pupils to draw for themselves, on slates or blackboards, sketches of the countries of which they study, putting down the places mentioned in their lessons.

27. The drawing of the chronographer is also recommended. After the study of a period is completed, let the pupil draw the part of the circle of time belonging to that period. When he has studied a Part, let him delineate that Part on the circle of time : and so on, till he learns to draw the whole circle without a model. Having done this, let him connect with it the Historic Tree, whose branches, like so many indexes, or hands of a clock, point to the time of the epochs which they represent.

28. The teacher of this work may, by reading a copy of the author's larger History on the same plan, be able to relate to his class enlarged details and interesting anecdotes of the characters herein named, of which the limits of this book did not allow the insertion. Such incidents not only instruct, but they make scholars love the class-room, and give them confidence in the knowledge of their teacher. One important office of the common-school library, is to put such books into the instructor's hands as shall aid him in giving his pupils more enlarged views of their subjects of study.



92

87 Longitude 82 West from 77 Greenwich 72

50

MAP N<sup>o</sup> 1.WANDERINGS & LOCATIONS  
OF THE  
ABORIGINES.

45

40

35

30

25

Chippeways

Sacs and  
Foxes

Menomones

Ottawas

MIAMIS

HURONS

Senecas

Onondagas

Oneidas

Mohawks

Mohicans

Pawtuckets

Massachusetts

Pocanokets

Montaup

Kickapoos

Winnebagoes

Pottawatomies

Shawanees

Delawares

Iroquois

Tuscaroras

Catawbas

Lenape

Mohicans

Pawtuckets

Massachusetts

Pocanokets

Montaup

Iroquois

Tuscaroras

Catawbas

Lenape

Mohicans

Pawtuckets

Massachusetts

Pocanokets

Montaup

MENGWE  
OR  
IROQUOIS

Lenape

and IROQUOIS

unite and conquer

the

ALLEGEWI

CHEROKEES

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shawanees

1740

Chickasaws

Choctaws

NATCHEZ

MOBILIAN

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shawanees

1740

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Chickasaws

Choctaws

NATCHEZ

MOBILIAN

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shawanees

1740

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Chickasaws

Choctaws

NATCHEZ

MOBILIAN

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shawanees

1740

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Chickasaws

Choctaws

NATCHEZ

MOBILIAN

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shawanees

1740

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Chickasaws

Choctaws

NATCHEZ

MOBILIAN

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shawanees

1740

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Chickasaws

Choctaws

NATCHEZ

MOBILIAN

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shawanees

1740

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Chickasaws

Choctaws

NATCHEZ

MOBILIAN

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shawanees

1740

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Chickasaws

Choctaws

NATCHEZ

MOBILIAN

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shawanees

1740

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Chickasaws

Choctaws

NATCHEZ

MOBILIAN

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shawanees

1740

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Chickasaws

Choctaws

NATCHEZ

MOBILIAN

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shawanees

1740

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Chickasaws

Choctaws

NATCHEZ

MOBILIAN

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shawanees

1740

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Chickasaws

Choctaws

NATCHEZ

MOBILIAN

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shawanees

1740

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Chickasaws

Choctaws

NATCHEZ

MOBILIAN

Upper  
CreeksLower  
Creeks

Shawanees

Seminole

Yamacas

Catawbas

Nonesuch

Tuscaroras

Powhatans

30 Tribes

Manahoacks

Monsieus

Delawares

1770

Shaw



Smith showing his Compass.

## INTRODUCTION.

### CHAPTER I.

#### Definitions, &c.

1. THE subject of this work is the United States of CHAP. I  
America; or, as those States are sometimes called, the Subject.  
Republic or Nation of America.

What constitutes a nation? First, there must be a country, with the natural divisions of land and water; second, there must be men, women, and children to inhabit that country; and third, those inhabitants must be bound together in one, by living under a common government, which extends its protection over all, and which all are bound to obey. Its triple division.

2. To every nation there belongs a *history*: For whenever the inhabitants of any large portion of the earth are united under one government, *important public events* must there have taken place. *The record of these events* constitutes the history of that country.

3. The events of history should always be recorded, with the circumstances of *time* and *place*. To tell *when* events happened, is to give their chronology; to Any nation's history.

1. What is the subject of this work? What three parts compose a nation?—2. What constitutes any nation's history? 3. How should events be recorded? What is it to give their chronology?

CH. I. tell *where* they happened, their geography. The history of a nation, is therefore inseparably connected with its geography and chronology. Indeed chronology may properly be called the skeleton of history; but geography is the base on which it stands.

Connect-  
ed with  
its geog.  
and  
chron.

Where  
our  
country  
is.

4. First, let us inquire, where is the country, of which we desire to know the history? In the vast universe, is a system of planets surrounding a sun, hence called the solar system. The third planet from the sun is called the earth. On the earth's surface, the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA occupies a northern portion of the smaller of two continents. In extent, it is one of the largest nations of the world.

Its lati-  
tude and  
longi-  
tude.

Its cli-  
mate.

5. In longitude, the Republic of America ranges through sixty degrees, from the Atlantic ocean to the Pacific. In latitude, it reaches from the Cape of Florida, in north latitude twenty-five degrees, to British and Russian America in about fifty. Thus stretching through the greater part of the northern temperate zone, it includes every variety of climate, from the hot unhealthy swamps of Florida, to the cold mountainous regions of northern New England, and the north-western territories.

Soil.

Natural  
advan-  
tages.

6. The soil and productions of our country are as various as its climate. Compared with other countries, it contains a large proportion of arable land; and what is of the utmost consequence to the accommodation of man, it is *well watered*. On the whole, it may be pronounced, one of the most fertile, healthy, and desirable regions of the earth.

A good  
region  
for one  
nation.

7. In observing the United States, there is much to convince us, that an Almighty, Overruling Providence, designed from the first, to place here a great, united

---

3. Their geography? Are chronology and geography connected with history?—4. In regard to the universe where, as astronomy teaches, are the United States? In regard to the earth's surface, or as regards geography, where is this country? What can you say of its extent?—5. What of its longitude? Of its latitude? Climate?—6. Soil and productions? Its natural advantages generally?—7. Does this region, seem designed for one great nation, or several small ones?



people. Although this country, being one nation, is by means of its mighty rivers, well enabled to carry its inland productions to the ocean, and thence to foreign markets ; yet, if it were divided, like southern Europe, into different nations, this would not be the case.

CH. 1.

8. For this country is not, like southern Europe, indented with deep bays, gulfs, seas, and channels ; whereby many small nations, can each be accommodated with a portion of the sea-board. If our long rivers were owned in part by one government, and in part by another, the commerce of the inland nations, would be perpetually hampered, by those who owned the sea-board, and the mouths of the rivers. For they would be likely to insist on being paid for the use of their ports ; and this would naturally breed quarrels and blood-shed. This is one reason among many, to show that the American people should continue to be ONE NATION ; and, in the words of Washington, "frown indignantly on the first attempt to sever the union."

One necessary evil of division.

9. The government of this vast nation, which now contains more than seventeen millions of inhabitants, is a **FEDERATIVE REPUBLIC**. It is *federative*, because in it there are several separate, independent states, confederated under one head, or general government. It is *a republic*, because the rulers are chosen by the people. The manner in which they are to be chosen, and in which they are bound to administer the government, is set forth in the **CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES**. This therefore, should be early learned, and thoroughly understood by every American.

The Am. government made for all.

Should be understood by all.

10. The government of the United States is acknowledged by the wise and good of other nations, to be the most free, impartial, and righteous government

It is equitable and should be sustained

7. Why is it in regard to commerce better for one than for several ? What part of the world admits of several small nations, and why ? — 8. Mention one among many evils, which would result from dividing this nation into several smaller ones ? What is the language of Washington on this subject ? — 9. How many inhabitants has the United States ? What is its form of government ? Why federative ? Why a republic ? Where can we learn the form of government ? — 10. What is the character of this government ?

CH. II. of the world; but all agree, that for such a government to be sustained many years, the principles of truth and righteousness, taught in the Holy Scriptures must be practised. *The rulers must govern in the fear of God, and the people obey the laws.*

## CHAPTER II.

### The Aborigines.

1. BEFORE the territory of which our history treats, was inhabited by the ancestors of its present inhabitants, it was occupied by another and a different race. The red men. The red men were here, when the European settlers came; and either as friends or as enemies, for a time they dwelt contiguous to each other, and their history is blended.

2. The aborigines, or natives of the country, were by the Europeans, called Indians. As found by the earliest settlers, they may be considered under three general divisions. First, the DELAWARES or ALGONQUINS; second, the IROQUOIS, and third, the MOBILIANS. The first occupants.

3. The Delawares, or Algonquins, were formerly called the *Lenni Lenape*, and the Iroquois the *Mengwe*. They have a tradition that, in ancient times, each came, though in somewhat different directions, from far distant western regions. Happening to meet as they approached the Mississippi, they united, and made war upon the Allegewi, a more civilized people, who inhabited the great valley of the Mississippi, and dwelt in cities. The *Allegewi* were defeated and fled down the river. Perhaps the Mobilian tribes were their de-

Three grand divisions  
Traditions of the Delaware and Iroquois.

10. What is necessary to its being permanently sustained?

CHAPTER II. — 2. What term is used to distinguish the race found in this country by our ancestors? What three general divisions of them? — 3. Give an account of the tradition of the two former, respecting the direction from which they anciently came. Where did they unite? What more civilized nation did they find? What happened to this nation?

scendants. Perhaps portions of them went still further south, and were the builders of those cities, the ruins of which, have lately been found in Central America. CH. II.

4. The Lenape and Mengwe, says the tradition, soon divided. The former crossed the Alleghany mountains, explored, and took possession of the sea coast, fixing their chief place of council, or seat of government, on the Delaware river. This river received from a European nobleman the name, which it communicated to the Indian confederacy. As this confederacy increased in numbers, various tribes went off from the parent stock. But they still looked up to the Delawares, and gave them, long after, the reverential title of "grand-father." Del. River the principal seat of the Delawares.

5. Of these branches of the Delaware or Algonquin race, the first who figure in the early history of our nation, were the POWHATANS, a confederacy of thirty tribes; so called from their great sachem, Powhatan. His principal residence was on James river, near the site of Richmond. His authority extended throughout the lowlands, and to the falls of the rivers. Powhatans—thirty tribes.

6. Farther west, and extending to the mountains, were two confederacies, with whom the Powhatans were at war: the *Manahoacks*, consisting of eight tribes on the north, and the *Monacans* of five, stretching southerly into Carolina. Afterwards the latter changed their name, to that of *Tuscaroras*, removed northerly, and joined the Iroquois. The *Yamasees* were in South Carolina. Manahoacks—eight tribes.  
Monacans—five tribes.

#### 7. *The Algonquins of New England* next find place

3. What conjectures may be formed respecting their descendants? — 4. According to the tradition what course did the Lenape take? Where fix their place of council? When they became numerous what became of the various tribes of their descendants? What were their sentiments and language towards the Delawares? Trace out the course of the Delawares on Map I.—5. Which of them are first brought into notice? What the number of tribes? Their principal seat? How far did their limits extend? — 6. Give an account of the Manahoacs? Of the Monacans? Tell from Map I, which is the most northerly, the Manahoacs or Monocans. Where were the Catawbass? The Yamasees?

CH. II. in our history. The first known, were the *Pokanokets* or *Wanpanoags*, which produced the two most remarkable savage chiefs of New England, the good Massasoit, and his valiant son, King Philip. Their residence was at *Montaup* or Mount Hope, near Bristol, in Rhode Island.

The first  
N. E.  
tribe  
known to  
English.

8. The government of the sachem extended over the southern part of Massachusetts, and the eastern of Rhode Island. A number of tribes of different names were his subjects; among others the Nausets of Cape Cod. In 1614, Capt. Hunt, an English ship-master, who accompanied Capt. Smith in exploring the coast, wickedly seized and carried off twenty-seven of these unoffending natives, and sold them in Europe as slaves. One of them, named Tisquantum, found his way to England, where he learned the English language, was kindly treated, and sent back to his country. He was afterwards of great service to the first English settlers, as interpreter.

1614.

Ill  
usage of  
the na-  
tives by  
the En-  
glish.

Indians  
of the  
Merrimack.

Of Mas-  
sachusetts  
Bay.

9. The PAWTUCKETS made their principal seat upon the Merrimack, near its mouth, and extended themselves south, until they met the territories of the Massachusetts. The MASSACHUSETTS were scattered about the bay, which bears their name. Their territories extended to the Pawtuckets on the north, and the Pokanokets on the south. The authority of their chief sachem was acknowledged by several minor tribes, some of whom resided as far west as Deerfield. The principal person of this confederacy, as found by the English, was the squaw sachem, or "Massachusetts Queen." Her residence was beautifully located on a hill at Milton, eight miles south of Boston.

10. The NARRAGANSETTS held their chief seat and the residence of their grand sachem on the island of

---

7. Learn from the Map what are the principal tribes of New England, and more particularly from the book, the location of the Pokanokets. What noted chiefs were there of this tribe? — 8. What wicked act did an English captain do? To what Indians? Did any one taken away return? — 9. What can you say of the Pawtuckets? Of the Massachusetts? Their principal person? Her residence?

Canonicut, in the bay which still bears their name.— Westerly they extended to within four or five miles of the Paucatuck river, where their territories met those of the Pequods. On the east they joined the Pokanokets. Their grand chief, Canonicus, was, when the English arrived, an aged man; and he had associated with him in his government, his nephew, Miantonomoh. The commodious and pleasant location of the Narragansetts, appears in their case, to have abated the natural ferocity of the savage character.

CH. II.

Indians  
of Nar-  
ragansett  
Bay.

11. The more barbarous PEQUODS occupied the eastern portion of Connecticut, their lands meeting those of the Narragansetts. The residence of their great sachem, Sassacus, was on the heights of Groton, near the river then called the Pequod, since, the Thames. The Mohegans, under Uncas, whose seat was where Norwich now stands, were subject to the haughty chief of the Pequods; but they bore his yoke with impatience, and when he made war upon the whites, Uncas took part against him. The Indians of northern New England had the general appellation of *Taranteens* or *Abenakis*.

Of east  
ern Con-  
necticut

12. The New England tribes had, a short time previous to the settlement of the English, suffered a plague of unexampled mortality. It was probably the yellow fever; for we are told that its victims, both before and after death, "were of the color of a yellow garment." Not less than nine-tenths of the inhabitants seem, in some parts of the country, to have been destroyed. Thus Divine Providence prepared the way for another and more civilized race.

Plague  
among  
the abo-  
rigines.

13. The IROQUOIS, Mengwe or Mingoes, were found by the earliest settlers in Canada, inhabiting the shores of the St. Lawrence. At first they appear to have been

---

10. Give an account of the location of the Narragansetts?— Their grand chief? His associate? The effects of their position on their character?— 11. Describe the position of the Pequods. Their sachem's name and place of residence. That of the Mohegan sachem.— 12. What remarkable visitation of Providence occurred among the natives a short time before the English came? How great a proportion were destroyed?— 13. How were the Iroquois found by the discoverers of Canada?



CH. II. less warlike, than the Hurons or Wyandots, by whom they were attacked. The Iroquois were driven by them, from the banks of the St. Lawrence; and dividing into five tribes, the Senecas, Cayugas, Onondagas, Oneidas and Mohawks, they spread themselves by degrees, east of Lake Erie, and south of Ontario, along the romantic waters of northern New York, to which they have left their bold and harmonious names. The place of their grand general council, or congress of chiefs, was at Onondaga.

The  
Five  
Nations  
in west-  
ern New  
York.

Become  
very  
powerful

14. Here they made a stand, and became the most fearless, subtle, and powerful of savages. They conquered the Hurons, fought the Delawares, and put in fear all the surrounding tribes. Finally, in the contests between France and England, they were courted by both parties as allies, and dreaded by both as foes. Of the FIVE NATIONS, the Mohawks were the most warlike. Their chief seat was at Johnstown, on the beautiful river, which still bears their name.

Powerful  
southern  
confeder-  
acies.

15. Of the Mobilians, the most extensive and powerful confederacies were the CREEKS, situated mostly in Georgia; the CHEROKEES in the mountainous region north and west; and the CHOCTAWS and CHICKASAWS, nearer to the Mississippi.

16. The NATCHEZ have excited much interest on account of the difference of their language from that of the surrounding tribes. Natchez, on the Mississippi, marks their location. The SHAWANESE, the native tribe of Tecumseh, once resided on the banks of the Suwaney river in Florida. From thence they migrated northward, first to Pennsylvania, and afterwards to Ohio.

---

13. To what place did they change their location? What were the names of each of the Five Nations? Where was their general council held? — 14. What character did they now assume? What nations contend with? By what nations was their alliance courted? Which tribe was the most warlike? — Where was its principal seat? Learn from the map the location of the Mobilian tribes. — 15. Which were the most extensive and powerful? Which are the most northerly? Which are partly in Georgia? — 16. Which near the Mississippi? Where are the Shawanese? Which tribe has a language by itself?

# PART I.

---

FROM 1492 TO 1643.

---



Return of Columbus.

## PERIOD I.

FROM  
 THE DISCOVERY OF } **1492** { AMERICA BY COLUMBUS,  
 TO  
 THE FIRST PATENT GRANTED } **1578.** { LANDS IN AMERICA—GIVEN BY Q.  
 BY AN ENGLISH SOVEREIGN TO } ELIZABETH TO SIR H. GILBERT.

### CHAPTER I.

First Discovery—Columbus, &c.

1. THOUSANDS of years had elapsed since the creation of the world, and the inhabitants of the eastern hemisphere were yet ignorant, that, on the face of the planet, which they inhabited, was another continent of nearly equal extent. Nor did they become acquainted with this fact by any fortunate accident; but they owed its proof, to the penetration and persevering efforts of a man, as extraordinary as the discovery which he made.

P.T. I.

P.D. I.  
 CH. I.

Former  
 ages ig-  
 norant of  
 geogra-  
 phy.

1. What did the people of the eastern hemisphere know about this continent three hundred and fifty years ago? Did they learn its existence by accident?

P'T.I.

P'D. I.

CH. I.

1447.

Birth  
and rare  
talents of  
Colum-  
bus.

2. This was CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS, a native of Genoa, born in 1447. He possessed all those energetic impulses of the soul which lead to high achievement; and, with these he combined judgment the most grave and solid, prudence and patience the most steady and unoffending, piety the most devout, and, what ensured his success, the most untiring perseverance ever manifested by man.

3. Columbus had married the daughter of one of the Portuguese discoverers, then deceased; whose widow, finding how eagerly her son-in-law sought such sources of information, gave to him all the maps and charts which had belonged to her husband. Marco Polo, a Venetian, had travelled to the east, and returned with wonderful accounts of the riches of Cathay and the island of Cipango, called, generally, the East Indies, and now known to be China and Japan.

Circum-  
stances  
favo-  
rable  
to his ge-  
nius.

4. The idea that the earth was round, was ridiculed by most persons at that time, but it was fully believed by Columbus, on the evidence of its figure, exhibited in eclipses of the moon. Hence, he believed, that those rich countries described by Marco Polo might be found by sailing west; and he formed the design to lead the way, through unknown oceans.

Offers  
his ser-  
vices to  
reigning  
sove-  
reigns.

5. Columbus believed that great advantages would accrue to the nation who should patronize his undertaking; and, with filial respect, he first offered his services to his native state, but had the mortification to find them rejected. He then applied to John II. of Portugal; to Henry VII. of England; and to Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain. But these monarchs could not comprehend his schemes, and would not encourage them.

---

2. Who was the discoverer? What was his character? — 3. What woman gave him sources of information? What traveller had excited his mind about distant countries? What countries? 4. In what opinion was Columbus in advance of his contemporaries? Why did he believe in the true figure of the earth? How did he suppose he could reach those rich countries called the East Indies? — 5. To whom did Columbus first offer his services? With what success? Whose patronage did he next solicit? What sovereign of England? What sovereigns of Spain?



6. At the court of Spain, he had spent two years in a succession of mortifying repulses; and at length, quite discouraged, he was preparing to go to England, when he was recalled by a mandate from Isabella. Not knowing how to raise the sum of money requisite for defraying the expenses of the voyage, the excellent queen determined to sacrifice her jewels; but this was prevented by the extraordinary exertions of her ministers.

P<sup>r</sup>T.I.  
P<sup>r</sup>D. I.  
CH. I.

They are  
accepted  
by Isa-  
bella.

7. Columbus made his first voyage, the most interesting of any in the annals of navigation, in 1492. He discovered the first found land of the New World, on the eleventh of October. It was an Island called by the natives Guanahani, but to which he piously gave the name of San Salvador, the Holy Saviour.

1492  
Colum-  
bus dis-  
covers  
the New  
World.

8. In his third voyage he discovered the continent on the coast of South America, fourteen months after the Cabots had reached its shores in the north-east. By the ingratitude of Ferdinand, he was, like a condemned criminal, sent home in chains. Americus Vesputius, a native of Florence, having made a voyage to the New World, received from the public an honor which belonged to Columbus, that of giving a name to the continent. In 1502, the great discoverer made his fourth and last voyage, when, having returned to Spain, his patroness, Isabella, being dead, his just claims disregarded, and himself neglected, he sunk beneath his sufferings, and died, in the 59th year of his age. When the good meet with calamities in this world, it is pleasant to reflect, that there is a future state, where they will be made happy.

Sent  
home in  
chains.

Deprived  
of na-  
ming the  
country.

He dies  
in Vallo-  
lolid in  
Spain  
1506

9. Many attempts were now made to show that the country had been previously discovered. The Welsh brought forward the story of Madoc, son of Owen

Welsh  
story of  
Madoc.

6. Who was the only one to understand his views or favor them? What sacrifice was she prepared to make? — 7. When did Columbus make his first voyage? What land did he first discover? When? What name give? — 8. What did he discover in his third voyage? Did any persons discover the continent before him? How was he treated? After whom was the continent named? In what year did he make his last voyage? What occurred soon after? — 9. From what story did the Welch claim to be the discoverers of the western continent?

**P<sup>T</sup>. I.** Gwyneth, who, in the twelfth century, had sailed west  
**P<sup>D</sup>. I.** discovered a country, and afterwards conducted a colo  
**CH. II.** ny thither, which was heard of no more. If this story  
 be true, there exists no proof, that the region found  
 was America.

Nor-  
wegian  
claims.

Vine-  
land.

10. The Norwegians discovered Iceland and Green-  
 land, during the ninth century, and there established  
 colonies. Biorn, or Biron, an Ieeland, in a voyage  
 to Greenland, during the eleventh century, was driven  
 south-west in a storm, and found a region which, from  
 its great number of vines, he called Vineland; but  
 here, also, proof fails, that the place found, had its  
 locality on the American coast.

## CHAPTER II.

### English Discoveries—French.

America  
is con-  
nected  
with four  
nations  
of Eu-  
rope.

1. THE principal European nations who first disco-  
 vered and colonized our country, are

- I. The English,
- II. The French,
- III. The Spanish,
- IV. The Dutch.

1496.

John and  
Sebas-  
tian Ca-  
bot.

2. John Cabot, a native of Venice, had, with his  
 family, settled in England. He and his renowned son,  
 Sebastian, were men of great learning, enterprise, and  
 ability. By a commission of Henry VII., dated March  
 5th, 1496, (the oldest American state paper of England)  
 they had authority to discover and colonize any hea-  
 then countries not before known to Christians.

1497.

Discover  
the Con-  
tinent.

3. They sailed from England in May, 1497, and in  
 June, discovered the Island of Newfoundland, which

10. From what the Norwegians ?

CHAPTER II. — 1. What European nations discovered and  
 settled our continent ? — 2. Who was John Cabot ? Who Se-  
 bastian ? Who gave them a commission, and at what time ? — 3  
 What important discovery did they make ?

they called Prima Vista. Steering northward, they made the first discovery of the continent, on the coast of Labrador, in latitude about  $55^{\circ}$ . On their return they pursued a southerly direction for an uncertain distance.

P.T. I.  
P.D. I.  
CH. II.

4. Sebastian Cabot sailed a second time,—reached Labrador in latitude  $58^{\circ}$ , thence turning southerly, he became the discoverer of the coast of the United States; along which he proceeded, as far as to the southern latitude of Maryland.

**1498.**  
Sebastian Cabot discovers our coast

5. The French King, Francis I., in 1524, sent out John Verrazani, a native of Florence, who reached the continent in the latitude of Wilmington, North Carolina. His crew looked with wonder upon the wild costume of the natives, made of the skins of animals, and set off by necklaces of coral and garlands of feathers. As they sailed northward along the coast, they thought the country very inviting, it being covered with green trees, among which were many fragrant flowers.

The French also employ an Italian discoverer.

**1524.**

6. At a fine harbor, supposed to be that of Newport in Rhode Island, Verrazani remained fifteen days, and there found "the goodliest people he had seen." From thence he followed the north-eastern shore of New England, finding the inhabitants jealous and hostile. From Nova Scotia, he returned to France, and wrote a narrative of his voyage, which is still existing.

Verrazani in N. England.

7. James Cartier was the discoverer to whom the French trace the extensive empire which they possessed in North America. Cartier, after a prosperous voyage of twenty days, made Cape Bonavista, the most easterly point of Newfoundland. Sailing around the north-eastern extremity of the island, he encountered severe weather and icy seas. Then stretching to the south-west, he discovered, on St. Lawrence's day, the noble gulf which bears the name of that saint.

**1534.**

James Cartier makes great discoveries.

3. At what place?—4. Who discovered the coast of the United States? and how far?—5. What Italian did the king of France send out? Where did he reach our shore?—What account did he give of the natives?—6. What Indians do you suppose he encountered at Newport? 7. Who was the greatest discoverer employed by the French? During Cartier's first voyage, what great discoveries did he make?

P'T. I  
P'D. I.  
CH. II.

1535.

Cartier's  
second  
voyage.

8. In 1535, he sailed on a second voyage, entered the gulf of St. Lawrence, proceeded up the river, to which he gave the same name, and anchored at an island, which, abounding in grapes, he named Bacchus Isle, now the Isle of Orleans. He continued his voyage to the Island of Hochelega, to which he gave the name of Mont Real. After a severe winter he returned in the spring with dreary accounts of the country. He, however, named it *New France*, and it was also called *Canada*, but at what time, or whether from any significancy in the word, is not known.

New  
France.

His third  
made un-  
der Rob-  
erval.

9. France now possessed a country in the New World, through which, flowed a river, more majestic than any in Europe. Francis De La Roque, lord of Roberval, in Picardy, obtained from the king full authority to rule, as viceroy, the vast territory around the bay and river of St. Lawrence. Cartier was necessary to him, and received the title of chief pilot and captain-general of the enterprise. The prisons were thrown open, and with their inmates, Cartier sailed.

May,  
1541.  
Cartier  
sounds  
Quebec.

10. He built a fort near the site of Quebec, and there spent a winter, in which he had occasion to hang one of his disorderly company, and put several in irons. In the spring he took them back to France, just as Roberval arrived with supplies and fresh emigrants. By him, however, nothing permanent was effected; and after a year, he abandoned his viceroyalty.

1562.  
Admiral  
Coligni  
sends out  
Ribault.

11. Coligni, the distinguished high admiral of France was the friend of the Huguenots, a name given to the French Protestants. These were objects of such hatred and fear to the monarchs, that they were plotting their destruction, and when a project was formed by the admiral to plant with them a colony in America, it found ready favor. He therefore sent out, under the command of John Ribault, distinguished as a brave

---

8. Give an account of his second voyage? What can you say of the name of the country?—9. Under whose authority did he make this third voyage? What kind of people were brought over as colonists?—10. Did any good result take place? What can you say of Roberval?—11. Who was Coligni?—Whose friend was he? What project did he contrive? Whom did he send as leader of the colony?

and pious protestant, two ships loaded with conscientious Huguenots, many of whom were of the best families in France.

P'T. I.  
P'D. I.  
CH. III.

12. They approached land in the delightful clime of St. Augustine ; and, on the first of May, discovered the St. John, which they called the river of May. Sailing along the coast north-easterly, they fixed on Port Royal entrance. There they built a fort, and called it Carolina, a name which is preserved in that of two of our states. Ribault left there a colony, and returned to France.

He builds  
Ft. Carolina in S.  
Carolina.  
**1564.**

13. The commander of the fort provoked a mutiny, and was slain. The colonists longed for home. They put to sea without suitable provisions, and being found in a famishing state by a British vessel, they were carried to England.

Colonists  
abandon  
it.

14. The persevering Coligni soon after sent out another colony under the worthy Laudonniere. Upon the banks of the river of May, with psalms of thanksgiving, they made their dwelling place, and erected another fort, called also Carolina. The next year Ribault arrived with vessels containing emigrants and supplies ; and taking the command, the colony seemed happily planted.

**1566.**  
Ft. Carolina in  
Florida  
built.

## CHAPTER III.

Spanish Discoveries, Adventures, and Cruelties.—St. Augustine.

1. JOHN Ponce De Leon, a Spanish soldier, who had once voyaged with Columbus, had received an impression, common in those times, that there existed in the New World a fountain, whose waters had power to

Ponce de  
Leon  
seeks the  
fountain  
of life.

12. What country did they first reach ? Where did they build a fort, and what name give it ? — 13. What happened after Ribault had departed ? — 14. By whom did Coligni send out another colony ? Where did they build a fort, and what name give it ? Who came and for what purpose ?

CHAPTER III.—1. Who was John Ponce de Leon ? What induced him to come to the New World ?



**P'T. I.** arrest disease, and give immortal youth; and he set  
**P'D. I.** forth to seek it. On Easter Sunday, called by the  
**CH. III.** Spaniards Pascua Florida, and a little north of the  
**1512.** latitude of St. Augustine, he discovered what he deemed, from the blossoms of the forest trees, a land of flowers. The fountain of life was not there; but Ponce took possession of the country in the name of the Spanish king, and called it Florida.

Discoverers  
 of Florida.

2. The part of South Carolina, in the vicinity of the Combahee river, was soon after visited by a Spaniard, named Vasquez De Ayllon. The country was named Chicora, and the river, the Jordan. De Ayllon invited the natives to visit his ships, and when they stood in crowds upon his deck, he hoisted sail, carried them off; and thus, torn from their families, they were, as slaves, condemned to ceaseless toil. De Ayllon afterwards attempted to conquer the country, but the hostility of the natives could not be overcome, and numbers of Spaniards perished in the fruitless attempt.

**1520.**  
 Wickedness of  
 Vasquez  
 de  
 Ayllon.

**1528.** 3. By another unsuccessful effort under the adventurer Narvaez, to conquer Florida, and the adjoining country, an army of three hundred Spaniards, wasted away, till but four or five returned.

Unsuccessful  
 attempt  
 of Narvaez.

4. They however insisted that Florida was the richest country in the world; and Ferdinand De Soto, already famous as the companion of Pizarro, the cruel conqueror of Peru, obtained a commission from Charles V. to conquer Florida. He sailed, with a considerable force, to Cuba, of which he had been made governor; and there adding to his army, he landed in 1539, at Espirito Santo, in Florida, with six hundred soldiers; an army greater, and better supplied, than that with which Cortez conquered Mexico.

Ferdinand de  
 Soto.

**1539.**  
 Lands in  
 Florida.

5. He expected to find mines and utensils of gold;

---

1. What country did he discover? Observe the dates, and tell which discovered Florida first, the French just mentioned, or this Spaniard? Tell the dates in each case. — 2. Give an account of the expedition of Vasquez de Ayllon. What do you think of his conduct? — 3. What can you say of Narvaez? — 4. What expedition did Ferdinand de Soto undertake? Give an account of his preparations—his numbers—his place of landing in America. — 5. His objects.

and being from time to time deluded by the natives, he pursued these shadows, which ever fled as he approached. He went north, crossed the Alleghany mountains, then marched southerly to Mobile, where he fought a bloody battle with the people of a walled city. At Pensacola he met ships from Cuba, with supplies for his exhausted army; and too proud to be wise, he continued to pursue a shadow, rather than retrace a false step.

P'T. I.  
P'D. I.  
CH. III.

His ob-  
ject to  
find gold.

6. The hope of the precious metals still lured him on, and he now bent his course to the north-west, and in latitude  $34^{\circ}$  he discovered the Mississippi. He continued west until he reached the Wachita, when, becoming dispirited, he turned his course; descending that stream to its junction with the Red river. Thence he went down its current; and where the Red mingles its waters with the Mississippi, he died. His body was inclosed in a hollow oak, and committed to the broad stream. The officer who succeeded him in command, conducted the poor remains of the army, down the Mississippi.

April 25,  
**1541.**  
He dis-  
covers  
the Mis-  
sissippi

May 21.  
**1542.**  
He dies.

7. When the news reached Spain, that Florida had been colonized by French Huguenots, the cruel monarch, Philip II., gave to Pedro Melendez de Aviles a commission, to take possession of that country, and to destroy the heretics. Five hundred persons accompanied Melendez, who were men with families, soldiers, mechanics and priests. Coming upon the coast south of the French settlement, he discovered the harbor of St. Augustine on the day of that saint, and here he laid the foundation of the city of ST. AUGUSTINE, the oldest by more than forty years, of any within the limits of our republic.

Melen-  
dez sent  
from  
Spain.

Sept. 8,  
**1565.**  
He  
founds  
St. Au-  
gustine.

8. The French had received from Melendez the terrible notice, that he had come to destroy every person

---

5. His route and return to the coast? — 6. His second route and great discovery? Where did he die? How was his body disposed of? What became of his army? — 7. What king sent to destroy the French colony? Whom did he send? What description of persons, and how many accompanied him? What is there remarkable about the city which he founded? — 8. What notice did he give the French?

P'T. I. who was not a catholic. Ribault, supposing that the  
 P'D. I. Spaniards would attack by sea, embarked to meet them.  
 CH. III. A tremendous storm shipwrecked his whole fleet. The  
 Sept. 21, Spaniards, meantime, crossed the forest and attacked by  
 He de- land. Unprepared and surprised, the defenseless fort  
 stroys soon surrendered, when all, without distinction of age  
 Fort or sex, were murdered. The shipwrecked mariners  
 Carolina were afterwards found, feeble and exhausted, upon the  
 and 900 shore. Melendez invited them to come to him, and  
 Hugue- trust to his compassion. They came, and he slew them.  
 nots.

9. When the news of this massacre of nine hundred  
 French subjects reached the French king, Charles IX.,  
 he took no notice of it, for so bigoted was he, that he  
 wished the entire destruction of the Huguenots. Yet  
 Aug. 22, so deep was the feeling among the people of France,  
 1568. that three years afterwards, individuals headed by the  
 Gouges gallant chevalier Gouges, made a descent on the settle-  
 kills 200 ment of Florida, and put to death two hundred Span-  
 Span- iards.  
 iards.  
 First colony within the U. S.

8. Where was Ribault when Melendez attacked the French fort? How did he treat the people in the fort? How the shipwrecked?—9. Who took vengeance on the Spaniards? In what manner? Was the Spanish colony destroyed? What has it proved to be?

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

(Referring to events of Period I., Part I.)

What is the event or epoch which marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer.

The Cabots discovered the continent in 1497. Point out the place of this date on the Circle of Time. Verrazani sailed along the coast in 1524. Point out on the chronographer this date. Cartier made his two voyages in 1534–35. Point out these years. The time of Cartier's founding Quebec was 1541. Show the place of this date.

Ribault built Fort Carolina, in South Carolina, in 1564. Laudonniere built Fort Carolina, in Florida, in 1566. Point to these dates. St. Augustine was founded in 1565. Where is this date on the chronographer? At what epoch does this period terminate? Point to its place on the chronographer.

The teacher can select other dates and require the pupils to locate them on the chronographer.









Elizabeth's Patent to Sir H. Gilbert.

## PERIOD II.

FROM  
PATENT GRANTED BY QUEEN ELI- } **1578** { ZABETH TO SIR. H. GILBERT.  
TO  
LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS } **1620.** { AT NEW PLYMOUTH.

### CHAPTER I.

Unsuccessful attempts of Gilbert, Raleigh, and others.

1. QUEEN ELIZABETH, the reigning sovereign of England, gave to Sir Humphrey Gilbert, in 1578, by an open or patent letter, "all such remote, heathen, and barbarous lands," as he should discover in North America, and of which he should take possession; these lands not having been occupied before, by any other Christian power. She vested in him and his heirs the right of property, and guaranteed that all, who should settle there, should enjoy the privileges of free citizens and natives of England. The patentee was to acknowledge the authority of the sovereign of England, and pay one-fifth of all the gold and silver obtained.

P.T. I.  
P.D. II.  
CH. I.

**1578.**  
Gilbert's  
patent.

CHAPTER I.—1. From whom did Sir Humphrey Gilbert receive his patent? What lands did it give him? What rights vest in him and his heirs? What guarantee to those who should settle the country? What enjoin upon the person who received the patent?

P'T. I.

P'D. II.

CH. I.

1579,

to

1583.

Gilbert's  
two voy-  
ages.

2. In Gilbert's first attempt to plant a colony, he put to sea, but was obliged to return. In his second, he reached Newfoundland, where he took possession of the country for his sovereign, by raising a pillar inscribed with the British arms. From thence, he sailed south-westerly, till he reached the latitude of the mouth of the Kennebec. Here the largest of his three vessels was wrecked, and all her crew perished.

His  
disasters  
and  
death.

1583.

Sept. 22.

3. Gilbert now finding it impossible to proceed, set his face towards England, keeping in the smallest of his remaining vessels, a barge of only ten tons; for his generous heart refused to put any to a peril, he was himself unwilling to share. The passage was stormy, but his pious mind found comfort in the reflection which, as he sat reading in the stern of his barge, he uttered to his companions in the larger vessel; "we are as near heaven at sea, as on land." In the night, the lights of his little bark suddenly vanished, and he was heard of no more.

Sir W.  
Raleigh  
sends  
Amidas  
and  
Barlow.

4. Sir Walter Raleigh, the brother-in-law of Gilbert, obtained from Queen Elizabeth, a transfer of his patent. Raleigh had learned from the unsuccessful emigrants of France, the mildness and fertility of the south, and thither he dispatched two vessels, under Philip Amidas, and Arthur Barlow. They approached the shore at Pamlico Sound, and on landing in Ocracok or Roanoke Island, they found grapes abundant, and so near the coast, that the sea often washed over them.

Beautiful  
example  
of native  
hospita-  
lity.

5. The natives were as kindly as their climate and soil. The king's son, Granganimo, came with fifty of his people, and received them with distinguished courtesy. He invited them to his dwelling at twenty miles distance on the coast; but when they went, it chanced he was not at home. His wife came out to meet them

---

2. In Gilbert's first attempt what happened? In his second how far did he proceed? In what manner take possession? What disaster did he meet, and at what place?—3. What trait of generosity did he exhibit? What were the last words he was heard to utter?—4. Who obtained a similar patent? Whom did Sir W. Raleigh send out? To what place did they go? What account did they give of Roanoke Island?—5. What of the natives? How did an Indian lady behave?

She ordered some of her people to draw their boat ashore to preserve it, and others to bring the Englishmen on their backs through the surf. She then conducted her guests to her home, and had a fire kindled, that they might dry their clothes, which were wet with rain. In another room, she spread a plentiful repast of fish, venison, esculent roots, melons, and fruits. As they were eating, several Indians, armed with bows and arrows, entered. She chid them, and sent them away, lest her visitors should suffer from alarm.

P'T. I.  
P'D. II.  
CH. I.

6. When the navigators returned to England, and made this report to Elizabeth, she was induced to call the country VIRGINIA, as a memorial that the happy discovery had been made under a Virgin queen. This name soon became general throughout the coast.

Queen Elizabeth names Virginia.

7. Raleigh now found many adventurers ready to embark in his project; and in 1585, he fitted out a squadron of seven ships, under the command of Sir Richard Grenville, who followed the course of Amidas and Barlow, and touched at the same islands. In one of these he cruelly burned a village, because he suspected an Indian of having stolen a silver cup. He then left a colony under Captain Lane, at the island of Roanoke. The colonists, reduced to great distress for want of provisions, were, the next year, carried to England by Sir Francis Drake, who was returning from a successful expedition against the Spaniards in the West Indies.

1585.  
Seven ships under Grenville.

Colony at Roanoke under Lane.

8. Soon after their departure, they were sought by a ship, which had been sent by Raleigh with supplies; and afterwards by Sir Richard Grenville. He not finding them, most unwisely left fifteen of his crew to keep possession of the island, and then returned to England. Of this small number nothing was afterwards heard. Probably they were destroyed by the injured and revengeful savages.

Fifteen men lost.

6. Who gave a name to the country? What name?—7. Whom did Raleigh next send? When? What was done by Sir R. Grenville? What can you say of the colony which he left?—8. What of another small colony?



**P'T. I.** 9. In 1587, Raleigh again sent out a colony of one  
**P'D. II.** hundred and fifty adventurers to the same island, under  
**CH. 1.** Captain White. He soon returned to England to sol-  
**1587.** cit supplies for the colony. Before he departed, his  
 Second daughter, Mrs. Dare, gave birth to a female infant, the  
 Roanoke first child of English parents born in America. The  
 colony. infant was baptized by the name of Virginia.

**Raleigh's** 10. The attempts made by Raleigh for the relief of  
**lost** this colony were unremitted, but unsuccessful; and  
**colony.** three years elapsed before he could procure the means  
 of sending Captain White to their relief. It was then  
 too late. Not one remained; nor, though repeatedly  
 sought, has any clue to their fate ever been found.  
 Appalled and in danger of perishing himself, White  
 returned, without leaving one English settler on the  
 shores of America.

**1602.** 11. In 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold, with thirty-two  
 Gosnold men, sailed from Falmouth, and steering due west, he  
 visits N. was the first English commander who reached the  
 England. country by this shorter and more direct course. He  
 approached the coast near Nahant, then bearing to the  
 south he discovered and named Cape Cod, which was  
 the first ground in New England ever trod by English-  
 men.

**Natives** 12. From Cape Cod he sailed round Nantucket, and  
**hostile.** discovered Martha's Vineyard. He then entered Buz-  
 zard's Bay, and finding a fertile island, he gave it, in  
 honor of the Queen, the name of Elizabeth. Near its  
 western shore, on a small island in a lake, he built a  
 fort and store-house, and prepared to leave a small  
 colony. But the natives became hostile, and his in-  
 tended settlers would not remain. Having freighted  
 his vessel with sassafras root, then much esteemed in  
 medicine, he hoisted sail and reached England with all

---

9. What of the second? What name was given to the first na-  
 tive born English child? — 10. Were attempts made to relieve  
 this colony? Does any one know what became of Mrs. Dare,  
 or her child, or any of the colony? — 11. Give some account of  
 Gosnold? Point out on the map his course? Tell where he ap-  
 proached. What discoveries he made? — 12. At what place  
 did he prepare to colonize? Was he successful in planting a  
 colony?

his men, after a passage of five weeks, the shortest then known.

13. Henry IV., of France, in 1603, granted to the Sieur de Monts, the country called *Acadia*, extending from the 40th to the 46th degree of north latitude. The next year De Monts sailed from France, taking Samuel Champlain as his pilot. He entered an extensive bay, called it La Baye Francaise, [Bay of Fundy,] and on its eastern side, he founded Port Royal. He discovered and named the rivers St. John and St. Croix, and sailed along the coast as far as Cape Cod.

P'T. I.  
P'D. II.  
CH. I.

**1603.**  
Henry  
IV.  
grants  
*Acadia*.

DeMonts  
founds  
Port  
Royal.

14. The English becoming alarmed at this encroachment on territory which they claimed, James I., the successor of Elizabeth, dividing the country into two districts nearly equal, granted the southern part, or first colony of Virginia, included between the 34th and 41st degrees, to a company of merchants called the London Company; and the northern or second colony of Virginia, included between the 38th and 45th degrees, to another corporation, called the Plymouth Company. The king vested these companies with a right of land along the coast, fifty miles each way, and extending into the interior one hundred miles from the place of settlement.

**1606.**  
London  
company

Ply-  
mouth  
company.

15. The Plymouth Company, in 1607, sent out Admiral Raleigh Gilbert, with a hundred planters, under Captain George Popham, the president of the company. They landed at the mouth of Kennebec river, where they built and fortified a store-house. The sufferings of the colony, through the winter, were severe. They lost their store-house by fire, and their president by death, and the next year returned to England, considering the country "a cold, barren, mountainous desert," where, in the quaint language of that period, they declared, "they found nothing but extreme extremities."

Settle-  
ment at  
Kenne-  
bec.

**1607**

12. What of his voyage in regard to time? — 13. What was granted to De Monts? By whom? What voyage and discoveries did he make? Who accompanied him? — 14. Between what two companies did the English now divide the country? — What names give to each division? Trace the two divisions on Map III, unless you draw the Maps, and have one of your own to exhibit. — 15. Whom did the Plymouth company send out? What was the success of the settlement at Kennebec?



P<sup>T</sup>. I. 16. Thus, after a period of one hundred and ten  
 P<sup>D</sup>. II. years, from the time that Cabot discovered North  
 CH. II. America, and twenty-four years after Raleigh planted  
 the first colony, there was not, in 1607, an English-  
 man settled in America.

## CHAPTER II.

### First settlement of Virginia.

1. IN 1607, the London Company sent out Captain Christopher Newport, with three ships, and one hundred and five men, among whom was the navigator, Gosnold, and Captain John Smith, the Father of Virginia.

Chesa-  
peake  
discover-  
ed.

1607

2. The fleet sailed by the West Indies, and being driven north of Roanoke in a storm, an accidental discovery was thus made of the entrance of the Chesapeake bay, the boundaries of which were now named Capes Charles and Henry, in honor of the king's sons.

James-  
town,  
May 13.

3. The adventurers sailed at once into the bay, and up the Powhatan river, to which they gave the name of the James. Upon its banks, fifty miles from its mouth, they fixed their residence, and raised a few huts. The place was called Jamestown, an appellation which it still retains, although nothing now remains but a few falling ruins.

What a  
charter  
is.

4. The King of England, James I., had given the colonists a charter; that is a writing, made like a deed, which he signed, and to which the great seal of England was affixed. These written instruments when made for the settlers, in a wise and righteous manner, gave them privileges which were of great value. But, in this case, the charter left with the king all the power to govern the country.

16. In 1607 what might be said of English colonization?

CHAPTER II.—1. Whom did the London company send out?  
 2. What discovery was accidentally made?—3. What course did the fleet take? Where did the emigrants settle?—4. What is a charter? Did these emigrants receive a favorable charter?

5. To the colonists no assurance was given, but the vague promise, that they should continue to be Englishmen. Religion was established by law, according to the forms and doctrines of the church of England. There was, for the present, no division of property; and for five years, all labor was to be for the benefit of the joint stock.

P'T I.

P'D. II.

CH. II.

No privileges to the settlers.

6. The government was to be administered by a council, nominated by the king, but to reside in the colony. As soon as the emigrants landed, the council was organized. They chose Edward Wingfield, their president. They were envious of Captain Smith. He was the proper person to be their head, because he had more talents and more zeal for the settlement, than any other man. But troubles gathered fast, and then they were glad to have Smith for a leader.

First president Wingfield, 2d, Smith.

7. The neighboring Indians soon annoyed the colony by their petty hostilities. Their provisions failed, and the scanty allowance to which they were reduced, as well as the influence of a climate to which they were not accustomed, gave rise to disease; so that the number of the colonists rapidly diminished. Sometimes four or five died in a day, and there were not enough of the well, to give decent burial to the dead. Fifty perished before winter, among whom was the excellent Gosnold.

Disasters.

Aug. 22. Death of Gosnold. 1607.

8. The energy and cheerful activity of Smith, threw the only light, which glanced upon the dark picture. He so managed as to awe the natives, and at the same time to conciliate and obtain from them supplies of food; while, among the emigrants, he encouraged the faint hearted, and put in fear the rebellious. Winter at length came, and with it, relief from diseases of climate, and plentiful supplies of wild fowl and game.

Excellent management of Smith.

9. The London company, with an ignorance of geography, which even then was surprising, had given directions that some of the streams flowing from the

5. How was it about religion?—property?—6. What about the government? Who was chosen president?—7. What misfortunes befel the colony?—8. What can you say of the conduct of Captain Smith?—9. What directions had Smith received? From whom?

P'T. I. north-west should be followed up, in order to find a  
 P'D. II. passage to the South Sea. Smith was superior to the  
 CH. II. company in intelligence, but he knew the duties of a  
 subordinate; and he therefore prepared to explore the  
 head waters of the river Chickahominy, which answered  
 as nearly as any one, to their description.

Smith  
 can obey  
 as well as  
 command.

1607.  
 Powhatan  
 and  
 his  
 brother.

10. Powhatan, the chief of the savage confederacy on the waters of the James and its tributaries, had been visited by the colonists early after their arrival. His imperial residence, called from its beautiful location, Nonesuch, consisted of twelve wigwams near the site of Richmond. Next to him in power was his brother, Opechacanough, who was chief of the Pamunkies on the Chickahominy. Smith embarked in a barge on that river, and when he had ascended as far as possible in this manner, he left it, with the order that his party should not land till his return; and, with four attendants, he pursued his objects twenty miles farther up the river.

Indian  
 capture  
 Smith

11. The Indians who had watched his movements, fell upon his men, took them prisoners, and obliged them to discover the track of their captain. He, in pursuit of game, soon found himself hunted by swarms of savage archers. In this extremity he bound to his breast, as a shield, an Indian youth, who was with him; and then he shot three Indians, wounded others, and kept the whole party at bay. Attempting to retreat to his canoe while yet watching his foe, suddenly he sank to his middle, in an oozy creek. The savages dared not even then touch him, till, perishing with cold, he laid down his arms and surrendered.

His address.

12. They carried him to a fire, near which, some of his men had been killed. By his Indian guide and interpreter, he then called for their chief. Opechacanough appeared, and Smith politely presented to him his pocket compass. The Indians were confounded at the motions of the fly-needle, which, on account of the

---

9. What did he know, and what do? — 10. Whom had the colonists visited? Where? Who was chief of the Indians on the Chickahominy? What was the beginning of Smith's adventures on that river? — 11. Relate the circumstances of his capture?

mysterious glass, they could see, but could not touch. He told them wonderful stories of its virtues, and proceeded, as he himself relates, "by the globe-like figure of that jewel, to instruct them, concerning the roundness of the earth, and how the sun did chase the night round about the world continually," by which his auditors were filled with profound amazement.

P'T. I.

P'D. II.

CH. II.

13. Their minds seemed to labor with the greatness of the thought, that a being so superior was in their power; and they vacillated in their opinion whether or not it was best to put him to death; and as often changed their conduct. They took him to Powhatan, thence led him round from one wondering tribe to another, until, at the residence of Opechacanough, these superstitious dwellers of the forest, employed their sorcerers or powows, for three days, to practice incantations, in order to learn, from the invisible world, whether their prisoner wished them well or ill.

His treatment by the savages.

14. The decision of his fate was finally referred to Powhatan. At his residence, that majestic savage received him in state, but he condemned him to die. Two stones were brought and laid before the chief, and two savages stood with uplifted war-clubs. Smith was dragged to the spot, and his head placed upon the stones. Pocahontas, a young Indian girl, rushed forward, and with cries and tears begged of Powhatan, her father, to spare him. He refused. She then ran and knelt beside the victim, and laid her young head upon his. Then the stern savage relented, and Smith was saved.

His rescue by Pocahontas.

15. Smith having now learned much of the Indians, their country, modes of warfare, dispositions and language, and having also by his great address and honorable bearing, won their affection and confidence, his captivity proved, under Divine Providence, a means of establishing the colony.

1608

Good brought from evil.

16. During his absence, however, there had been

---

12. Of the manner in which he gave the natives a great idea of his knowledge?—13. Of their thoughts and behaviour towards him?—14. Relate the circumstance of his sentence and deliverance?—15. What view may be taken of Smith's captivity?

P'T. I. disorder and misrule; and when he returned to James  
 P'D. II. town he found only thirty-eight persons remaining  
 CH. III. The spirits of the people were broken; and all, filled  
 with despondency, were anxious to leave a country so  
 inhospitable. He prevailed upon them, however, partly  
 by force and partly by persuasion, to remain till the  
 next year, when Newport arriving from England, with  
 some supplies and one hundred and twenty emigrants,  
 hope again revived.

State of  
the  
colony.

**1608.** 17. During the year 1608, Captain Smith explored  
 the Chesapeake bay to its head, discovered its fine  
 streams, and gained new information concerning the  
 native productions and inhabitants of the country. In  
 an excursion which he made up the Rappahannock,  
 he had a skirmish with the Mannahoacks, a tribe de-  
 scended from the Delawares, and took prisoner a  
 brother of one of their chiefs. From him he first  
 heard of the Iroquois, who, the Indian told him,  
 “dwelt on a great water to the north, had a great many  
 boats, and so many men, that they waged war with all  
 the rest of the world.”

Smith  
explores  
the Ches-  
apeake.

His decis-  
ion and  
wisdom.

18. Immediately on his return he was chosen presi-  
 dent of the council. He found the recent emigrants  
 “goldsmiths and gentlemen.” But he promptly gave  
 them their choice, to labor for six hours a day, or have  
 nothing to eat. He represented to the council in En-  
 gland that they should send *laborers*; that the search  
 of gold should be abandoned, and that “nothing should  
 be expected except by labor.”

### CHAPTER III.

Early settlement of Virginia—continued.

1. THE London Company had gradually become  
 enlarged by accessions of men of influence, some of

16. What had happened during Smith's absence? What  
 was the effect of his return? — 17. What did Smith explore?  
 What learn from report? — 18. What happened on his return?  
 What course did he take? What was his advice sent to England?

CHAPTER III.—1. What had been the progress of the London  
 Company?



whom were of the nobility and gentry. Without at all consulting the wishes, and against the interests of the colony, they now obtained from the king a new charter, by which they were to hold the lands in fee; and all the powers of government formerly reserved to the crown, were hereafter to vest in the company. The council in England, chosen by the stockholders, was to appoint a governor, who was to rule the colonists with absolute sway.

P'T. I.

P'D. II.

CH. III.

Govern-  
ment  
made  
worse

2. The company now collected five hundred adventurers, many of whom were men of desperate fortunes and abandoned characters. They appointed as governor for life the excellent Lord Delaware, and freighted with the emigrants nine ships, of which Captain Newport was to take the command.

Newport  
sent with  
five hun-  
dred.

3. As Lord Delaware was not ready to embark with the fleet, the admiral, Sir Thomas Gates and Sir George Somers, were empowered to govern the colony until his arrival. Newport took into his own ship Gates and Somers. Arriving at the Bermudas, a terrible storm separated the fleet. The admiral's vessel was stranded on the rocky shores of Bermuda; a small ketch perished, and only seven of the vessels reached Jamestown.

Wreck-  
ed at  
Bermuda.

4. Smith now found himself without authority; and the three persons who alone possessed it, were perhaps in the depths of the ocean. His genius, however, sustained him; and he compelled to submission the disorderly gallants who had just arrived.

1609.

Smith  
yet at the  
head.

5. Pocahontas repeatedly saved the life of Smith, and preserved this earliest English settlement from destruction. In the various fortunes of the colony, she was its unchanging friend, often coming with her attendants to bring baskets of provisions in times of scarcity, and sometimes giving notice of hostile designs.

Native  
kindness.

1. What did they obtain? What was the character of the instrument obtained? — 2. What was the number, and what was the description of the persons sent out? What office had Lord Delaware? What Capt. Newport? — 3. What was the fate of Newport's ship? What persons had he on board? — 4. As neither the governor, or his substitutes were there, what was the position and conduct of Smith? — 5. What is said of Pocahontas?



P'T. I. 6. At length, an accidental explosion of gunpowder  
 P'D. II. so injured Smith, that no medical skill there, could  
 CH. III. properly manage his case; and delegating his au-  
 Smith thority to George Percy, he returned to England.—  
 leaves After his departure, all subordination and industry  
 Virginia. ceased among the colonists.

7. The Indians, no longer afraid, harassed them, and withheld their customary supplies. Their stores were soon exhausted. The domestic animals were devoured; and, in two instances, the act was perpetrated of feeding on human flesh. Smith left four hundred and ninety persons. In six months, anarchy and vice had reduced the number to sixty; and those so feeble and forlorn, that in ten days more they must all have perished.

Great  
 scarcity  
 and dis-  
 tress.

8. In the meantime, Sir Thomas Gates and his companions, who had been wrecked on the rocks of Bermuda, had found there the means to construct a vessel; and now approaching Jamestown, they anticipated a happy meeting with their friends. But, instead of this, but few remained, and they wasted to skeletons. Gates was obliged to yield to the universal cry, desert the settlement, and re-embark with the whole colony. They departed in the morning, and falling down the stream with the tide, they descried, at evening, near the river's mouth, three ships. Lord Delaware, their paternal governor had arrived with supplies; and their hearts were cheered with the consoling thought that God had delivered them. And then the residue returned, a chastened, and a better people.

Depart-  
 ure of the  
 colony.

June,  
 1610.  
 its re-  
 turn.

9. The colony again became flourishing; but in  
 1611. March, 1611, the governor's health declined, and he was obliged to leave the country. On the departure of Lord Delaware, Percy was again at the head of affairs, until the arrival of Sir Thomas Dale, in May. Although good order and industry now prevailed, yet

May 10,  
 Sir Tho-  
 mas Dale  
 arrives.

6. What now happened to Smith? What was the conduct of the colonists?—7. What consequences ensued?—8. Relate the circumstances of Sir Thomas Gates arrival? What was he obliged to do? Where were the people, and what their feelings on Lord Delaware's arrival?—9. How long did Lord Delaware remain in the country?

the state of the colony was not flourishing, and Dale immediately wrote to England for aid. In less than four months, Sir Thomas Gates arrived, with six ships and three hundred emigrants.

10. Pocahontas, after the departure of Capt. Smith, received Christian baptism under the name of Rebecca, and then married John Rolfe, a young Englishman of the colony. She went with her husband to England, where special attention was paid her by the king and queen, at the instigation of Smith. She had been told that he was dead; and when he came to see her she turned away, and for a time could not, or would not speak. He kindly soothed her, and at length she addressed him as her father, and recalled the scenes of their early acquaintance. Having given birth to a son, she was about to return, when she sickened and died, at the age of twenty-two. Her son survived and reared an offspring, which is perpetuated in some of the best families in Virginia.

P'T. I.  
P'D. II.  
CH. IV.

**1613**  
Baptism  
and  
mar-  
riage of  
Poca-  
hontas.

Her  
death.

## CHAPTER IV.

Virginia—Hudson River—Canada.

1. In 1617, Captain Argall was made acting governor of Virginia. Lord Delaware having attempted to reach the settlement, died on the passage. Argall governed with so much rigor, as to excite universal discontent. Not only did he play the tyrant over the colonists, but he cheated the company. The rumor of his oppression made emigration unpopular. By the influence of the good Sir Edwin Sandys, the benevolent Yearly was sent over to take his place.

**1617.**  
Argall's  
miscon-  
duct.

9. On what occasion did their numbers receive an accession?  
10. With whom did Pocahontas go to England? What took place there? Whom did she meet and how? Has she left descendants?

CHAPTER IV.—1. What is here said of Argall? What effect had the report of his bad conduct? Who was sent as governor?

**P.T. I.** 2. Governor Yearly called the first general assembly which was held in Virginia, consisting of representatives, chosen from among the people, who were to act conjointly with the governor and council appointed by the company, in all matters of importance. **P.D. II.** **CH. IV.** The colonists, who, till then, had been nothing more than the servants of the company, were thus raised to the distinction and privileges of freemen.

**1619.**  
The first  
general  
assembly.

They  
meet at  
Jamestown.

3. In this assembly, which met at Jamestown, eleven boroughs were each represented by two burgesses. For this cheering dawn of civil liberty, the colonists expressed to the company "the greatest possible thanks," and forthwith "fell to building houses and planting corn."

Young  
women  
sent as  
wives.

4. In order to attach the colonists more entirely to their new settlements, there was, about this time, sent out, by the advice of Sandys, a considerable number of young women of humble birth, but of unexceptionable character, as wives for the young planters. The price paid for the passage of each was at first one hundred, and afterwards, one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco. To fail of discharging debts so incurred, was esteemed particularly dishonorable.

**1620.**  
Convicts  
sent to  
the colony.

5. About this time were introduced also into the colony, by order of King James, many idle and dissolute persons, then in custody for their offences. They were dispersed through the colony, and employed as laborers.

Slavery  
commences.

**1609.**  
Hudson  
River  
discovered.

6. A Dutch ship from Africa arriving at Jamestown, a part of her cargo of negroes was purchased by the colony. This was the commencement of negro slavery in the United States.

7. In 1609, occurred the discovery of the Hudson river, which has proved the finest for navigation of any in republican America. Henry Hudson, the discoverer,

---

2. What important privilege did the people obtain? Of whom did the first assembly consist?—3. Where did they meet?—What did they express, and what do?—4. What was done to attach them to their new homes? What price was paid?—5. What unwholesome settlers were introduced?—6. When did slavery commence?—7. Who discovered the great river of New York?

was an Englishmen by birth, but was in the service of the Dutch East India Company. The next year, the Dutch sent ships to this river, to open a trade with the natives, but the Court of England disowned their claim to the country. The Dutch, however, followed up their good fortune, and soon erected Forts Orange and Manhattan, near the sites of Albany and New York.

8. In 1608, Champlain, under De Monts, conducted a colony to America, and founded Quebec. Wishing to secure the friendship of the adjacent natives, he consented, the next year, to accompany them on an expedition against the Iroquois, with whom they were at war. They entered upon the lake which now bears, in honor of its discoverer, the name of Champlain, and traversed it until they approached its junction with Lake St. Sacrament, now Lake George. Here, in the vicinity of Ticonderoga, a bloody engagement took place, in which Champlain and his allies were victorious.

9. Captain Smith, after his return from Virginia, explored the north-eastern coast of the United States with a trading squadron of two ships. Smith sailed in the largest, and the other was commanded by Captain Hunt; before mentioned as having kidnapped twenty-seven of the subjects of Massasoit. Smith accurately examined the shore, with its bays and rivers, from the mouth of the Penobscot to Cape Cod, and having drawn a map, he laid it, on his return, before Prince Charles, with a hint, that so beautiful and excellent a country deserved to bear an honorable name. The Prince listened to his suggestion, and declared that it should thereafter be called NEW ENGLAND.

10. The French having established themselves within the limits of the northern colony of Virginia, Capt. Argall was sent from Jamestown to dispossess them.

---

7. What was done by the Dutch? Were the English satisfied? What important cities were begun? — 8. Relate what was done by Champlain at the North? — 9. In what enterprise was Captain Smith now engaged? With whom? What was done on Smith's return?

P'T. I.  
P'D. II.  
CH. IV.

**1608.**  
Cham-  
plain  
founds  
Quebec.

**1609**  
Discov-  
ers  
Lake  
Cham-  
plain.

**1614.**  
Smith in  
N. Eng-  
land.

With  
Captain  
Hunt.

P.T. I. He destroyed Port Royal, and all the French settle-  
 P.D. II. ments in Acadia. On his return he visited the Dutch  
 CH. IV. at Manhattan, and demanded possession of the country  
 in the name of the British sovereign. The Dutch  
 Argall subdues the French and Dutch. traders made no scruple to acknowledge the supremacy  
 of King James, and, under him, that of the governor  
 of Virginia.

---

10. Relate Captain Argall's expedition and its results?

---

EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer. Sir Walter Raleigh obtained a transfer of Gilbert's patent in 1583, and sent two vessels to the south under Amidas and Barlow. Queen Elizabeth named the country which they discovered, Virginia. Point out the place of this date.

Raleigh sent out a squadron of seven ships under Sir Richard Grenville, in 1585. Point out this date on the chronographer. Both these attempts to colonize the country were unsuccessful, and Raleigh again sent out a colony in 1587, under Captain White. Show the place of this date.

Gosnold discovered Cape Cod in 1602. What is the place of this date? De Monts discovered the bay of Fundy and founded Port Royal in 1604. Point out this date. The London and Plymouth Companies were established by James I., in 1606. Point out the place of this year. Chesapeake Bay was discovered by Captain Christopher Newport, and Jamestown founded in 1607.

Captain Smith was taken prisoner by the Indians and rescued by Pocahontas the same year. Point out its place on the chronographer. The London Company obtained a new charter from James I. in 1608, and Lord Delaware was appointed governor. Show the place of this year.

Governor Yeardley called the first General Assembly, in Virginia, in 1619. What is the place of this date? Henry Hudson discovered the Hudson river in 1609. Champlain, under De Monts, discovered Lake Champlain in the same year. Point out the place of the year. In 1614, Captain Smith explored the northeastern coast of the United States, which Prince Charles named New England. Point out the place of the date. At what epoch does this period terminate? What is its date? Point out its place on the chronographer.

The teacher can, if he chooses, change the order of the P.T.I. questions and ask, "When did Raleigh send out?" &c. P'D II  
 Then say to the pupil, "Locate the year." But the author would not recommend that the pupil's memory should be severely taxed to remember dates.







The Cabin of the May Flower.

## PERIOD III.

FROM  
THE LANDING } 1620 { OF THE PILGRIMS,

TO

THE COMMENCEMENT OF  
THE CONFEDERACY,

} 1643 {

BY THE UNION OF THE  
NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

### CHAPTER I.

Departure of the Pilgrims from England, and their sojourn in Holland.

1. IN 1592, a law was passed in England, requiring all persons to attend the established worship, under penalty of banishment, and if they returned, of death. Among those who could not conscientiously comply with these exactions, were JOHN ROBINSON and his congregation, who lived in the north of England. They belonged to that sect of the Puritans, or dissenters from the church of England, called Separatists.

P.T. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. I.

1592.  
Robinson  
and his  
people.

2. To enjoy their religion, the pastor, and his whole flock, determined to exile themselves to Holland. But

CHAPTER I.—1. Who were John Robinson and his congregation? — 2. What was their object in seeking to change their country?

P'T. I. this was a difficult undertaking. Once they embarked  
 P'D. III. with their families and goods at Boston, in Lincoln-  
 CH. I. shire. But the treacherous captain had plotted with  
 English officers, who came on board the vessel, took  
 1607. their effects, searched the persons of the whole com-  
 Attempt paney for money, and then, in presence of a gazing  
 to go to multitude, led them on shore, and to prison. They  
 Holland. were soon released, except seven of the principal men,  
 who were detained and brought to trial, but at length  
 freed.

3. Again they bargained with a Dutch ship-master  
 at Hull, who was to take them in from a common, hard  
 by. At the time appointed, the women and children  
 sailed to the place of rendezvous in a small bark, and  
 the men came by land. The bark had grounded; but  
 1608. the Dutch captain sent his boat and took the men from  
 Second the strand. But the authorities of Hull had, in the  
 attempt. meantime, got notice; and the Dutch commander, at  
 the sight of a large armed company, having a fair  
 wind, with oaths, hoisted anchor, and sailed away;  
 although the pilgrims even wept, thus to leave their  
 wives and children.

4. Behold now these desolate women, the mothers  
 of a future nation, their husbands forcibly carried off  
 to sea, while on land an armed multitude are approach-  
 ing! They are taken, and dragged from one magistrate  
 to another, while their children, cold and hungry, and  
 affrighted, are weeping and clinging around them. But  
 their piteous condition and Christian demeanor soft-  
 ened, at length, the hearts of their persecutors, and  
 even gained friends to their cause.

5. The men, in the meantime, encountered one of  
 the most terrific sea storms ever known, continuing  
 fourteen days, during seven of which, they saw neither  
 sun, moon, or stars.

At length they all arrived in Holland. They settled  
 at first in Amsterdam. They did not, however, find

---

2. What happened on their first attempt? — 3. What on their  
 second? — 4. What trouble did the women meet with? — 5.  
 What the men? When in Holland, where did they first settle?

cause to be satisfied, and they removed to Leyden. Here, by hard labor and frugal honesty, they lived highly respected; but after a few years they experienced evils, which made them think of another removal.

P.T.I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. I.

Leyden.

6. Not only were their own toils constant and severe, but they were obliged to employ their children, so that they were necessarily deprived of education. And the health of the young, often fell a sacrifice to the length of time and confined positions, in which they labored. Some died, and some became deformed. Their morals also were likely to suffer from the habitual profanation of the sabbath, witnessed around them.

Reasons  
for re-  
moval.

7. The Pilgrims had heard of America; and in its wilderness, they believed that they might serve God unmolested, and found a church, where not only the oppressed in England, but unborn generations, might enjoy a pure worship. The Dutch wished them to colonize under their government. But they still loved their country; and they sent agents to England, to procure, by the influence of Sir Edwin Sandys, a patent under the Virginia Company.

Agents  
go to En-  
gland.

8. For the encouragement of this company, disheartened by the failures at Chesapeake Bay, Robinson, and Brewster, the ruling elder of his church, wrote to Sir Edwin, showing, in five particulars, the difference of their motives, their circumstances, and characters, from those of other adventurers. *First*, "We verily believe the Lord is with us, to whose service we have given ourselves, and that he will graciously prosper our endeavors, according to the simplicity of our hearts therein. *Second*, We are all well weaned from the delicate milk of our mother country, and inured to a strange and hard land, wherein we have learned patience.

Letter to  
Sir E.  
Sandys.

9. *Third*, our people are as industrious and frugal as any in the world. *Fourth*, We are knit together in a

The Pil-  
grims a  
peculiar  
people.

5. Where remove? In what estimation were they held? — 6. What reasons had they for another removal? — 7. What for thinking of America? What did the Dutch wish? What moved the Pilgrims to send agents to England? — 8. Who wrote a letter? To whom? To show what? Mention the first particular? The second? — 9. The third? — fourth?



P'T. I. sacred bond of the Lord, whereof we make great conscience, holding ourselves tied to all care of each other's good. *Fifth*, It is not with us as with other men, whom small discontentments can discourage, and cause to wish themselves at home again. We have nothing to hope for from England or Holland, and our lives are drawing towards their period."

Contract  
with  
London  
mer-  
chants.

10. By the aid of Sandys, the petitioners obtained the patent. But they needed money. To provide this, their agents formed a stock company, jointly, with some men of business in London, of whom Mr. Thomas Weston was the principal; they to furnish the capital, the emigrants to pledge their labor for seven years, at ten pounds per man; and the profits of the enterprise, all houses, lands, gardens, and fields, to be divided at the end of that time among the stockholders, according to their respective shares.

Aug. 3d,  
1620.  
Prepara-  
tion.

11. They then prepared two small vessels, the May-Flower and the Speedwell; but these would hold only a part of the company, and it was decided that the youngest and most active should go, and the older, among whom was the pastor, should remain. If they were successful, they were to send for those behind; if unsuccessful, to return, though poor, to them.

Parting  
at Delft-  
Haven.

12. Previous to their separation, this memorable church worshipped together for the last time, on an appointed day, when they humbled themselves by fasting, and "sought of the Lord a right way for themselves and their children." When they must no longer tarry, their brethren accompanied them from Leyden to the shore at Delft-Haven. Here the venerable pastor knelt with his flock upon the ground; and the wanderers, while tears flowed down their cheeks, heard for the last time, his beloved voice in exhortation, and in prayer for them. "But they knew they were PILGRIMS, and lifted up their eyes to heaven, their dearest country, and quieted their spirits."

---

9. The fifth. — 10. What did they obtain? What did they then need? How contrive to procure it? — 11. What did the agents then prepare? Could all go? Which part was to go? On what condition did the others remain? — 12. Give an account of their parting!

## CHAPTER II.

## Progress of the Pilgrims from Holland to America.

1. From Delft-Haven, the Pilgrims sailed to Southampton, in England. Among the leaders of the party was ELDER BREWSTER, who at this time was fifty-six, but sound in body, as in spirit. JOHN CARVER was near his age, beloved and trusted, as he was good and wise. WILLIAM BRADFORD was strong, bold, and enduring; but withal, a meek and prudent Christian. Next these in honor, and superior in native endowments, was EDWARD WINSLOW. He was at this time twenty-six; Bradford was thirty-two. MILES STANDISH had been in the English army, and was a brave and resolute officer.

P<sup>r</sup>T. I.  
P<sup>r</sup>D. III.  
CH. II.

Leading  
men.

2. After remaining in Southampton a fortnight, the party put to sea. But misfortunes befalling, they returned, left the Speedwell, and finally, to the number of one hundred, they set sail from Plymouth, in the solitary May-Flower. On the 6th of September, they took their last, sad look, of their native shore. After a stormy and perilous passage, they made land, on the 9th of November, at Cape Cod.

Sept. 6,  
Final de  
parture.

3. The mouth of the Hudson had been selected as the place of their settlement, and they accordingly steered southerly; but soon falling in with dangerous breakers, and all, especially the women, being impatient to leave the ship, they determined to return and settle on or near the Cape. The next day they turned the point of that singular projection, and entered the harbor, now called Provincetown.

Nov. 9.  
at Cape  
Cod.

4. They fell on their knees to thank the kind Power who had preserved them amidst so many dangers; and

---

CHAPTER II.—1. From Holland where did the Pilgrims next go? Name their leading men. What is said of the first named? The second? The third? The fourth? The fifth?—2. What happened when they first put out to sea? From what place did they last depart? In what vessel? How many persons? What was the length and character of the passage? What the first land made?—3. On what place had they intended to settle? Why did they change their minds?—4. What was their first act on arriving?



P'T. I. then "they did," says Cotton Mather, "as the light of  
 P'D. III. nature itself directed them, immediately, in the harbor,  
 CH. II. sign an instrument, as the foundation of their future  
 Compact and needful government;" solemnly combining them-  
 signed in selves into a civil body politic, to enact all such ordi-  
 the cabin. nances, and frame all such constitutions and offices, as,  
 from time to time, should be thought most meet and  
 convenient for the general good; *all which they bound  
 themselves to obey.*

5. This simple, but august compact, was the first  
 of a series, by which the fetters of a vast system of  
 political oppression have been broken. Upon some  
 parts of the old continent that system still remains;  
 building upon the fiction, that sovereigns own the  
 world and its inhabitants, having derived all from God;  
 and that the people are to have only such a measure  
 of personal freedom, and such possessions, as kings  
 may choose to bestow. Here was assumed for the  
 first time the grand principle of a *voluntary confede-  
 racy of independent men; instituting government, for  
 the good, not of the governors, but of the governed.*

6. There were the same number of persons on board  
 the May-Flower as had left England; but one, a ser-  
 vant, had died; and one, a male child, Peregrine White,  
 was born on the passage. Carver was immediately  
 chosen governor, and Standish, captain.

7. No comfortable home, or smiling friends, await-  
 ed the Pilgrims. They, who went on shore, waded  
 through the cold surf, to a homeless desert. But a  
 place to settle in must be found, and no time was to be  
 lost. The shallop unfortunately needed repairs, and  
 in the meantime a party set out to make discoveries by  
 land. They found "a little corn, and many graves;"  
 and in a second excursion they encountered the chill-  
 ing blasts of a November snow storm, which laid in  
 some, the foundation of mortal disease. The country  
 was wooded, and tolerably stocked with game.

4. What their next step? For what did they combine into  
 one body? To what did they bind themselves? — 5. What may  
 be said of this compact? Upon what fiction are some govern-  
 ments founded? What was here assumed? — 6. What number  
 of persons arrived? What officers were chosen? — 7. What  
 can you say of their first arrival? What had they to do? What  
 excursions did they make?

An  
 import-  
 ant trans-  
 action.

100 of the  
 Pilgrims.

Nov. 11,  
 They go  
 on shore.

8. When the shallop was finished, Carver, Bradford and Winslow, with a party of eighteen, manned the feeble bark, and set forth. Steering along the western shore of Cape Cod, they made, in three days, the inner circuit of the bay. "It was," says one of the number, "very cold; for the water froze our clothes, and made them many times like coats of iron." They landed occasionally to explore; and at night, inclosed with only a slight barricade of boughs, they stretched themselves upon the hard ground.

P.T. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. II.

Dec. 6,  
A party  
set sail  
in the  
shallop.

9. On the second morning, as their devotions closed, they received a shower of Indian arrows; when, sallying out, they discharged their guns, and the savages fled. Again they offered prayers with thanksgiving; and proceeding on their way, their shallop was nearly wrecked by a wintry storm of terrible violence. After unspeakable dangers, they sheltered themselves under the lee of a small island, where, amidst darkness and rain, they landed, and with difficulty, made a fire. In the morning, they found themselves at the entrance of a harbor. The next day was the Sabbath. They rested and kept it holy, though all that was dear to them depended on their promptness.

Dec. 8,  
Attacked  
by the  
Nausets.

10. The next day, *the pilgrims landed on the rock of Plymouth*. Finding the harbor good, springs abundant, and the land promising for tillage, they decided to settle here, and named the place from that which they last left in England. In a few days they brought the May-Flower to the harbor; and on the 25th of December they began building, having first divided the whole company into nineteen families, and assigned them contiguous lots, of size according to that of the family, about eight feet front, and fifty deep, to each person. Each man was to build his own house. Besides this, the company were to make a building of twenty feet square, as a common receptacle. This was

1620.  
Dec. 14,  
Ply-  
mouth  
Rock.

8. What party set sail in the shallop? What course did they take? What sufferings encounter? — 9. What happened on the second morning? Recollect Capt. Hunt, and say if these Indians had any cause to dislike the English? Relate what further happened, and where the Pilgrims landed? How did they spend the Sabbath? — 10. On what day and year did the Pilgrims land on the rock of Plymouth? At what time commence building? How proceed with it? How divide the land?

P'T. 1. soonest completed, but was unfortunately destroyed by fire.

P'D. III.  
CH. III.

They  
suffer,  
but re-  
pine not.

April 5,  
1621.

11. Their huts went up but slowly ; for though their hearts were strong, yet their hands had grown feeble, through fatigue, hardship, and scanty fare. Many were wasting with consumptions. Daily some yielded to sickness, and daily some sunk to the grave. Before spring, half of their number, among whom were the governor and his wife, lay buried on the shore. Yet they never repined, or repented of the step they had taken ; and when, on the 5th of April, the May-Flower left them, not one, so much as spoke of returning to England. They rather confessed the continual mercies of a "wonder-working Providence," that had carried them through so many dangers, and was making them, the honored instruments, of so great a work.

### CHAPTER III.

The Savages—Massasoit's Alliance—Winslow's Visit to the Pokanokets.

March  
16,  
First  
visit.

1. THE Pilgrims had as yet seen but few of the natives, and those hostile, when Samoset, an Indian, who had learned a little English at Penobscot, boldly entered their village, with a cheerful "Welcome Englishmen." He soon came again, with four others, among whom was Tisquantum, who had spread favorable reports of the English among his countrymen, and was afterwards of great service as an interpreter.

The re-  
ception

2. They gave notice that Massasoit, the sachem of the Pokanokets, was hard by. He appeared on a hill, with a body of attendants, armed, and painted with gaudy colors. The chief desired that some one should

11. What was their condition during this first winter ? Did they repine and complain ?

CHAPTER III.—1. Who was Samoset ? Tisquantum ? — 2. What notice did they give ? Who was Massasoit ? What did he do, and what desire ?

be sent to confer with him. Edward Winslow, famed for the sweetness of his disposition and behavior, as well as for his talents, courage, and efficiency, was wisely chosen. Captain Standish found means to make a martial show, with drums and trumpets; which gave the savages wonderful delight.

3. The sachem, on coming into the village, was so well pleased with the attentions paid him, that he acknowledged the authority of the king of England, and entered into an alliance, offensive and defensive, with the colonists, which remained inviolate for more than fifty years.

P<sup>r</sup>T. I.  
P<sup>r</sup>D. III.  
CH. III.  
  
Alliance  
with  
Massa-  
soit

4. In July, Edward Winslow and Stephen Hopkins, went on an embassy to Massasoit, at Montaup. The sachem was much pleased, with the present of a red coat, from Governor Bradford, who had succeeded Carver. The envoys obtained from him an engagement, that the furs of the Pokanokets should be sold to the colony.

1621.  
July.  
Embassy

5. Massasoit feared the Narragansetts, and was doubtless, on that account, desirous of cultivating the friendship of the English. Canonicus, the old hereditary chieftain of that confederacy, perhaps offended at this intimacy, or regarding the whites as intruders, meditated a war against them. This he openly intimated, by sending to Governor Bradford, a bunch of arrows, tied with the skin of a rattlesnake. Bradford stuffed the skin with powder and ball, and sent it back; and nothing more was heard, at that time, of war.

Narra-  
gansetts  
threaten.  
Jan.  
1622.

6. The next year, news came to Plymouth, that Massasoit was sick. Winslow taking suitable articles, went to Montaup. He found the Indians bewailing, and practising their noisy powows or incantations, around the sightless chieftain. Affectionately he extended his hand and exclaimed, "Art thou Winsnow?" (He could not articulate the liquid l.) "Art thou Winsnow? But, O, Winsnow! I shall never see thee

Winslow  
visits the  
sick  
chief.

2. What was done, and who chosen by the Pilgrims? — 3. What alliance made? — 4. What visit was afterwards made? What trade secured? — 5. What Indians was Massasoit afraid of? How did their chief threaten the Pilgrims? How did Governor Bradford reply? — 6. Give an account of Winslow's second visit to Massasoit.

P.T.I. more." Winslow administered cordials, and he re-  
 covered. He then revealed a conspiracy which the  
 P.D. III. Indians had formed and requested him to join. "But  
 CH. III. now," said he, "I know that the English love me."

7. Agreeably to Massasoit's advice, that a bold stroke  
 should be struck, and the heads of the plot taken off,  
 A ren- the intrepid Standish, with a party of only eight, went  
 counter, into the hostile country, attacked a house where the  
 principal conspirators had met, and put them to death.

8. In justice to the Indians, it should be stated,  
 that they were provoked to this conspiracy, by "Mas-  
 ter Weston's men." These were a colony of sixty  
 Englishmen, sent over in June, 1622, by Thomas  
 Master Weston's Men, Weston. Though hospitably received at Plymouth,  
 they stole the young corn from the stalk, and thus  
 brought want and distress upon the settlers the en-  
 suing winter and spring. They then made a short-  
 lived and pernicious settlement, at Weymouth.  
 Weston was a London merchant, once the friend of  
 the Pilgrims.

9. Notwithstanding all the hardships, all the wisdom  
 and constancy, of the colonists, the partners of the  
 1624 concern in London complained of small returns; and  
 to even had the meanness to send a vessel to rival them  
 1626. in their trade with the Indians. Winslow went to  
 England, and negotiated a purchase for himself and  
 seven of his associates in the colony, by which the  
 Wins- property was vested in them; and they sold out to the  
 low's ne- colony at large, for the consideration of a monopoly  
 gocia- of the trade with the Indians for six years.

10. New Plymouth now began to flourish. For  
 the land being divided, each man labored for himself  
 and his family. The government was a *pure democ-*  
 Govern- *racy*, resembling that now exercised in a town meet-  
 ment, ing. Each male inhabitant had a vote; the governor  
 had two.

---

7. In what respect did the Pilgrims follow the sachem's ad-  
 vice? — 8. By whom had the natives been provoked? — 9. On  
 what account did Winslow go to England? What bargain did  
 he make? To whom did the eight first purchasers sell out?  
 And for what consideration? — 10. Why did New Plymouth  
 now flourish? What was their government at first?



11. Numbers of their brethren of the church at Leyden came over within the first few years to join the settlement. The people of Plymouth gave a thousand pounds to assist them to emigrate. But the good Robinson was not permitted to enter the land of his hopes and affections. He died in Leyden, 1625, to the great grief of the Pilgrims.

P'T.I.  
P'D. III.  
CH. IV.  
**1625.**  
Death of  
Robinson.

## CHAPTER IV.

Grand Council of Plymouth.—New Hampshire—Massachusetts Bay.

1. IN November, 1620, the same month in which the Pilgrims arrived on the American coast, James I. issued a charter, or patent, to the duke of Lenox, the marquisses of Buckingham and Hamilton, the earls of Arundel and Warwick, Sir Ferdinando Gorges, and thirty-four associates; styling them the "Grand Council of Plymouth, for planting and governing New England, in America." This patent granted them the territory between the "fortieth and forty-eighth degrees of north latitude, and extending throughout the main land from sea to sea.

**1620.**  
Grand  
Council.

Sweep-  
ing pa-  
tent.

2. This territory, which had been previously called North Virginia, now received the name of New England, by royal authority. From this patent were derived all the subsequent grants, under which the New England colonies were settled. But the persons who transacted business for the company, were unacquainted with geography, and avaricious. They accordingly made their grants in an ignorant or dishonest manner; so that much trouble ensued.

North  
Virginia  
called  
New  
England

**11.** Did any of their brethren from Leyden come over? Did the good Robinson?

**CHAPTER IV.—1.** Of whom did the Grand Council of Plymouth consist? Of whom receive a charter? When? What was the territory granted them?—**2.** How was the name changed? What was derived from this patent? How was the business of the company transacted?



**P'T. I.** 3. Sir Ferdinando Gorges had been an officer in the  
**P'D. III** navy of Elizabeth, and a companion of Sir Walter  
**CH. IV.** Raleigh. He was ambitious, and perhaps thought  
 Gorges he should become the duke or prince of some large  
 and territory. He was the prime mover in getting up  
 Mason. the Grand Council of Plymouth, and was made its  
 President. Similar motives actuated Captain Mason,  
 and he became its Secretary.

**1621.** 4. Mason procured from the Grand Council the ab-  
 March 9, surd grant of "all the land from the river of Naum-  
 Patent of Merrimack, and all the country lying between the two  
 Mariana. rivers, and all islands within three miles of the coast."  
 The district was to be called *Mariana*.

**1622.** 5. The next year Gorges and Mason jointly obtain-  
 Charter of Maine ed of the Council another patent of "all the lands  
 and between the Merrimack and Kennebec rivers, extend-  
 N. H. ing back to the great lakes, and river of Canada."  
 This tract received the name of *Lacaonia*. Under this  
 grant some feeble settlements were made at the mouth  
 of the Piscataqua, and as far up the river, as the present  
 town of Dover.

6. The persecution of the Puritans in England con-  
 Mr. White, tinued, and Mr. White, a minister of Dorchester, pro-  
 the pat- jected another colony to America. As early as 1624,  
 ron of a few persons were established on the site of Salem.  
 Mass.

7. Several gentlemen of Dorchester purchased of  
 the Grand Council in 1628, a patent "of that part of  
**1628.** New England which lies between three miles north of  
 Patent the Merrimack river, and three miles to the south of  
 for Mass. Charles river, and extending from the Atlantic to the  
 South Sea." This tract was in part covered by Ma-  
 son's patent.

8. John Endicot, a rugged puritan, began in Salem,  
 The pio- the "wilderness-work for the colony of Massachu-  
 neer of setts." He brought over his family, and other emi-  
 Salem. grants, to the number of one hundred. Roger Conant

3. Who was Sir F. Gorges? What person had similar ob-  
 jects? — 4. What patent did Mason obtain? — 5. What patent  
 did Mason and Gorges obtain jointly? — 6. Who projected ano-  
 ther colony to America? Where was a settlement begun? — 7  
 What patent was obtained? — 8. Who was the pioneer for the  
 Bay state? Where did he begin? How many bring over?

and two other persons from New Plymouth, had selected this spot, then called Naumkeag, for their settlement; and Conant was there, to give, to Endicot and his party, such welcome to the New World, as the desert forest could afford.

P'T. I.  
P'D. III.  
CH. V.

9. The next year, the proprietors in England, obtained of King Charles a charter, confirming the patent of the Council of Plymouth, and conveying to them powers of government. They were incorporated by the name of the "Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay, in New England." The first general court of the company was held in England, when they fixed upon a form of government for the colony, and appointed Endicot governor.

1629.  
Charter  
to the  
Bay  
Comp.

10. About three hundred persons sailed for America during this year. A part of them joined Mr. Endicot at Salem, and the remainder, exploring the coast for a better station, laid the foundation of Charlestown.

Charles-  
town  
founded.

## CHAPTER V.

### The Colony of Massachusetts Bay.

1. A more extensive emigration was now thought of, than had been before attempted. But an objection arose; the colony was to be governed by a council residing in England. To obviate this hindrance, the company agreed to form a council of those who should emigrate, and who might hold their sessions thereafter in the new settlement.

The  
"best"  
sent.

2. On the election, the excellent JOHN WINTHROP was chosen governor. He had afterwards for his

8. Who was on the spot to receive them? — 9. What did the proprietors obtain? Where hold their first court? Whom make governor? — 10. How many came over during 1629? Where did they settle?

CHAPTER V.—1. What objections arose to an extensive emigration? What was done to obviate it? — 2. Who was chosen to go over as governor?

P'T. I. eulogy, a praise beyond that of any other person in  
 P'D. III. the colony. "He was," say they, "unto us as a mo-  
 CH. V. ther, parent-like distributing his goods, and gladly  
 bearing our infirmities; yet did he ever maintain the  
 figure and honor of his place, with the spirit of a true  
 gentleman." The company had determined to colo-  
 nize only their "best." Eight hundred accompanied  
 Winthrop; and, during the season, seventeen vessels  
 were employed, bringing over in all, fifteen hundred  
 persons.

**1630.**  
 Fifteen  
 hundred  
 emigrate.

Arrive at  
 Salem in  
 June.

3. Winthrop and his friends, found no luxurious table spread for them in the wilderness; but they freely gave of their own stores, to the famished and enfeebled sufferers, whom they met. Regarding Salem as sufficiently peopled, the newly-arrived, located themselves without delay, beyond its limits. Their first care, wherever they went, was to provide for the ministration of the gospel. Settlements were soon begun, and churches established at Charlestown, Dorchester, Boston, Roxbury, Lynn, and Watertown.

**1632.**  
 Hard-  
 ships en-  
 dured.

4. Unused, as many of these settlers were, to aught but plenty and ease, the hardships before them, though borne with a willing mind, were too much for the body, especially in the case of women. Many died, though in the joy of believing. Among these, was the beloved Arbella Johnson, of the noble house of Lincoln. Her husband, Isaac Johnson, the principal of the emigrants in respect to wealth, felt her loss so severely, that he soon followed her to the grave. He made a liberal bequest to the colony, and died "in sweet peace."

**1631.**  
 Affairs of  
 govern-  
 ment.

5. Agreeably to the charter which the Company of Massachusetts Bay had received from the king, the voters agreed that important regulations should be enacted in an assembly of all the freemen. A meeting was convened at Boston, in October; when Winthrop was re-elected governor, and Thomas Dudley, who had

---

2. What his character? What kind of persons and how many accompanied him? — 3. What was the conduct of Winthrop and his friends? Where were the first villages and churches? — 4. What can you say of the hardships endured? Who among others died? — 5. When was an assembly held in Boston? Who was chosen to office?

been a faithful steward to the earl of Lincoln, was chosen deputy-governor. P<sup>T</sup>. I.  
P<sup>D</sup>. III.  
CH. VI.

6. At the first, the freemen all went to Boston to vote, every man for himself. The government then was a *simple democracy*. But the settlements were soon so spread, that some would have to go many miles. They then concluded to choose certain of their number, as is now done in our freeman's meetings, to go to the seat of government and do their public business for them. This was changing the government to a *representative democracy*. The same change took place in most of the other colonies. Govern-  
ment  
changes.

7. Charles I., the son and successor of James I., was no less violent in his religious and political despotism; and emigrants continued to flock to New England. In the year 1635, not less than three thousand arrived, among whom, was the younger Henry Vane, afterwards much known in the history of England. 1635.  
3000 emi-  
grate to  
N. E.

8. The high manner of Vane, his profound religious feeling, and his great knowledge, so wrought in his favor, that, disregarding his youth, the people rashly withdrew their suffrages from the good Winthrop, and chose him governor, the year after his arrival. Vane  
governor.  
1636.

## CHAPTER VI.

### Rhode Island and its first Founder.

1. ROGER WILLIAMS, a puritan minister, had been driven from England by persecution. When he arrived in Massachusetts, he proclaimed, that the only business of the human legislator is with the actions of man as they affect his fellow-man; but as for the thoughts and Feb. 5,  
1631.  
Views of  
tolera-  
tion.

6. What kind of government was first in use in the colonies generally? To what kind was it changed? — 7. Who succeeded James I., as king of England? Was he less violent in persecution? What can you say respecting emigration and emigrants? — 8. What can you say of Henry Vane?

CHAPTER VI.—Who was Roger Williams? What new opinions did he proclaim?

P'T I. feelings of his mind, and the acts or omissions of his  
 P'D. III. life, as respects religious worship, the only law-giver  
 CH. VI. is God; and the only human tribunal, a man's own  
 conscience.

2. The minds of the puritan fathers were troubled, by these new and strange doctrines, which they believed would, unless checked, destroy all that they had suffered so much to establish. Williams, the eloquent young divine, frank and affectionate, had, however, won the hearts of the people of Salem; and they invited him to settle with them as their pastor. The  
**1635.** general court forbade it. Williams withdrew to Ply-  
 Williams mouth, where he remained as pastor for two years, and  
 settled at then returned to Salem, where he was again gladly re-  
 Salem. ceived by the people.

3. The court punished the town for this offence, by withholding a tract of land, to which they had a claim. Williams wrote to the churches, endeavoring to show the injustice of this proceeding; whereupon the court ordered, that, until ample apology was made for the letter, Salem should be disfranchised. Then all, even  
 Salem his wife, yielded to the clamor against him; but he  
 disfran- declared to the court, before whom he was arraigned,  
 chised. that he was ready to be bound, or, if need were, to at-  
 Williams test with his life, his devotion to his principles. The  
 banished. court, however, pronounced against him the sentence of exile.

4. Winter was approaching, and he obtained permission to remain till spring. The affections of his people revived, and throngs collected to hear the be-  
**1636.** loved voice, soon to cease from among them. The authorities became alarmed, and sent a pinnace to convey him to England; but he had disappeared.

5. Now a wanderer in the wilderness, he had not, upon many a stormy night, either "food, or fire, or company," nor better lodging than the hollow of a tree. At last, a few followers having joined him, he

2. How did they affect the minds of the Puritan settlers? Relate what happened respecting Williams? — 3. What did the general court after Salem had twice received Williams? What letter did Williams write? What was the consequence? — 4. Was the sentence of Williams immediately executed? 5. What happened now to Williams?



fixed at Seckonk, since Rehoboth, within the limits of the colony of Plymouth. Winslow was now governor there; and he felt himself obliged to communicate to Williams, that his remaining would breed disturbance between the two colonies; and he added his advice to that privately conveyed to Williams, by a letter from Winthrop, "to steer his course to Narragansett Bay."

P'T. I.  
P'D III.  
CH. VI.  
He goes to the Narragansetts.

6. Williams now threw himself upon the mercy of Canonicus. In a little time he so won upon him, that he extended his hospitality to him and his suffering company. He would not, he said, *sell* his land, but he freely *gave* to Williams, whose neighborhood he now coveted, and who was favored by his nephew Miantonomoh, all the neck of land between the Pawtucket and Moshasuck rivers, "that his people might sit down in peace and enjoy it forever." Thither they went; and, with pious thanksgiving, named the goodly place PROVIDENCE.

Receives a noble gift.

7. By means of this acquaintance with the Narragansetts, Williams learned that a conspiracy was forming to cut off the English, headed by Sassacus, the powerful chief of the Pequods. The Narragansetts had been strongly moved by the eloquence of Mononotto, associate chief with Sassacus, to join in the plot. They wavered; but Williams, by making a perilous journey to their country, persuaded them rather to unite with the English, against their ancient enemies.

The Narragansetts favor the English.

8. Anxious to do good to his brethren, though they had persecuted him, Williams next wrote Governor Winthrop, who, taking the alarm, invited Miantonomoh to visit him at Boston. The chieftain went, and there entered into a treaty of peace and alliance with the English; engaging to them the assistance of the Narragansetts against the Pequods.. Williams founded, at Providence, the first Baptist Church in America.

5. What advice did he get, and from whom? — 6. To whom did he apply for shelter? Could he buy land of the sachem? Who favored him? What noble gift did he receive? — 7. What did Williams learn and what do respecting the Narragansetts? — 8. What letter did he write? What church did he found?



## CHAPTER VII.

## Connecticut and its Founders.

P'T. I.  
P'D. III.  
CH. VII.

The  
Dutch,  
the dis-  
coverers  
of Conn.  
River.

1. THE Dutch and English both claimed to be the original discoverers of Connecticut river; but the former had probably the juster claim. The natives along its valley were kept in fear by the more warlike Pequods on the east, and the terrible Mohawks in the west; and hence they desired the presence of the English, as defenders.

An Invi-  
tation.  
1631.

2. As early as 1631, Wahquimacut, one of their sachems, being pressed by the Pequods, went to Boston, and afterwards to Plymouth, earnestly requesting that an English colony might be sent to his pleasant country. Governor Winthrop declined his proposal; but Edward Winslow, then governor of Plymouth, favored the project, and visited, and examined the valley.

Dutch fix  
at Hart-  
ford.

3. The Plymouth people had been, some time previous, advised by the Dutch to settle on Connecticut river; and they now determined to pursue the enterprise. They fixed on the site of Windsor, as the place to erect a trading-house. But the Dutch changed their minds, and were now determined to take the country themselves. They, therefore, erected a small trading fort, called the house of Good Hope, on a point of land in Sukeag, since Hartford, at the junction of the Little river with the Connecticut.

October,  
1633.  
Ply-  
mouth  
people at  
Wind-  
sor.

4. The materials for the Plymouth trading-house being put on board a vessel, Captain Holmes, who commanded, soon appeared, sailing up the river. When opposite to the Dutch fort he was commanded to stop. or he would be fired upon; but he resolutely kept his course; and the Windsor house, the first in Connecticut, was erected and fortified before winter.

---

CHAPTER VII.—1. What can you say of the discovery of Connecticut River? What of the natives of its valley?—2. What request was made by one of the sachems? How was it received?—3. What did the Dutch advise, and what do? Where did the Plymouth people locate?—4. How proceed in respect to building? What can be said of the house they built?

5. The Grand Council first patented Connecticut to the earl of Warwick. That nobleman transferred his patent to Lord Say and Seal, and Lord Brooke, with others. John Winthrop, son of the worthy governor of Massachusetts, having been sent to England on business for that colony, took an agency for the two Lords patentees, and was directed by them to build a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut river.

P'T. I.  
P'D. III.  
CH. VII.

Patent of  
Conn.

The  
younger  
Win-  
throp.

6. The patent granted all that part of New England which extends "from Narragansett river one hundred and twenty miles on a straight line, near the shore, towards the south-west, as the coast lies toward Virginia, and within that breadth, from the Atlantic ocean to the South Sea." These bounds show how little was known by the Grand Council of the geography of the country.

1631.  
Extent of  
the pa-  
tent.

7. Before Mr. Winthrop's commission was known, THOMAS HOOKER and his church had determined to leave Newtown, since called Cambridge, and plant themselves upon Connecticut river, in accordance with the invitation given by the sachem. They obtained for that object, a reluctant permission from the general court of Massachusetts.

1633,  
to  
1635.

Hooker  
at New-  
town

8. Other parties around the Bay were also in motion. In August, a few pioneers, from Dorchester selected a place at Windsor, near the Plymouth trading-house; and others, from Watertown, fixed on Pyquag, now Wethersfield.

Windsor  
and  
Weth-  
ersfield.

9. Having made such preparations as they were able, a party, intending to be in advance of Hooker, set out in October, with their families, amounting in all to sixty persons, men, women, and children. To proceed rapidly across a trackless wilderness, through swamps and over mountains, was impossible, and when the tedious journey was accomplished, winter was at hand; and it set in earlier than usual, and was uncommonly severe.

Hard-  
ships  
endured.

---

5 Who gave the patent of Connecticut? Who was the first patentee? To whom did he transfer? What agent did they appoint? What directions give?—6. What territory did the patent include?—7. Where were Thomas Hooker and his church first settled? Where did they determine to go? What right had they to go there?—8. What other parties had similar designs?—9. Give an account of the party who went in advance of Hooker?

P<sup>T.</sup> I. 10. After enduring such hardships as human nature  
 P<sup>D.</sup> III. shudders to contemplate, most of the party, to save  
 CH. VII. life, got on board a vessel, and at length reached Mas-  
 Return sachusetts. A few remained, who lived on malt and  
 to the acorns. These resolute puritans were not, however,  
 Bay. discouraged, but most of those, who left the settlement  
 in the winter, returned in the spring with Hooker and  
 his company.

Fort at 11. Winthrop, in the meantime, commenced building  
 Say- the projected fort. A few days afterwards, a Dutch  
 brook. vessel, which was sent from New Netherlands, ap-  
 peared off the harbor to take possession of its en-  
 Attack trance. The English having by this time mounted two  
 and pieces of cannon, prevented their landing. They pro-  
 repulse. ceeded to complete the fort, which was named after  
 the two Lords patentees, Say-Brook.

12. The Pilgrims, in the exercise of their wonted  
 virtues, now sold their claim to lands in Windsor, to  
 the people of Dorchester; and the patentees were con-  
 tent, that the Massachusetts settlement should proceed.

Hooker 13. Thomas Hooker is regarded as the principal  
 in Eng- founder of Connecticut. In him a natural "grandeur  
 land. of mind" was cultivated by education, and chastened  
 by religion and adversity. He was commanding and  
 dignified in his ministerial office; yet, in private life he  
 was generous, compassionate, and tender. So attract-  
 ive was his pulpit eloquence, that in England he drew  
 crowds, often from great distances, of noble, as well  
 as plebeian hearers.

1633. 14. His congregation in England esteemed his min-  
 Meets his istry as so great a blessing, that, when persecution  
 church at drove him from his native land, they desired still to be  
 Boston. with him, although in these "ends of the earth." A  
 portion of his people had preceded him, and were al-  
 ready settled at Newtown, since Cambridge. As he  
 landed, they met him on the shore. With tears of

---

10. Were they discouraged? — 11. What happened at the  
 mouth of Connecticut river? — 12. What peaceable compromise  
 was made among the various settlers? — 13. Describe the prin-  
 cipal founder of Connecticut. — 14. What showed the affection  
 of his people in England? Did the church come to America  
 together?

affection he exclaimed, "Now I live ! if ye stand fast in the Lord!"

P'T. I.

P'D. III.

CH. VII.

15. Associated with Hooker, both in council and action, was JOHN HAYNES, a gentleman of excellent endowments, of unaffected meekness, and possessed of a very considerable estate. So desirous were the people of Massachusetts to detain him, that they made him their governor ; but he would not separate himself from his friend and pastor.

A good  
man

16. Warned by the calamities of the preceding autumn, Hooker would not delay, although his wife was so ill, as to be carried on a litter. The company departed from Newtown early in June, driving their flocks and herds. Many of them were accustomed to affluence ; but now, they all,—men, women and little children,—travelled on foot, through thickets, across streams and over mountains, lodging at night upon the unsheltered ground. But they put their cheerful trust in God, and we doubt not the ancient forest was, night and morning, made vocal with His praise.

June,  
**1636**  
The  
journey  
across  
the wil-  
derness

17. At length they reached their destined location, which they named Hartford. The excellent Haynes was chosen chief magistrate ; and the soil was purchased of the natives. The succeeding summer was one of the utmost exertion. Houses were to be built, lands cleared, food provided for the coming winter, roads made, the cunning and terrible savage to be guarded against, and, chiefly, a church and state to be organized. All was to be done, and all was accomplished, by wisdom, union, and labor.

Good  
conduct  
and  
success.

15. Give an account of John Haynes. — 16. Describe the journey of Hooker and his people? — 17. Where was their location? Who was made governor? How did they get the right of soil? What had they to do? By what means did they accomplish their undertakings?

## CHAPTER VIII.

## The Pequod War.

**P.T. I.** 1. THE Pequods were endeavoring to unite the In-  
**P.D. III.** dian tribes in a plot to exterminate the English, espe-  
**CH. VIII.** cially those of the colony, named from its river, CON-  
 NECTICUT. They had sought, as we have seen, the  
 alliance of their former enemies, the Narragansetts,  
 but through the influence of Roger Williams, Mian-  
 tonomoh, the war-chief of that nation, remained true to  
 the whites. Uncas, the Mohegan sagamore, formerly  
 a vassal, and of the same family with Sassacus, was  
 now his inveterate foe.

**1636.**

The  
 Pequods  
 hostile.

July,  
 Distress  
 of the  
 settlers.

2. The Pequods murdered Captain John Oldham, near Block Island. They made other attacks, and carried away some prisoners. They cut off stragglers from Saybrook, and had become so bold as to assault the fort, and use impudent and threatening language. Every where they were, or seemed to be, lurking, with purposes of murder. The whole settlement, thus constantly excited, was in the feverish condition of intense and continual fear. The people neither ate, slept, or labored, or even worshipped God in the sanctuary, without arms and ammunition at hand.

**1637.**

May,  
 The  
 court  
 declare  
 war.

3. A general court was called on the last of May, at Hartford. Thirty persons had already been killed, and the evidence was conclusive that the savages designed a general massacre. The court, therefore, righteously declared war.

4. The quota of troops from the three towns now settled, shows the rapid progress of the settlement. Hartford was to furnish ninety men, Windsor forty-two, and Wethersfield eighteen, making one hundred and fifty. John Mason was chosen captain. The

---

CHAPTER VIII.—1 & 2. What causes had the Pequod Indians given to the Connecticut people, to declare war against them? What was the condition of the people? — 3. When and where did the general court meet? What did they do? — 4. What troops were to be raised, and how apportioned?



troops embarked at Hartford; sailed down the river and along the coast to Narragansett Bay. Miantonomoh furnished them two hundred warriors, Uncas sixty. There were actually embodied of the English, only seventy-seven, of whom twenty, commanded by Captain Underhill, were from Massachusetts. Guided by a Pequod deserter, they reached Mystic, one of the two forts of Sassacus, at dawn of day.

P'T. I.  
P'D. III.  
CH. VIII.  
Route of  
troops  
under  
Mason.

5. Their Indian allies showed signs of fear, and Mason arranging them at a distance around the fort, advanced with his own little army. If they fell, there was no second force to defend their state, their wives and helpless children. As they approach, a dog barks, and an Indian sentinel cries out, "Owannox, Owannox!" the English, the English! They leap within the fort. The Indians fight desperately, and victory is doubtful. Mason then seizes and throws a flaming brand, shouting, "we must burn them." The light materials of their wigwams were instantly in a blaze. Hemmed in as the Indians now were, escape was impossible; and six hundred,—all who were within the fort, of every sex and age, in one hour perished.

May 25,  
Fort at  
Mystic  
destroy-  
ed.

6. The subjects of Sassacus now reproached him as the author of their misfortunes, and to escape destruction, he, with his chief captains fled to the Mo-hawks; but he was afterwards slain by a revengeful subject. Three hundred of his warriors, having burned his remaining fort, fled along the sea-coast. Mason, aided by fresh troops from Massachusetts, pursued the fugitive savages; traced them to a swamp in Fairfield, and there fought and defeated them.

1637.  
Pequod  
defeat at  
Fairfield.

7. Nearly one thousand of the Pequods were destroyed; many fled, and two hundred, beside women and children, remained as captives. Of these, some, we are grieved to relate, were sent to the West Indies and sold into slavery. The remainder were divided between the Narragansetts and the Mohegans. The two

The  
Pequods  
extinct.

---

4. Give a particular account of the armament—their number,—commander, and route. What assistance was received? 5. Describe Mason's arrangements—his approach—and the fate of the Pequods within the fort?—6. Of those remaining?—7. How many were destroyed? What was done with the residue?



**P.T. I.** Sachems, Uncas and Miantonomoh, between whom  
**P.D. III.** was mutual hatred, now engaged to live in peace.  
**CH. VIII.** The lands of the Pequods were regarded as conquered territory, and the name of the tribe was declared extinct.

**First thanks-giving.** 8. The prowess of the English had thus put the natives in fear, and a long peace ensued. All the churches in New England commemorated this deliverance, by keeping a day of common and devout thanksgiving.

**1639.** 9. The war had fallen heavily upon the colony. Their farming and their finances were deranged, but order and industry restored them. In 1639, they formally conjoined themselves, to be one state or commonwealth, and adopted a constitution. This ordained two annual general courts, at one of which, to be held in May, the whole body of freemen should choose a governor, deputy-governor, six magistrates, and other necessary officers.

**Civil government.**  
**Its arrangements.**

**1637.** 10. THEOPHILUS EATON and JOHN DAVENPORT, puritans of much distinction in England, were regarded as the founders of the colony of New Haven. These two friends collected their associates, and arrived at Boston, July 26th, 1637. Massachusetts was desirous of securing such settlers, but they preferred a separate establishment; and seeking a commercial station, they explored the coast, fixed on Quinnipiac, and in 1638, they moored their vessels in its harbor.

**Founders of N. Haven.**  
**Arrival at Boston**

11. The company had made some little preparation for the settlement the preceding summer, yet many sufferings were to be endured. The spring was uncommonly backward; their planted corn perished repeatedly in the ground, and they dreaded the utter failure of the crop; but at length they were cheered by warm weather, and surprised by the rapid progress of vegetation.

12. The first Sunday after they arrived, they met

7. With their lands? What two sachems engaged to live in peace?—8. On what occasion was the first New England thanksgiving?—9. When did they adopt a constitution? What can you say of the court held in May?—10. Who were the founders of New Haven? Describe their first operations?—11. What was the weather, and their prospects for a crop?

and worshipped under a large tree, when Mr. Davenport preached to them concerning the temptations of the wilderness. Not long after, the free planters subscribed, what, in distinction from a church union, they termed a *plantation-covenant*.

P'T. I.  
P'D. III.  
CH. IX.

April 18,  
1638.

13. Under this covenant they continued until the next year, when they assembled in a large barn belonging to Mr. Newman, formed themselves into a body politic, and established a form of government. The governor and magistrates were to hold annually a general court, to regulate the affairs of the colony. Eaton was chosen governor. They purchased their lands from the natives, and gave to the place the name of NEW HAVEN.

1639.  
Govern  
ment.

Mr.  
Eaton,  
governor

## CHAPTER IX.

Intolerance of the times.

1. ANNE HUTCHINSON, a resident of Boston, at this time advanced religious opinions, so entirely at variance with those of the Puritan settlers, that a "great disturbance" arose in the Bay colony. Gov. Vane considered that whether her opinions were true or false, she had a right to enjoy them herself, and explain them to others. Mr. Cotton, the minister of Boston, and the most celebrated of all the clergy of Massachusetts, was also, at first, inclined to defend Mrs. Hutchinson: but the ministers, generally, regarded her doctrines, not only as false, but, as dangerous to such a degree, that, if let alone, they would overthrow both church and state.

The the  
ological  
disturb-  
ance.

2. In this extremity, a synod of ministers was assembled at Boston. Mr. Davenport had opportunely

12. Where did they worship on the first Sunday? Where enter into the plantation-covenant? — 13. What political arrangements did they make the next year?

CHAPTER IX.—1. What caused a disturbance in the colony? What was Gov. Vane's view of the case? What that of the clergy generally? — 2. What assemblage was held at Boston?

**P.T. I.** arrived from London, and Mr. Hooker, desirous to prepare minds for political as well as religious union, re-crossed the wilderness from Hartford. Mrs. Hutchinson's opinions were unanimously condemned by the synod; and herself, and the most determined of her adherents were banished.

**1638,**  
to  
**1643.** 3. The unfortunate woman, excommunicated from the church, became an outcast from a society, which had but now followed and flattered her. She went first to Rhode Island, to join the settlement, which her followers had there made. From thence, she removed with her family to the state of New York, where she met death in its most appalling form; that of an Indian midnight massacre.

**1630.** 4. One of the earliest cares of the Puritan fathers, was to provide the means of instruction for their children. At the general court in September, 1630, the sum of four hundred pounds was voted to commence a college building, at Newtown, now called Cambridge. In 1638, Mr. John Harvard, a pious divine from England, dying at Charlestown, left to the college a bequest of nearly eight hundred pounds; and gratitude perpetuated his name in that of the institution. All the several colonies cherished the infant seminary, by contributions; regarding it as a nursery, from which the church and state, were to be replenished with qualified leaders.

**1638.** 5. RHODE ISLAND. The most respectable of the banished followers of Mrs. Hutchinson went south, headed by WILLIAM CODDINGTON and JOHN CLARKE. The latter had been persecuted as a baptist. By the influence of Roger Williams, they obtained from Miantonomoh the noble gift of the island of Aquetneck, called RHODE ISLAND, on account of its beauty and fertility. Here they established a government, on the principles of political equality and religious toleration. Coddington was made chief magistrate.

2. What was done in regard to Mrs. Hutchinson? — 3. What became of her? — 4. What was done in regard to the education of the young? Who was John Harvard? For what is he remembered? — 5. Who gave away the island of Aquetneck? To whom? What name was given to it? On what principles was government established?

6. **NEW HAMPSHIRE.** Another portion of the disciples of Mrs. Hutchinson, headed by her brother-in-law, Mr. Wheelwright, went north; and, in the valley of the Piscataqua, founded Exeter. It was within a tract of country lying between that river and the Merrimac, which Wheelwright claimed by virtue of a purchase made of the Indians. This claim interfered with that conveyed by patent to Mason and Gorges, and was accordingly disputed.

P'T. I.  
P'D. III.  
CH. IX.

1629.

Mr.  
Wheel-  
right's  
Indian  
patent.

7. In the meantime, small, independent settlements, were made along the water courses, by emigrants from Massachusetts and the other colonies; but they did not flourish, for they imprudently neglected the culture of their lands, present necessities being scantily supplied by fish and game. In 1641, these settlements, induced by a sense of their weakness, petitioned Massachusetts to receive them under its jurisdiction. The general court granted their request, and they were incorporated with that colony.

1641.

New  
Hamp-  
shire set-  
tlements.

8. **DELAWARE.** Gustavus Adolphus, the hero of his age, projected, in 1627, a colony of his subjects from Sweden and Finland. About ten years afterwards they came over headed by Peter Minuets, and settled at Christina Creek, on the west side of the Delaware, calling that river Swedeland-stream, and the country, New Sweden.

1627.

Swedes  
and Fins.  
They set-  
tle on the  
Delaware

1638.

9. Though this was the first effectual settlement, yet the Dutch had in 1629 purchased of the natives a tract of land extending from Cape Henlopen to the mouth of the Delaware river. A small colony conducted by De Vries, came from Holland, and settled near Lewistown. They perished by the savages; but the Dutch continuing to claim the country, dissensions arose between them and the Swedish emigrants.

1629.

The  
Dutch  
claim  
originates

---

6. Who founded Exeter? Where is it? What claim had Mr. Wheelwright to the land? Who disputed his claim?—7. What further may be said of New Hampshire at this early day?—8. What eminent person projected a colony to America? Where did the Swedes and Fins settle?—9. Had there been a settlement of the Dutch near? What became of the Dutch colony?

## CHAPTER X.

## Maryland—Virginia.

P<sup>T</sup>. I.P<sup>D</sup>. III.  
C<sup>A</sup>. X.

1631.

1. MARYLAND. In 1631, William Clayborne obtained from Charles I. a license to traffic, in those parts of America, for which there was not already a patent granted. Clayborne planted a small colony, on Kent island, in Chesapeake bay.

L<sup>d</sup>. Balti-  
more's  
patent.

2. George Calvert, afterwards LORD BALTIMORE was of the Roman Catholic faith. To enjoy his religion unmolested, he wished to emigrate to some vacant tract in America. He explored the country, and then returned to England. The Queen, Henrietta Maria, daughter to Henry IV. of France, gave to the territory which he had selected, the name of MARYLAND, and Lord Baltimore obtained it by a royal patent.

April 15,  
1632.  
2<sup>d</sup> Lord  
Balti-  
more.

3. He died at London in 1632, before his patent passed to a legal form ; but his son, Cecil Calvert, the second Lord Baltimore, by the influence of Sir Robert Cecil, obtained the grant intended for his father. By this patent he held the country from the Potomac to the 40th degree of north latitude ; and thus, by a mere act of the crown, what had long before been granted to Virginia, was now taken away ; as what was now granted was subsequently given to Penn, to the extent of a degree. Hence very troublesome disputes arose.

Calvert  
sails,  
Nov.

1633.

Arrives  
Feb.

1634.

4. Lord Baltimore appointed as governor his brother, Leonard Calvert, who, with two hundred emigrants, sailed near the close of 1633, and arrived at the Potomac early in 1634. Here they purchased of the natives, Yamaco, one of their settlements, to which was given the name of St. Mary. Calvert secured by this pacific course, comfortable habitations, some improved lands, and the friendship of the natives.

---

1. What was done by William Clayborne ? — 2. Why did Lord Baltimore wish to leave England ? Who named his territory after herself ? — 3. Did the first Lord Baltimore receive the patent ? What did his son obtain ? What country did this patent include ? — 4. Who conducted the first colony to Maryland ? What judicious course did he pursue ?



5. The country was pleasant, great religious freedom existed, and a liberal charter had been granted. P.T. I.  
P.D. III  
CH. X.  
This allowed the proprietor, aided by the freemen, to pass laws, without reserving to the crown the right of rejecting them. Emigrants accordingly soon flocked to the province, from the other colonies, and from England.

6. Thus had the earliest settlers of this beautiful portion of our country established themselves, without the sufferings endured by the pioneers of former settlements. The proprietary government, generally so detrimental, proved here a nursing mother. Lord Baltimore expended for the colonists, within a few years, forty thousand pounds; and they, "out of desire to return some testimony of gratitude," voted in their assembly, "such a subsidy, as the low and poor estate of the colony could bear." Generosity and gratitude.

7. Lord Baltimore invited the puritans of Massachusetts to emigrate to Maryland, offering them "free liberty of religion." They rejected this, as they did a similar proposition from Cromwell, to remove to the West Indies. 1642  
Lord B.  
invites  
the puri-  
tans.

8. The restless, intriguing Clayborne, called the evil genius of Maryland, had been constantly on the alert to establish, by agents in England, a claim to the country, and thus to subvert the government of the good proprietary. In his traffic with the natives, he had learned their dispositions, and wrought them to jealousy. In England, the authority of the long Parliament now superseded that of the king. Of this, Clayborne, and other disorderly subjects of Lord Baltimore, took advantage. Thus the fair dawn of this rising settlement was early overcast. 1635,  
to  
1643.

9. VIRGINIA. In 1621, Sir Francis Wyatt arrived as governor, bringing from the company in England a more perfect constitution for the colony. It contained 1621.  
Sir  
Francis  
Wyatt.

---

5. What inviting circumstances drew emigrants?—6. What may be said of the proprietary government? How much did Lord Baltimore expend for the colony? Did they testify any gratitude? 7. What did Lord Baltimore offer the Puritans?—8. What was Clayborne called? What were some of his plans to injure the proprietor?—9. Who arrived in Virginia? What did he bring?

P'T. I. some seeming concessions to the people, which not  
 P'D. III. only gratified the settlers, but encouraged emigrants;  
 CH. X. and a large number accordingly accompanied Governor  
 Wyatt to the province.

10. This year, cotton was first planted in Virginia,  
 Cotton and "the plentiful coming up of the seeds," was re-  
 first regarded by the planters with curiosity and interest.  
 planted.

11. Opechancanough, the brother and successor of  
 Powhatan, had determined to extirpate the whites, and  
 A con- regain the country. For this purpose he formed a  
 spirary. conspiracy to massacre all the English; and during  
 four years, he was, secretly, concerting his plan. To  
 each tribe its station was allotted, and the part it was  
 to act prescribed.

12. On the 22d of March, 1622, at mid-day, they  
 rushed upon the English, in all their settlements, and  
 butchered men, women, and children, without pity or  
 remorse. In one hour, nearly a fourth part of the  
 1622. whole colony was cut off. The slaughter would have  
 Indians been universal, if compassion, or a sense of duty, had  
 massacre not moved a converted Indian, to whom the secret  
 300. was communicated, to reveal it to his master, on the  
 night before the massacre. This was done in time to  
 save Jamestown and the adjacent settlements.

13. A bloody war ensued. The English, by their  
 arms and discipline, were more than a match for the  
 Indians; and they retaliated in such a manner as left  
 The the colonies for a long time free from savage molesta-  
 whites tion. They also received a considerable accession of  
 retaliate. territory, by appropriating those of the conquered na-  
 tives.

14. In 1624 the London company, which had set-  
 1624. tled Virginia, was dissolved by King James, and its  
 L. Com. rights and privileges returned to the crown. Gover-  
 dissolved nors were sent over by Charles I. the successor of  
 and Va. James, who were oppressive; and the Virginians re-  
 a royal sisted their authority. Sir William Berkeley was sent  
 province. over in 1641. The colonists were under him con-

---

9. What effect had these concessions? — 10. When was cot-  
 ton first planted in Virginia? — 11 & 12. Give an account of  
 the Indian massacre? — 13. What was done in retaliation? —  
 14. What became of the London company? Under whom was  
 Virginia then? What can you say of the royal governors?

firmed in their enjoyment of the elective franchise. Great harmony prevailed, notwithstanding the assembly took a high tone in respect to their political rights; boldly declaring "that they expected no taxes or impositions, except such as should be freely voted for their own wants."

P'T. I.  
P'D. III.  
CH. XI.

## CHAPTER XI.

Massachusetts threatened.—The Puritans in England—Vane.—  
UNION.

1. THE English court began to be jealous, that their colonies, especially that of the Bay, did not intend to be governed by the parent country. They were truly informed by some, who returned dissatisfied from Massachusetts, that not only was their own religion established by law, but the use of the English liturgy was prohibited. Various other charges were made against the province, showing that it was casting off dependence upon the English crown, and assuming sovereign powers to itself.

The  
court dis-  
pleased  
with  
Mass.

2. Much displeased, the king determined that the colonies should be brought to submission, both in church and state; and he made archbishop Laud, famed for his persecuting spirit, chief of a council, which was appointed, with full powers to govern the colony in all cases whatever.

1634  
Appoint  
commis-  
sioners.

3. The Grand Council of Plymouth, as it had its beginning and course, so also it had its end in little better than knavery. We have seen that its own members, Gorges and Mason, and others, had been its patentees. These persons now wishing to make

14. Under what governor did harmony prevail? What did the assembly declare?

CHAPTER XI.—1. Of what were the British government jealous? What reports concerning Massachusetts were true?—2. What did the king determine? Who was made chief of a council? With what powers?—3. On what occasion was the Grand Council of Plymouth dissolved?

**P.T. I.** good certain claims to territory in Massachusetts, gave  
**P.D. III.** up their patent to the crown; petitioning for redress  
**CH. XI.** against that colony, which they asserted had forfeited  
 its charter, by exceeding its powers and territorial  
 Mass. ar- limits.  
 raigned.

**Dec.**  
**1634.** 4. Willing to humble their "unbridled spirits," the  
 Mass. court of king's bench, issued a writ against the indi-  
 charter viduals of the corporation of Massachusetts Bay, ac-  
 annulled. cusing them with certain acts, by which they had for-  
 feited their charter, and requiring them to show war-  
 rant for their proceedings. At a subsequent term, the  
 court pronounced sentence against them, and declared  
 that their charter was forfeited.

**3000**  
**come to**  
**N. Eng-**  
**land in**  
**1638.** 5 The rapid emigration to the colonies had attract-  
 ed the attention of the council, and they had passed  
 laws, prohibiting any person above the rank of a ser-  
 vant from leaving the kingdom without express per-  
 mission; and vessels already freighted with emigrants  
 had been detained. But these prohibitions were in  
 vain; for persecution, conducted by the merciless  
 Laud, grew more and more cruel; and in one year,  
 three thousand persons left England for America.

**1640.** 6. Oppression, and perhaps the successful escape  
 Charles and resistance of their brethren in America, had so  
 engaged wrought upon the public mind in England, that matters  
 in civil had now come to open opposition to the government.  
 war. In Scotland, Charles had attempted to enforce the use  
 of the English liturgy. Riots had followed, and the  
*Solemn League and Covenant* been made, by which  
 the Scottish people bound themselves to oppose all  
 similar attempts. Popular opinion became resistless.  
 Laud's party was ruined, and himself imprisoned;  
 while the king was engaged in a bloody civil war with  
 his revolted subjects.

7. Puritanism now reigned in England, and its dis-  
 ciples had no inducement to emigrate. Nay, some

---

3. What evil did some of their number do to Massachusetts?  
 4. What was done in the king's court respecting the charter of  
 Massachusetts? — 5. What laws were made respecting emigra-  
 tion? What effect had they? — 6. What was now the state of  
 things in Great Britain? — 7. How did the rule of Puritanism  
 in England affect emigration to America?

returned, among whom was Governor Vane. The Long Parliament had begun to rule; and its leaders were desirous to honor, rather than humble New England. Cotton, Hooker, and Davenport, were invited to go to London to attend the celebrated assembly of divines at Westminster. They, however, saw no sufficient cause to leave their flocks in the wilderness. England was no longer their country; but that for which they had suffered, though recent, was already as dear to these noble patriots, as the infant to the mother.

P'T. I.  
P'D. III.  
CH. XI.

The long  
Parliament.

1642.

8. A UNION was now meditated. Both internal peace, and external safety were to be secured. An essential part of the compact made, was the solemn promise of the framers to yield obedience to the powers thus created.

Safety  
and peace  
in Union.

9. Two commissioners having been appointed by each of the four colonies, Plymouth, Massachusetts, Connecticut and New Haven, they met at Boston, May, 1643, where they drew up and signed the *Articles of Confederation*. Rhode Island was not permitted to be a member of the confederacy, unless it became an appendage to Plymouth. This, that colony very properly refused.

1643.

Articles  
of con-  
federacy  
signed  
Boston

10. The style adopted was that of the "United Colonies of New England." Their little congress, the first of the New World, was to be composed of eight members, two from each colony. They were to assemble yearly in the different colonies by rotation, Massachusetts having, in this respect a double privilege.

Commis-  
sioners  
to meet  
annually

11. Although this confederacy was nominally discontinued after about forty years, yet its spirit remained. The colonies had learned to act together, and when common injuries and common dangers again required

---

7. What honor was paid to three of the New England clergy?  
8. What objects were to be secured by Union? — 9. What four colonies sent commissioners to Boston? What important work did they perform? What hard condition was exacted of Rhode Island? — 10. What was the style adopted? Where was the little Congress of Commissioners to meet? — 11. How long did this confederacy last?



P'T. I. united action, modes and precedents were at hand  
 P'D. III. Hence we regard the Confederacy of the four New  
 CH. XI. England provinces, as the germ of the Federal Union.

**11.** Why is it regarded as the germ of the Federal Union?

Compare the third Map with the second, and tell the principal changes which have taken place in the geography in the course of the third period of the First Part of the history? What are the principal patents which have been given? Compare the different maps with the history, and tell when the name of Virginia was first given, and to what extent of country it has, at different times, been applied?

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

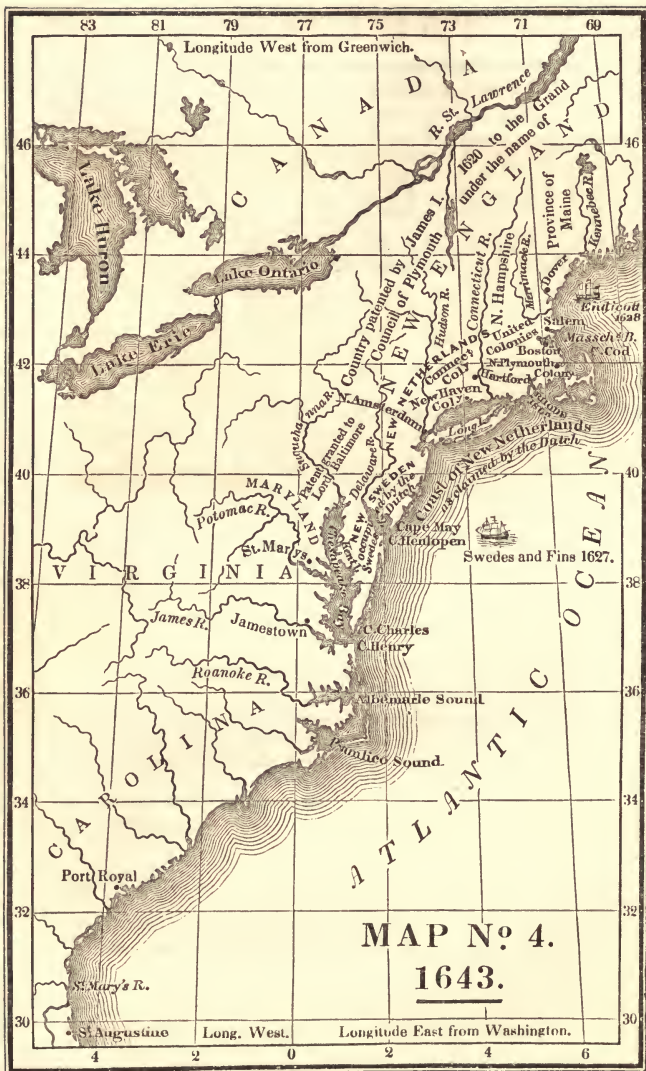
What is the event which marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer.

Massasoit visits the pilgrims in 1621, and enters into an alliance with them. Point out this date on the chronographer. James I. issued a charter to a company styled the "Grand Council of Plymouth," in 1620. Point out the place of this date. John Endicot began the settlement of Salem in 1628. He was appointed Governor of Massachusetts Bay in 1629. Point out the places of these dates. Three thousand persons emigrated to New England in 1635. Point to the place of this date.

Roger Williams founded Providence in 1636. Point out the place of this date. The Pequods were defeated and destroyed in 1637. New Haven was founded the same year. Show its place on the chronographer. The college at Cambridge was founded in 1630. It took the name of Harvard in 1638. Point to the place of these two dates. Lord Baltimore obtained a patent of Maryland in 1631. Point out the place of this year. What event marks the termination of this period? What is its date? Point to its place on the chronographer.

Let the teacher often repeat general questions, such as—What is the subject of this part? Into how many periods is it divided? What is the first and last date of your lesson to-day? In what century is it? How much time occurs between the first and last date?





# PART II.

FROM 1643 TO 1763.



Meeting of Winthrop and the Commissioners.

## PERIOD I.

FROM  
THE CONFEDERACY OF {1643} THE FOUR N. E. COLONIES.  
TO  
THE NEW CHARTER {1692.} OF MASSACHUSETTS.

### CHAPTER I.

Virginia—Second Indian Massacre—Bacon's Rebellion.

1. In 1644, the aged Opechancanough once more attempted to cut off the scattered white population. As soon as resistance was made, the Indians were struck with panic, and fled. The Virginians pursued them vigorously, and killed three hundred. The chief was taken prisoner. He was then inhumanly wounded, and kept as a public spectacle, until he was relieved by death.

P'T. II.

P'D. I.  
CH. I.

**1644**  
Second  
Indian  
massacre

CHAPTER I.—1. What attempt was made by an Indian chief? Which, in this case, suffered most, the Indians, or the Virginians? How many Indians were killed? How was the chief treated?

**P.T. II.** 2. Charles I. was beheaded; and Cromwell directed  
**P.D. I.** the affairs of England. He perfected a system of op-  
**CH. I.** pression, in respect to trade, by the celebrated "Navi-  
**1649.** gation Acts." By these, the colonies were not al-  
 Charles I. be-  
 headed.  
 Crom-  
 well.  
 lowed to find a market for themselves, and sell their  
 produce to the highest bidder; but were obliged to  
 carry it direct to the mother country. The English  
 merchants bought it at their own price; and thus they,  
 and not the colonist, made the profit on the fruits of  
 his industry.

3. At the same time, these laws prohibited any but  
 English vessels, from conveying merchandise to the  
 colonies; thus compelling them to obtain their sup-  
**1651.** plies of the English merchant; of course, at such  
 The  
 "naviga-  
 tion  
 acts."  
 prices, as he chose to fix upon his goods. Even free  
 traffic among the colonists was prohibited.

4. Charles II. was restored to his father's throne in  
 1660. Berkeley, after various changes, was exer-  
 cising, in Virginia, the office of governor. But pros-  
**1660.** pects grew dark. Notwithstanding the loyalty of Vir-  
 Charles  
 II.  
 ginia, to none of the colonies had the suppression of  
 the English monarchy wrought more good; and on  
 none, did the restoration operate more disastrously.

5. The Virginians were divided into two classes.  
 The first comprised the few persons who were highly  
 educated, and possessed of extensive domains. The  
 second, and more numerous class, was composed of  
 servants and laborers; among whom were some, that  
**Aristo-  
crats and  
plebe-  
ians.**  
 for crimes in England, had been sent to America. A  
 blind admiration of English usages, was now shown,  
 in the regulations made by Berkeley, and his aristo-  
 cratical advisers.

---

2. In what year was Charles I. beheaded? Who then di-  
 rected the affairs in England? By what were the colonies op-  
 pressed? What were they not allowed to do? What were they  
 obliged to do? How did English merchants make the profit on  
 the produce of the colonists?—3. Of whom were the colonists  
 obliged to purchase their supplies? Who would fix the prices?  
 Could the different colonies trade freely with each other?—4.  
 What happened in 1660? Who was governor of Virginia?  
 What were the prospects of Virginia?—5. Describe the two  
 classes into which the Virginians were divided? What can you  
 say of Berkeley and his advisers?



6. The rights of the people were on all hands restricted. The affairs of the church were placed in the hands of vestries; corporations who held, and often severely used, the right to tax the whole community. The assembly, composed of aristocrats, made themselves permanent, and their salaries large. The right of suffrage was unrestrained, but the power of electing the burgesses being taken away, the meetings of the freemen were of little avail, for their only remaining right, was that of petition.

P'T. II.  
P'D. I.  
CH. I.

The  
people  
stripped  
of their  
rights.

7. A shock was now given, by which even the aristocracy were aroused. Charles, with his wonted profligacy, gave away Virginia for the space of thirty-one years. He had, immediately on his accession, granted to Sir William Berkeley, Lord Culpepper, and others, that portion of the colony lying between the Rappahannock and Potomac; and now, to the covetous Lord Culpepper, and to Lord Arlington, another needy favorite, he gave the whole province.

Charles  
gives  
away  
Virginia  
for 31  
years.  
**1673.**

8. On the north, the Susquehannah Indians, driven by the Senecas, from the head of the Chesapeake, had come down, and having had provocation, were committing depredations upon the banks of the Potomac. John Washington, the great grandfather of the hero of the revolution, with a brother, Lawrence Washington, had emigrated from England, and was living in the county of Westmoreland.

**1675.**  
John  
Wash-  
ington.

9. Six of the Indian chiefs came to John Washington, to treat of peace, he being colonel. He wrongfully put them to death. "They came in peace," said Berkeley, "and I would have sent them in peace, though they had killed my father and mother." Revenge inflamed the minds of the savages, and the midnight war-whoop often summoned to speedy death the defenseless families of the frontier.

Kills six  
Indian  
chiefs.

---

6. How was it with the rights of the people? How in church matters? How with respect to the assembly? The right of suffrage? — 7. What did King Charles give away? What portion had he granted before? To whom? To whom was the whole province now given? — 8. Who was John Washington? What Indians were troublesome? — 9. What provocation had Colonel Washington given them? What said Berkeley?

**P.T. II.** 10. The people desired to organise for self defense, and in a peremptory manner, demanded for their leader, **P.D. I.** Nathaniel Bacon, a popular young lawyer. Berkeley **CH. I.** refused. New murders occurred; Bacon assumed command, and with his followers, departed for the Indian war. Berkeley declared him and his adherents rebels.

**1676.**

The people make Bacon their leader.

Popular liberty prevails.

11. Bacon returned successful from his expedition, and was elected a member for Henrico county. Popular liberty prevailed, and laws were passed, with which Berkeley was highly displeased. Bacon, fearing treachery, withdrew to the country. The people rallied around him, and he returned to Jamestown, at the head of five hundred armed men.

Berkeley and Bacon.

12. Berkeley met them, and baring his breast, exclaimed, "a fair mark, shoot!" Bacon declared that he came only for a commission, their lives being in danger from the savages. The commission was issued, and Bacon again departed for the Indian warfare. Berkeley, in the meantime, withdrew to the sea-shore, and there collected numbers of seamen and royalists. He came up the river with a fleet, landed his army at Jamestown, and again proclaimed Bacon and his party, rebels and traitors.

Jamestown burnt by Bacon's party.

13. Bacon having quelled the Indians, only a small band of his followers remained in arms. With these he hastened to Jamestown, and Berkeley fled at his approach. In order that its few dwellings should no more shelter their oppressors, the inhabitants set them on fire. Then leaving that endeared and now desolated spot, they pursued the royalists to the Rappahannock, where the Virginians, hitherto of Berkeley's party, deserted, and joined Bacon's standard. His enemies were at his mercy; but his exposure to the night air had induced disease, and he died.

Oct. 1, Bacon dies.

14. The party, without a leader, broke into fragments. As the principal adherents of Bacon, hunted and made prisoners, were one by one, brought before

---

10. What leader did the people choose? Give some account of the first steps in the contention between the people's leader and the governor? — 11. Proceed with the account? — 12. Continue the relation? 13. Relate the remaining events, till the time of Bacon's death? — 14. What then happened to his party and principal followers?

Berkeley, he adjudged them, with insulting taunts, to instant death. Thus perished twenty of the best citizens of Virginia. "The old fool," said Charles II., who sent him orders to desist, "has shed more blood than I did, for the murder of my father."

P'T. II.  
P'D. I.  
CH. I.

15. "Bacon's rebellion" was extremely injurious to the affairs of the colony in England. A new charter, which was sent over, was not favorable to the Virginians. Lord Culpepper was made governor for life. He cared not what he made the people suffer, provided he could gain money for himself. Lord Howard, the next governor, was of the same stamp.

1677.  
Lord  
Culpepper.

1683.  
Lord  
Howard.

16. It was at this period, that the Five Nations became very powerful. They had overcome all the surrounding Indians, and menaced the whites. This produced a grand council at Albany, in which Lord Howard, and Colonel Dongan, the governor of New York, together with delegates from the northern provinces, met the sachems of the Five Nations. The negotiations were friendly; and, in the figurative language of the Indians, "a great tree of peace was planted."

Peace  
with the  
Five  
Nations.

17. MARYLAND. Clayborne, in 1645, returned to Maryland, raised an insurrection, and compelled Governor Calvert to fly to Virginia for safety. The rebellion was, however, quelled. The next year, Calvert returned, and quiet was restored.

1645.  
Insurrection in  
Maryland.

18. The reign of Puritanism in England was disastrous to Maryland. Calvert, the governor appointed by the proprietor, was obliged to surrender the government; and the Catholics, after having settled the country, were shamefully persecuted in it, by the English authorities. Clayborne took advantage of this, and with one Josias Fendall, made a famous "disturbance," of which little is now known, except that it involved the province in much expense.

1652.  
Catholics  
persecuted in  
their  
own  
province.

19. Lord Baltimore was restored to his rights, by

---

15. How did Bacon's rebellion affect the colony in England? What governors were sent over? — 16. What Indians became powerful? What council was held? — 17. Who made trouble in Maryland? 18. What did he take advantage of? Who was with him? What is known of "Fendall's disturbance?"

- P.T. II.** Charles II., but he died soon after. His son and successor, soon found himself in trouble; for the English would not allow the Catholics of Maryland to enjoy any political rights. At the same time the people in the province, wished for a greater share in the government, than the proprietor would grant.
- P.D. I.**  
**CH. II.**
- 1675.** Death of Lord Baltimore. 20. James II., who succeeded Charles, was a Catholic, and he was a tyrant. He declared that there should be no charter governments, but that he should rule, according to his own sovereign will. His oppressions were such, that his people in England, and even his own family, joined against him. They placed upon the throne, his daughter Mary, with her husband, William, one of the ablest statesmen of Europe.
- 1688.** William and Mary.

---

## CHAPTER II.

New York settled by the Dutch—Taken by the English.

1. WE here, commence with the early colonization of a state which ranks first in the Union, in respect to wealth and population. In 1614, a company of merchants in Holland, fitted out a squadron of several ships, and sent them to trade to the country which Hudson had discovered. A rude fort was constructed on Manhattan Island. One of the captains, Adrian Blok, sailed through the East river, and ascertained the position of Long Island. He probably discovered Connecticut river.
- 1614.** Dutch emigrants found N. York.
2. The next year the adventurers sailed up the Hudson, and on a little island, just below the present position of Albany, they built a small fort, naming it Fort Orange. Afterwards they changed their location, and fixed where Albany now stands.
- 1615.** Fort Orange, i. e. Albany founded.

---

19. Who restored Lord Baltimore? What gave trouble to his son? — 20. Who succeeded King Charles the II.? What did he declare? How did the English people bear his tyranny?

CHAPTER II.—1. In what respects is New York the first state in the Union? Did the Dutch first go there as traders, or as settlers? By whom were they sent? What fort did they first build? What discoveries make? — 2. What was their second fort?

3. Holland was distressed by internal troubles, and families, wishing to settle in the new world, were now sent over. Cottages clustered around Manhattan fort. The fort was called New Amsterdam, and the country, New Netherlands. Peter Minuets was made its first governor.

P'T. II.

P'D. I.  
CH. II.1619  
to  
1621.

In 1627, an envoy was sent from New Netherlands to New Plymouth; friendly civilities were interchanged; and a treaty of peace and commerce was made with the Pilgrims.

Treaty  
with the  
Pilgrims.

4. A new company was made in Holland, styled "the College of Nineteen." They decreed, that, whoever should conduct fifty families to New Netherlands, the name now given by the Dutch to the whole country between Cape Cod and Cape May, should become the patroon, or lord of the manor; with absolute property in the lands he should colonize, to the extent of eight miles on each side of the river on which he should settle.

1629.  
College  
of Nine-  
teen dis-  
pose of  
lands.

5. De Vries conducted from Holland, a colony which settled Lewistown, near the Delaware; a small fort called Nassau, having been previously erected by the Dutch.

1631.  
The  
Dutch on  
the Dela-  
ware.

In consequence of disagreements among the company in Holland, Peter Minuets returned, having been superseded by Walter Van Twiller. Minuets became the leader of a colony of Swedes.

6. Governor Keift, who had succeeded Van Twiller, had an inconsiderable quarrel with the Manhattan Indians. Yet, when the Mohawks came down upon them, they collected in groups, and begged him to shelter and assist them. The barbarous Keift sent his troops; and at night murdered them all, men, women, and helpless babes, to the number of a hundred.

1643.  
Keift's  
barbarity  
to the  
natives.

7. Indian vengeance awoke. No English family within reach of the Algonquins was safe. The Dutch

---

3. Why were families now willing to leave Holland? Where did they settle? What name give to the fort? To the country? Who was the first governor? Where did they send an envoy? 4. What new company was formed in Holland? What did they decree? — 5. What colony was led by De Vries? What account can you give of Peter Minuets? Who was the next governor? — 3. Who the next? How did he treat the Indians?



**P'T. II.** villages were in flames around, and the people fleeing  
**F'D. I.** to Holland. In New England, all was jeopardy and  
**CH. II.** alarm. The Dutch troops defended themselves, having  
 Ven- placed at their head, Captain Underhill, who had been  
 geance of expelled from Massachusetts. At this time, it is sup-  
 the posed, occurred a bloody battle at Strickland's plain,  
 Indians. in Greenwich, Connecticut. The Mohawks were  
**1645.** friendly to the Dutch, and, at length, peace was made  
 Peace. by their interference.

8. Keift, execrated by all the colonies, was remand-  
**1648.** ed to Holland; and, on his return, perished by ship-  
 Death of wreck on the coast of Wales. Stuyvesant, who suc-  
 Keift. ceeded to his office, went to Hartford; and there entered  
**1650.** into negociations, by which the Dutch claims to Con-  
 Stuyve- necticut were relinquished.  
 sant.

9. The Dutch had built Fort Casimir on the site of  
 New Castle, in Delaware. The Swedes conceiving  
**1664.** this to be an encroachment on their territory, Rising,  
 Swedes their governor, by an unworthy stratagem, made him-  
 conquer- self its master. In 1655, Stuyvesant, acting by orders  
 ed by the received from Holland, embarked at New Amsterdam,  
 Dutch, with six hundred men, and sailing up the Delaware,  
 he subjugated the Swedes. New Sweden was heard  
 of no more; but the settlers were secured in their  
 rights of private property, and their descendants are  
 among the best of our citizens.

10. Many emigrants now came to New Netherlands,  
 from among the oppressed, the discontented, and the  
 enterprising of other colonies, and of European na-  
**1654.** tions. At length the inhabitants sought a share of  
 The political power. They assembled, and by their dele-  
 people gates, demanded that no laws should be passed, except  
 claim with the consent of the people. Stuyvesant treated  
 civil the request rudely, and dissolved the assembly.  
 rights.

11. But popular liberty, though checked here, pre-  
 vailed in the adjoining provinces; and they conse-

---

7. What was the consequence of his cruelty? What occurred  
 in Connecticut? — 8. What happened to Keift? Who was his  
 successor? What did he do? — 9. Give an account of the con-  
 test between the Swedes and Dutch? — 10. By what persons  
 were their numbers in New Netherlands increased? What did  
 the people now seek? How did the governor treat them? — 11.  
 Which prospered most, the places where the people's rights  
 were respected, or those where they were not?

quently grew more rapidly, and crowded upon the Dutch. The Indians made war upon some of their villages, especially Esopus, now Kingston; and New Netherlands could not obtain aid from Holland. The States General had given the whole concern into the hands of "the Nineteen," and they refused to make needful advances.

P'T. II.  
P'D. I.  
CH. III.  
New  
Nether-  
lands  
troubled.

12. Charles II. had granted to his brother James, then Duke of York and Albany, the territory from the banks of the Connecticut to those of the Delaware. Sir Robert Nichols, was dispatched with a fleet to take possession. He sailed to New Amsterdam, and suddenly demanded of the astonished Stuyvesant, to give up the place. He would have defended his post if he could. But the body of the people, preferred the English rule to that of the Dutch; the privileges of Englishmen having been promised them. Nichols, therefore, entered, took possession in the name of his master, and called the place New York.

N. Am-  
sterdam  
surrendered  
to the Eng-  
lish,  
Sept. 3,  
1664

13. A part of the English fleet, under Sir George Carteret, sailed up the Hudson to Fort Orange, which surrendered and was named Albany. The Dutch fort on the Delaware was also taken by the English. The rights of property were respected, and a treaty was made with the Five Nations. The whole line of coast, from Acadia to Florida, was now in possession of the English.

The  
Dutch  
forts a-  
surrendered.

## CHAPTER III.

### Pennsylvania and its Founder.

1. WILLIAM PENN, the great and good man, to whom Pennsylvania owes its origin, was the son of

11. What troubles were made by the Indians? — 12. What territory was granted? To whom? Whom did he send to take the country? What were the circumstances of the surrender? 13. What other places were taken by the English?

CHAPTER III.—1. What kind of person was William Penn? Of which of the states is he the founder?

**P'T. II.** Vice Admiral, Sir William Penn; and was born in  
**P'D. I.** London, in 1644. To provide a place for his per-  
**CH. III.** secuted brethren, of the denomination of Friends,  
 or Quakers, was the leading object in his mind, when  
**1644.** he planned a new emigration to America.

**William Penn's birth, &c.** 2. His father had left claims to the amount of six-  
 teen thousand pounds against the crown; and Penn,  
 finding that there was a tract yet ungranted, north of  
 Lord Baltimore's patent, solicited and obtained of  
**1681.** Charles II., a charter of the country. It was bounded  
**March 4,** east by the Delaware, extending westward through  
**Patent of Penn-** five degrees of longitude, and stretching from twelve  
**sylvania.** miles north of New Castle, to the 43d degree of lati-  
 tude. It was limited on the south by a circle of twelve  
 miles, drawn around New Castle, to the beginning of  
 the fortieth degree of north latitude. The king gave  
 to the country the name of Pennsylvania.

**Obtains Dela-** 3. Soon after the date of this grant, two other con-  
**ware.** veyances were made to Penn, by the Duke of York;  
 one of which embraced the present state of Delaware,  
 and was called the "Territories." The other was a  
 release from the Duke, of any claims to Pennsylvania.

**Sept. 9,** 4. He prepared a liberal constitution of civil gov-  
**1682.** ernment, for those who should become his colonists.  
**Penn sails from** Having sent out three ships, loaded with emigrants,  
**England.** and consigned to the care of his nephew, Colonel  
 Markham, he left Chester on board the *Welcome*, and  
 with one hundred settlers, sailed for his province, his  
 benevolent heart full of hope and courage.

**Arrives at New** 5. He landed at New Castle, and was joyfully re-  
**Castle,** ceived by the Swedes and Dutch, now amounting to  
**Oct. 28.** two or three thousand. The next day, at their court-  
 house, he received from the agent of the Duke of  
 York, the surrender of the "Territories." He then,

---

1. Give an account of his birth and parentage? What was his motive in planning a new colony? — 2. Of whom did Penn obtain a grant? What claim had he against the crown? What was the extent of Penn's first patent? — 3. What other conveyances were made to him? — 4. How did Penn propose to treat his settlers in respect to government? Whom did he send from England before he sailed? From what place did he sail? In what vessel? With how many? — 5. What were the circumstances of his first arrival?

with blended dignity and affection, assured the delighted throngs, that their rights should be respected, and their happiness regarded.

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. IVL.

6. In honor of his friend, the Duke, he next visited New York; but immediately returning, he went to Upland, which he named Chester. Here a part of the pioneers, with Markham, had begun a settlement; and here Penn called the first assembly. It consisted of an equal number from the province and the "Territories." By its first act, all the inhabitants, of whatever extraction, were naturalized.

Names  
Chester.  
**1682**

Dec. 4.  
The first  
assembly  
at  
Chester.

7. Penn was the first legislator, whose criminal code admitted the humane principle, that the object of punishment is not merely to prevent crime, but to reform the offender. Hence, his code seldom punished with death. The assembly sat three days, and passed fifty-nine laws; an evidence, that the time which belonged to the public, was not here consumed, either in personal abuse, or pompous declamation.

Pass in  
three  
days 59  
laws.

8. Penn next paid a visit of friendship and business to Lord Baltimore, at West River. Though they differed on the question of boundaries, yet friendly feeling pervaded the interview.

Penn  
visits  
Lord  
Balti-  
more.

9. Penn had given to Colonel Markham, who preceded him, directions, that the natives should be treated kindly, and fairly; and accordingly no land had been entered upon, but by their consent. They had also been notified that Penn, to whom they gave the name of Onas, was to meet, and establish with them, a treaty of perpetual peace. On the morning of the appointed day, under a huge elm at Shackamaxon, now a suburb of Philadelphia, the Indian chiefs gathered from every direction, to see Penn, and to hear his words; which they regarded as those of an angel.

Penn  
meets the  
Indian  
chiefs.

10. Penn gave them instructions, and solemnly appealed to the Almighty, that it was the ardent desire

6. What place did he next visit? Where go on his return? What was done in Chester? — 7. What principle in legislation was Penn the first to teach? What can you say of the labours done by the assembly? Of what was this an evidence? — 8. Whom did Penn visit? 9. How did he direct that the natives should be treated? Of what had they been notified? Give an account of the meeting?

P'T.II. of his heart to do them good. "He would not call  
 P'D.I. them brothers or children, but they should be to him  
 CH. III. and his, as half of the same body." The chiefs then  
**1682.** gave their pledge for themselves, and for their tribes,  
 Makes a "to live in love with him and his children, as long as  
 treaty of the sun and moon should endure." The treaty was  
 peace. then executed, the chiefs putting down the emblems of  
 their several tribes. The purchases of Markham were  
 confirmed, and others made.

Penn  
 lays out  
 and  
 names  
 Penn  
 Philadelphia.  
 11. After this, Penn went to a villa, which his  
 nephew had built for his residence, opposite the site  
 of Burlington, and called Pennsbury. Here he gave  
 directions for laying out towns and counties; and in  
 conjunction with the surveyor, Holme, drew the plan  
 of his capital; and in the spirit of "brotherly love,"  
 named it Philadelphia.

Throng  
 of set-  
 tlers.  
 12. Vessels came fast with new settlers, until twenty-  
 two, bearing two thousand persons, had arrived. Some  
 came so late in the fall, that they could not be pro-  
 vided with house-room in the rude dwellings of the  
 new city; and "the caves" were dug in the banks of  
 the river to receive them. Providence fed them by  
 flocks of pigeons, and the fish of the rivers; and the  
 Indians, regarding them as the children of Onas, hunted  
 to bring them game. The season was unusually mild.

Aug. 4.  
**1684.**  
 Penn em-  
 barks for  
 England.  
 13. Penn had left beyond the ocean his beloved  
 family. Letters from England spoke of the sufferings  
 of his quaker brethren, and he believed that he might  
 exercise an influence there, to check persecution. He  
 embarked on the fourth of August; and wrote on board  
 the ship an affectionate adieu to his province, which  
 he sent on shore before he sailed. He said, "And  
 thou, Philadelphia, virgin of the province! my soul  
 prays for thee; that, faithful to the God of thy mer-  
 cies, in the life of righteousness, thou mayest be pre-  
 served unto the end!"

---

**10.** What did Penn say to the chiefs? How did the chiefs  
 respond? Was a treaty made? — **11.** What did Penn after  
 this? — **12.** What can you say of the new settlers? — **13.** Why  
 did Penn return? When did he embark? What send on shore?



# CHAPTER IV.

New Jersey—its settlement, and various claimants.

1. PREVIOUS to the surrender of the Dutch, the Duke of York made a grant, of that part of his patent lying between the Hudson and Delaware, to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. This tract was called NEW JERSEY, in compliment to Sir George, who had been governor of the isle of Jersey.

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. IV.

1664.

2. In 1664, before the grant to Berkeley and Carteret was known, three persons from Long Island purchased of the natives a tract of the country, which was called Elizabethtown, where a settlement was commenced. Other towns were soon settled by emigrants from the colonies, and from Europe. Thus, opposite claims were created, which caused much discord between the proprietors and inhabitants. In 1665, Berkeley and Carteret formed a constitution for the colony, and appointed Philip Carteret governor. He made Elizabethtown the seat of government.

Eliza-  
bethtown  
previous-  
ly settled.

3. Berkeley and Carteret, at first, held the province as joint property, but the former, becoming weary with the care of an estate, which yielded him neither honor nor profit, sold his share to Edward Billinge. That gentleman, on being involved in debt, found it necessary to assign his property for the benefit of his creditors; and William Penn was one of his assignees.

1669.

Lord  
Berkeley  
sells his  
right.

4. New Jersey was now jointly held by Sir George Carteret, and Penn, as agent for the assignees of Billinge. But Penn, perceiving the inconvenience of holding joint property, it was mutually agreed to separate the country into East and West Jersey; Carteret receiving the sole proprietorship of East Jersey, and Penn and his associates, that of West Jersey.

Penn  
causes  
New  
Jersey to  
be di-  
vided.

1. What grant was made? By whom? To whom? What was the country called? — 2. Who had made a previous settlement? From whence were other towns soon settled? Did they all agree? What was done in 1665? — 3. Which of the two proprietors sold his share? To whom? How came William Penn to have a hand in Jersey affairs? — 4. How was New Jersey now held? How and why was it divided?

**P'T. II.** 5. Penn divided West Jersey into one hundred shares, which were separately disposed of, and then, **P'D. I.** in that spirit of righteousness, whereby he won the **CH. IV.** confidence of all, he drew up the articles called "the concessions." By these, the proprietors ceded to the planters, the privileges of free civil government; expressly declaring "we put the power in the people." Religion was left free, and imprisonment for debt prohibited. In two years eight hundred new settlers came over, mostly quakers; persons of excellent character, and good condition.

The  
"conces-  
sions."

**1683.** 6. In 1682, East Jersey, the property of Carteret, being exposed to sale, Penn purchased it for twelve **24 Quakers buy East Jersey.** quakers. In 1683, the proprietors doubled their number, and obtained a new patent from the Duke of York.

7. East Jersey was now free from religious intolerance. This was the era of those civil wars of Great Britain, in which the English royal officers, hunted the Cameronian Scots, like wild beasts. Hundreds of the sufferers now came to East Jersey, and there, bringing their industrious and frugal habits, they were blessed with security, abundance, and content.

**1678.** 8. Sir Edmund Andros, when governor of New **Andros in the Jerseys.** York, under pretence of the claims of the Duke of York, usurped the government both in East and West Jersey, and laid a tax upon all goods imported, and upon the property of all who came to settle in the country.

**1680.** 9. Penn received complaints of these abuses, and **Penn is there also.** with such strength of argument opposed the claims of the duke, that the commissioners, to whom the case was referred, adjudged the duties to be illegal and oppressive. In consequence of which, in 1680 they were removed, and the proprietors reinstated in the government.

10. Edward Billinge was appointed by the proprie-

---

5. How did Penn proceed in regard to West Jersey? — 6. How did Penn come to have any thing to do with East Jersey? How did East Jersey proprietors now proceed? — 7. What was the state of this colony? Who came to it? — 8. What did Sir Edmund Andros? — 9. What did William Penn? — 10. Whom did the proprietors appoint?

tors, governor; and in the next year, 1681, he summoned the first general assembly held in West Jersey. In 1682, the people, by the advice of Penn, amended their government. Contrary to the wishes of the proprietors, the next year they proceeded to elect their own governor.

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. V

1681.  
First  
general  
assembly

## CHAPTER V.

Miantonomoh—Rhode Island and Connecticut obtain Charters—  
Eliot, the Apostle of the Indians.

1. DURING the reign of Puritanism in England, the New England colonies enjoyed a happy season of liberty and peace. This was occasionally interrupted, by fears of the savages, who sometimes manifested their warlike propensities. Sometimes they attacked and destroyed each other.

2. Miantonomoh sought the life of Uncas, because he was aware that he could not make him unite in a conspiracy, which he was exciting against the whites. A Pequod whom he hired, wounded the Mohegan chief, and then fled to him for protection. He refused to surrender the assassin to the demand of the court at Hartford, but dispatched him with his own hand.

1643  
Mianto-  
nomoh  
seeks the  
life of  
Uncas.

3. Miantonomoh drew out his warriors openly against Uncas, in violation of a treaty, to which the authorities of Connecticut were a party. Uncas met and vanquished him by a stratagem, and took him prisoner; but he resigned him to the court. They deliberated, and then returned the noble savage to his captor. Uncas killed him, without torture, but with circumstances of cannibal barbarity.

But loses  
his own.

10. What did Billinge in 1681? What did the people the next year? The next after this?

CHAPTER V.—1. How did the reign of Puritanism in England affect New England?—2. Give an account of the beginning of the war between Miantonomoh and Uncas?—3. Of the close of the contest?

P.T. II.

P.D. I.

CH. V.

1651.

R. Island  
first in  
religious  
freedom.

4. Roger Williams was now the Father of Rhode Island, as he had formerly been the Founder. He twice crossed the ocean, and at length succeeded in obtaining a charter, including the islands, and confirming the limits of the state, as they now exist. Rhode Island, if not great in territory, is rich, in the fame of having been the first to set the example, since followed by the nation at large, of entire "soul-liberty" in matters of religion.

1662.

Conn.  
obtains a  
charter.

5. When Charles II. was restored, his power was acknowledged in New England; but the colonies had melancholy forebodings. Yet the authorities of Connecticut, by the eminent Winthrop, even at this difficult period, successfully applied to the court of England for a charter. They plead, that they had obtained their lands, by purchase, from the natives, and by conquest from the Pequods, who made on them a war of extermination; and they had mingled their labor with the soil.

Win-  
throp  
and the  
ring.

6. Winthrop appeared before the king with such a gentle dignity of carriage, and such appropriate conversation, as won the royal favor. It is said he brought to the mind of Charles some interesting recollections, by the present of a ring, which had been given to his grandfather as a pledge, by an ancestor of the monarch.

New  
Haven  
united  
with  
Conn.

1665.

7. The king granted a liberal charter, which included New Haven. That province, however, had not been consulted, and justly felt aggrieved; as a relinquishment of its separate existence was thereby required. But at length, the great expediency of the measure becoming fully apparent, the union of New Haven with Connecticut was completed. Winthrop was chosen governor, and received seventeen annual elections.

8. Colonel Nichols, who was sent over to command the expedition against New Netherlands, was one of

---

4. What charter was obtained for Rhode Island? For what is Rhode Island distinguished? — 5. By whom did the people of Connecticut apply for a charter? What reasons did they plead? — 6. How did Winthrop behave? — 7. What kind of a charter was obtained? How was it with respect to New Haven? Who was chosen governor? — 8. What can you say of Colonel Nichols?

four commissioners, who had been appointed by the king, not only for the reduction of the Dutch, but for humbling the colonies. The people felt much aggrieved. Massachusetts resisted every exercise of their power, and two of their number, Carr and Cartwright, left the country in high displeasure.

P'T. II.

P'D. I.  
CH. V.Nichols,  
Maver-  
ick, Carr  
and Cart-  
wright.

9. This was the period of the labors of John Elliot, called the apostle of the Indians. He beheld with pity the ignorance and spiritual darkness of the savages, and determined to devote himself to their conversion. He first spent some years in the study of their language. The General Court of the province passed an order requesting the clergy to report the best means of spreading the gospel among the natives; and Elliot took this occasion to meet with the Indians at Nonantum, a few miles west of Boston. His meetings for religious worship and discourse were held, when favorable opportunities could be found, or made.

J. Elliot.

1646.

Elliot's  
first  
meeting  
with the  
Indians.

10. His efforts to teach the natives the arts and usages of civilized life, were also unremitted and arduous; "for civility," it was said, "must go hand in hand with Christianity." These efforts and their effects, exhibit the children of the forest in a most interesting point of view, and show the transforming power of the gospel. Their dispositions and lives underwent a real change. Some of their numbers became teachers, and aided in the conversion of others.

Indians  
convert-  
ed.

11. In 1655, Elliot had completed his translation of the New Testament into the Indian language, and in two years more the old was added. Thus the mighty labor of learning the difficult tongue of the Indians, of making from its oral elements, a written language, and that of translating the whole Bible, was, by zeal and persevering labor, accomplished. It was the first Bible printed in America. But both the Indian and his language are now extinct, and Elliot's Bible is a mere literary curiosity.

1657.

Elliot  
com-  
pletes his  
transla-  
tion of  
the Bible

8. How did the people feel? Which colony resisted? What did two of the commissioners? — 9. What was John Elliot called? Give an account of the beginning of his labors? — 10. Did Elliot teach the natives any thing but religion? What success had he? — 11. What great labor did Elliot perform in respect to the Bible?



P'T. II. 12. In 1674, there were fourteen towns of "praying Indians," and six gathered churches. The Indian converts had much to encounter. Their great chiefs hated Christianity. Although it made their subjects willing to do the right, yet it set them to reflect; and thus to find out, that there was a right for them *to have*, as well as *to do*. This tended to subvert the absolute arbitrary sway, which the sachem, however he might allow it to slumber, did actually possess; and which he naturally felt unwilling to relinquish. Of these chiefs, Philip of Pokanoket, was peculiarly the foe of the Christian religion.

P'D. I.  
CH. VI.Number  
of pray-  
ing  
Indians.

1674.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

King Philip's War. — Destruction of the Narragansetts and Pokanokets.

1. PHILIP was the younger of the two sons of Massasoit. He had become embittered against the English, by the death of his brother, which he ascribed to them; and though he was thus left sole chieftain of the Pokanokets, yet he deeply felt his loss, and bitterly resented it.

Philip's  
resent-  
ment.

2. The extension of the English had alarmed the savage nations. The new race, whom their fathers received, when a poor and feeble band, were now gradually spreading themselves over the land, and assuming to be its sovereigns. But the natives were yet numerous, and, by union, they might extirpate the whites, and regain the country. Thus thought Philip, as he secretly plotted, to bring to pass, his cruel designs.

Indians  
jealous  
and  
hostile.

---

12. How many towns were there of the "Praying Indians?" What feelings and opinions had the great chiefs? Who in particular was hostile?

CHAPTER VI.—1. Why was Philip embittered against the English? — 2. What alarmed the savages? What did Philip think and do?

3. The Narragansetts, so long friendly, were now under the rule of Conanchet, the son of Miantonomoh ; and doubtless he remembered the benefits, which his father had bestowed upon the whites, and their refusal to hear his last plea for mercy.

P'T. II.  
P'D. I.  
CH. VI.

4. Sausaman, one of the natives whom Elliot had instructed in Christianity, gave to the English, intimations of Philip's designs. Sausaman was soon after murdered. On investigation, the Plymouth court found that the murder was committed by three of Philip's most intimate friends; and forthwith they caused them to be executed.

Sausa-  
man's  
disclo-  
sure and  
death.

5. On the 20th of June, Philip's exasperated warriors attacked Swansey, in New Plymouth. The colonists appeared in defence of the place, and the Indians fled. The English force marched into the Indian towns, which, on their approach, were deserted. But the route of the savages was marked, by the ruins of buildings, which had been burned, and by the heads and hands of the English, which were fixed upon poles by the way-side. The troops, finding that they could not overtake them, returned to Swansey.

1675.  
June 24,  
Swansey  
attacked.

6. The commissioners of the colonies, meeting at Boston, were unanimous in deciding that the war must be prosecuted with vigor, and each colony furnish means, according to its ability. Of the thousand men which they determined to send immediately into the field, Massachusetts was to furnish five hundred and twenty-seven, Connecticut three hundred and fifteen, and Plymouth one hundred and fifty-eight. Subsequently the commissioners voted to raise double this number.

July 3,  
The  
Congress  
raise an  
army.

7. The army was sent from Swansey into the country of the Narragansetts, and negotiating, sword in hand, with that confederacy, on the 15th of July, a treaty of peace was concluded. It was stipulated

Compel  
the Nar  
to make  
peace.

---

3. Who was Conanchet ? What was his disposition towards the English ? — 4. How did the English become acquainted with Philip's designs ? What did the Plymouth court ? — 5. When and where did Philip begin the war ? What measures did the colonists pursue ? — 6. What ground did the commissioners take ? How was the number of men, to be raised, apportioned ? — 7. Where was the army sent ? What treaty was made ?

"T. II. among other things, to give forty coats to any of the  
 P'D. I. Narragansetts, who should bring Philip alive, twenty  
 CH. VI. for his head and two for each of his subjects delivered  
 as prisoners.

Philip  
 attacked  
 at Pocas-  
 set.  
 8. The Indian king retreated, with his warriors, to  
 a swamp at Pocasset, near Montaup. There, on the  
 18th, the colonists attacked them, but gained no deci-  
 sive advantage. Philip then went to the vicinity of  
 Connecticut river; but to the inhabitants, every where  
 in danger, and in fear, he seemed to be every where  
 present. Captain Hutchinson, with a company of  
 horse, was drawn into an ambush, near Brookfield,  
 where he was mortally wounded, and sixteen of his  
 company were killed. The Indians then burned the  
 town.  
 Battle at  
 Brook-  
 field.

Sept. 18.  
 Battle of  
 bloody  
 Brook.  
 9. Intending to collect a magazine and garrison at  
 Hadley, Captain Lathrop, with a corps of the choicest  
 young men, selected from the vicinity of Boston, was  
 sent to transport a quantity of corn from Deerfield, to  
 that place. They were suddenly attacked by the In-  
 dians, and though they fought with great bravery, they  
 were almost all cut off. The brook, by which they  
 fought, flowed red, and to this day is called "Bloody  
 Brook."

October.  
 Spring-  
 field  
 burned.  
 10. In October, the Springfield Indians, who had  
 previously been friendly, concerted with the hostile  
 tribes, and set fire to that town. While its flames  
 were raging, they attacked Hadley.

Conan-  
 chet vio-  
 lates the  
 treaty.  
 11. Conanchet now violated the treaty, and not only  
 received Philip's warriors, but aided their operations  
 against the English. On the 18th of December, one  
 thousand troops were collected from the different colo-  
 nies, under the command of Josiah Winslow, of Ply-  
 mouth. After a stormy night passed in the open air,  
 they waded through the snow sixteen miles; and about

---

7. What was stipulated? — 8. Give an account of King Philip's  
 movements? What was the condition of the inhabitants? What  
 befel Capt. Hutchinson? — 9. Give an account of Capt. La-  
 throp, and his company? — 10. What treachery was practised  
 by the Springfield Indians? — 11. What was now the conduct  
 of Conanchet? What number of troops went to attack him?  
 At what time, and under what circumstances did they march?

one o'clock, on the afternoon of the 19th, they arrived near the enemy's fortress. P'T. II.

12. It was on a rising ground, in the midst of a swamp; and was so fortified with palisades, and thick hedges, that only by crossing a log, which lay over a ravine, could it be approached. The officers led the men directly across the narrow and dangerous bridge. The first were killed, but others pressed on, and the fort was entered. Conanchet and his warriors forced the English to retire; but they continued the fight, defeated the savages, and again entering the fort, they set fire to the Indian dwellings. One thousand warriors were killed; three hundred, and as many women and children, were made prisoners. About six hundred of their wigwams were burnt, and many helpless sufferers perished in the flames. P'D. I.  
CH. VI.

13. The wretched remains of the tribe took shelter in the recesses of a cedar swamp,—covering themselves with boughs, or burrowing in the ground, and feeding on acorns or nuts, dug out with their hands from the snow. Many who escaped a sudden, thus died a lingering death. Conanchet was made prisoner in April, and was offered his freedom if he would enter into a treaty of peace. The chieftain indignantly refused, and was put to death. Dec. 19.  
The fort  
of the  
Nar. de-  
stroyed.

14. In the spring of 1676, the colonial troops were almost universally victorious. Jealousies arose among the different tribes of savages, and while great numbers were slain, many deserted the common cause. Philip had attempted to rouse the Mohawks against the English, and had, for this purpose, killed a number of the tribe, and attributed their death to the whites. His perfidy was detected, and he fled to Montaup, whither he was pursued. Famine  
and cold.

15. In the midst of these reverses, Philip remained unshaken in his enmity. His chief men, as also his wife and family, were killed or made prisoners; and, Conan-  
chet's  
death.

---

**1676** Philip attempts to gain the Mohawks.

12. Describe the fort—the approach of the troops—the second attack—the destruction of the Indians. — 13. What happened to the remains of the tribe? To Conanchet? — 14. How did the colonial troops succeed in 1676? Where was Philip? — 15. How did he bear his adversity?

P'T. II. while he wept bitterly, for these domestic bereavements,  
 P'D. I. he shot one of his men, who proposed submission.  
 CH. VII. After being driven from swamp to swamp, he was at  
 1676. last shot near Montaup, by the brother of the Indian  
 Philip is whom he had thus killed.

16. Of the scattered parties which remained, many  
 were captured. Some sought refuge at the north.  
 These afterwards served as guides, to those parties of  
 hostile French and Indians, who came down and deso-  
 lated the provinces. In this dreadful contest, New  
 England lost six hundred inhabitants, and a great amount  
 of property. Fourteen towns had been destroyed,  
 and a heavy debt incurred. Yet the colonies received  
 no assistance from England; and they asked none.  
 The humane Irish sent the sufferers some relief.

In Philip's  
 war  
 N. Eng-  
 land loses  
 600.

The  
 Indian  
 Nations  
 destroy-  
 ed.

17. If Philip's war was to the whites disastrous, to  
 the savage tribes it was ruinous. The Pokanokets  
 and the Narragansetts henceforth disappear from his-  
 tory. The "praying Indians" were mostly of the Mas-  
 sachusetts confederacy; and although they suffered  
 much, being suspected by the red men because they  
 were Christians, and by the whites because they were  
 Indians, they yet had a remnant left. Elliot watched  
 his scattered flocks, and exposed himself to many  
 dangers on their account. The wreck of four towns  
 remained from the fourteen, which the converts num-  
 bered before the war.

## CHAPTER VII.

The Regicides.—New Hampshire and Maine.—Charter of Mas-  
 sachusetts annulled.

1. THE regicides, a term, which in English and  
 American history, refers especially to those men, who  
 signed the death warrant of Charles I., were, after the

15. How did he come to his end? — 16. What became of his  
 followers? How many inhabitants of New England were de-  
 stroyed during this bloody war? Who sent relief? — 17. What  
 were the consequences of the war to the Indians? How did it  
 affect the praying Indians?

CHAPTER VII.—1. Who were the regicides?



restoration of his son, proscribed. Three of their number, Goffe, Whalley, and Dixwell, came to America. They were at Boston and Cambridge, and under romantic circumstances, were shielded from their pursuers at New Haven. At length, Whalley and Goffe found refuge in the house of Mr. Russel, minister of Hadley, where they lived in profound concealment.

P'T. II.  
P'D. I.  
CH. VII.

The  
three re-  
gicides.

2. Goffe had been a military commander. Looking from the window of his hiding place, he saw, on a Sabbath day, as the people were collecting for public worship, a body of ambushed Indians stealing upon them. Suddenly he left his confinement, and appeared among the gathering worshippers, his white hair and beard, and loose garments streaming to the winds. He gave the alarm, and the word of command; and the men, already armed, were at once formed, and bearing down upon the foe. When they had conquered, they looked around for their preserver. He had vanished during the fray, and they fully believed that he had been an angel, sent from heaven for their deliverance.

Oct. 1.  
**1675.**  
Goffe  
Hadley.

3. Of the three judges, who cast themselves upon the Americans, not one was betrayed. The meanest of the people could not be induced, by the price set upon their heads, to give them up; and they now rest, in peaceful graves, upon our soil.

The re-  
gicides  
not be-  
trayed.

4. MAINE. In 1677, a controversy, which had existed for some time, between the government of Massachusetts, and the heirs of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, relative to the district of Maine, was settled in England, and the territory assigned to the latter. Upon this, Massachusetts purchased the title, and Maine became a province of that colony.

**1677.**  
Mass.  
buys  
Maine.

5. NEW HAMPSHIRE. In 1679, a commission was made out by order of Charles II., for the separation of New Hampshire from the jurisdiction of Massachusetts, and its erection into a royal province. The

**1679.**  
N. H. a  
royal  
province

- 
1. Which of them came to America? Where were they? — 2. During King Philip's war, what were the circumstances of Goffe's appearing at Hadley? — 3. Were either of the three judges betrayed? — 4. How did Massachusetts acquire a title to Maine? — 5. What happened to New Hampshire in 1679?

P<sup>T</sup>. II. assembly was to be chosen by the people, the president and council to be appointed by the crown.

P<sup>D</sup>. I.  
CH. VII.

Shows a  
free  
spirit.

This colony now manifested, that stability of character, for which, no less, than for its sublime piles of mountains, it is called "the Granite State." The people first thanked Massachusetts for the care she had taken of their infant condition; and next determined "that no law should be valid, unless made by the assembly, and approved by the people.

1682.

Mason  
sends  
Cranfield  
to rule.

6. Edward Cranfield, a needy speculator, was selected by Mason, and sent from England, to be the governor of New Hampshire. But he could neither outwit, nor over-awe the rugged patriots; nor with all the advantages of law, eject them from their lands; though for many years he gave them great annoyance.

1679.

Ran-  
dolph.

7. Charles II. made additional navigation acts, by which he would have entirely destroyed the commerce of the colonies, had they been observed. But they were evaded, and opposed, especially in Massachusetts. Edward Randolph was sent over by the king, to see that these oppressive laws were executed.

Charles  
II. suc-  
ceeded  
by James  
II.

1685.

8. James II., who declared, that there should be no free governments in his dominions, issued writs against the charters of Connecticut and Rhode Island. These colonies presented letters and addresses, which, contained expressions of humble duty. The king construed them into an actual surrender of their charters; and, proceeded to establish a temporary government over New England. Sir Edmund Andros was appointed governor general.

9. Sir Edmund began his career with the most flattering professions of his regard to the public safety and happiness. It was, however, well observed, that "Nero concealed his tyrannical disposition more years than Sir Edmund did months." Soon after his arrival

---

5. Why is New Hampshire called the granite state? — 6. Who was selected by Mason as governor? What was beyond his power to do? — 7. How did King Charles proceed in regard to navigation laws? How did the colonists? Whom did the king send over? For what purpose? — 8. What writs did James II. issue? What did R. I. and Conn.? How did the king next proceed? Who did he send over as governor general? — 9. How did Sir Edmund begin?

to the country, he sent to Connecticut, demanding the surrender of the charter. This being refused, in 1687, he came with a guard to Hartford, during the session of the general assembly, and in person required its delivery.

P.T. II.  
P'D. I.  
CH. VII.

1686.

Sir E.  
Andross  
in New  
England.

10. After debating until evening, the charter was produced, and laid on the table, where the assembly were sitting. The lights were suddenly extinguished, and one of the members privately conveyed it away, and hid it in the cavity of a large oak tree. The candles were officiously relighted, but the charter was gone; and no discovery could be made of it, or, at that time, of the person who carried it away. The government of the colony was, however, surrendered to Andros.

1687.

Charter  
of Conn  
hid in  
Charter  
Oak, on  
Wyllis'  
Hill.

11. Massachusetts, where Sir Edmund resided, was the principal seat of despotism and suffering. In 1688, New York, and New Jersey, were added to his jurisdiction; and for more than two years, there was a general suppression of charter governments throughout the colonies, and a perpetual series of tyrannical exactions.

1687,

to

1689.

12. But the king had made himself as much detested at home, as his governor had abroad. The British nation, putting aside the fiction of the divine right of legitimate sovereigns, asserted that of human nature, by declaring that an oppressed people may change their rulers. They forced the king to abdicate, and completed what is called the English "Revolution," by placing William and Mary on the throne.

1688.

"The  
Revolution"  
in  
England.

13. Great was the joy of New England. Even on the first rumor of the British Revolution, the authorities of Boston seized and imprisoned Andros and Randolph. As a temporary government, they organized a committee of safety, of which the aged governor, Bradstreet, accepted the presidency; though he knew that, if the intelligence proved false, it might cost him his life.

Andros  
and Ran-  
dolph in  
prison.

9. Why did he go to Hartford? — 10. What happened during his visit? — 11. What took place from 1687 to 1689? — 12. What fiction or false principle did the English put aside? What right did they assert? What is this event called? — 13. What was done in Boston?

**P.T. II.** 14. The change of government, produced by the removal of Andros, left New Hampshire in an unsettled state. Mason had died in 1685, leaving his two sons heirs to his claims. The people earnestly petitioned to be again united with Massachusetts, but their wishes were frustrated by Samuel Allen, who had purchased of the heirs of Mason, their title to New Hampshire. Allen received a commission as governor of the colony, and assumed the government in 1692.

**P.D. I.  
CH. VIII.**

**N. H.  
1685.**  
Mason  
dies.  
Allen  
buys his  
title.

15. When the intelligence was confirmed, that William and Mary were seated on the throne, Rhode Island and Connecticut resumed their charters; but the king resolutely refused to restore to Massachusetts, her former system of government. Andros, Randolph, and others, were ordered to England for trial.

**Conn.  
and R. I.**  
resume  
their  
charters.

## CHAPTER VIII.

N. York.—Its Governors.—Leisler.—Quakers in Massachusetts.

1. **AFTER** the surrender of the Dutch, Colonel Nichols entered upon the administration of the government of New York, which he conducted with great prudence, integrity, and moderation. The people, however, continued without civil rights, all authority being vested in the royal governor and council. Nichols returned to England, and was succeeded by Lord Lovelace.

**Lovelace.  
1667.**

2. In 1673, England and Holland were again involved in war, and Holland sent over a small fleet to regain her American possessions. This force arrived at New York, and demanded a surrender, which was made without resistance. The Dutch took immediate possession of the fort and city, and soon after of the whole province.

**1673.**  
Dutch  
take N.  
York.

**14.** What took place in New Hampshire? — **15.** What happened in the other New England provinces? Who were sent to England?

**CHAPTER VIII.—1.** How did Colonel Nichols govern in New York? — **2.** What happened in 1673?

3. The next year, 1674, the war terminated, and New York was restored to the English. The Duke of York, to prevent controversy about his title to the territory, took out a new patent, and the same year appointed Sir Edmund Andros, governor.

P'T. II.

P'D. I.  
CH. VIII.

1674.  
N. York  
restored.

4. Andros claimed jurisdiction over that part of Connecticut west of the river, it having been included in the grant to the Duke of York. To seize it, he arrived off the fort, at Saybrook, with an armed force. The governor and council, being apprised of his design, sent a few troops under Captain Bull, who conducted himself with such spirit, that Andros, jocosely declaring that his "horns should be tipped with gold," made no further attempt.

1675.

Andros  
repulsed  
at Say-  
brook.

5. In 1682, Andros was removed from the government of New York. The succeeding year was a happy era in the history of this colony. The excellent Colonel Dongan arrived as governor, and the desires of the people, for a popular government, were gratified. The first general assembly was convoked, consisting of a council and eighteen representatives. Governor Dongan surpassed all his predecessors, in attention to affairs with the Indians, by whom he was highly esteemed.

1682.  
Dongan.

1683.

First  
general  
assembly.

6. The news from Europe, that the inhabitants of England had resolved to dethrone James, and offer the crown to William and Mary, raised the hopes of the disaffected. Among these, was Jacob Leisler, an active militia captain, and a favorite of the people. He was not, however, a man of talents, but received the guiding impulses of his conduct, from the superior energies of his son-in-law, Jacob Milborne.

1688.

Leisler.

7. By his counsel, Leisler, at the head of a few men, declared for William and Mary, and took possession of the fort of New York. His party increased to more than five hundred. The governor left the province, and Leisler assumed to administer the government.

Leisler  
assumes  
to act as  
king  
Wil-  
liam's  
agent.

3. What took place in 1674? — 4. Give an account of Andros's attempt to take Connecticut? — 5. What happened in 1682? What the next year? — 6. What happened in New York when news came of the expulsion of King James? Who was Jacob Leisler? — 7. Give an account of his and Milborne's operations?



P'T. II. Milborne went to Albany, and made himself master  
 P'D. I. of the place. The regular authorities were against  
 CH. VIII. these lawless proceedings.

8. King William now commissioned Henry Slough-  
 1691. ter, as governor of New York. Never was a gover-  
 Slough- nor more needed, and never was one more destitute  
 ter gov- of every qualification for the office. He refused to  
 erns N. treat with Leisler; but put him, and several of his ad-  
 York. herents to prison. Finally, that unfortunate man, to-  
 Leisler together with his son-in-law, perished upon the gallows.  
 executed. Their execution was disapproved by the people; and  
 their property, which was confiscated, was afterwards  
 restored to their descendants.

9. Motives derived from pure religion, are the best,  
 and most effective, of all which influence human con-  
 duct. But when the religious feeling of men becomes  
 Reli- perverted, all history shows, that it then produces the  
 gious very worst effects. Under the influence of this feeling,  
 feeling. in its right operation, our Puritan forefathers resisted  
 oppression in England, suffered hardship, and braved  
 death, to enjoy their religion unmolested.

10. But they were not free, from the common error  
 of their age, which was, that all in the same commu-  
 nity, must, on religious subjects, think very much  
 alike. The Puritans believed their way was certainly  
 May right, and they were utterly unwilling, that any should  
 become become  
 pervert- perverted.  
 ed. This produced uncharitableness towards others, and  
 the bad effects of the religious sentiment perverted.

11. The denomination of Friends or Quakers, had  
 arisen in England. They had heard that the Puritans  
 exercised a persecuting spirit, as in the cases of Mrs.  
 Hutchinson and Roger Williams. They also thought  
 The the Puritan religion consisted too much in outward  
 Friends or Quakers. form, and too little in inward purity. The Quakers  
 believed, that they were called by a voice from a divine

---

8. Who was Henry Slough-ter? How did he proceed in regard to Leisler?—9. What may be said of motives derived from true religion? When the religious feeling of bodies of men becomes perverted, how is it then? What did our Puritan forefathers, under the impulse of right religious feeling?—10. What was the common error of their age? Were the Puritans free from it?—11. What induced the Quakers to come to Massachusetts?

inward monitor, to go to New England, particularly to Boston, and there warn the people of their errors. P'T. II.  
P'D. I.  
CH. IX.

12. The Puritans, when they came, imprisoned them, and sent them away. The Quakers came again, and boldly denounced that, which the Puritans held dearer than life. Laws were made to banish them, prohibiting return, on pain of death. The Quakers came back, and four were actually hanged. The Puritans then became convinced of their error, opened their prison doors, and released twenty-eight persons. 1660.  
4 execu-  
ted in  
Mass.  
28  
released

## CHAPTER IX.

Jesuit Missionaries of France—their Discoveries.

1. FROM the devotion of the Puritans, and the Quakers, we turn to that of the Jesuit missionaries of France ; and in all, we perceive “the operation of that common law of our nature, which binds the heart of man to the Author of his being.” The Jesuit missionaries desired to extend the benefits of Christian redemption to the heathen ; yet they unfortunately united worldly policy with religious enthusiasm, and sought, not only to win souls to Christ, but subjects to the king of France, and the papal dominion. Religious devotion a natural principle

2. The Catholics, already in Canada, seconded their efforts, and in 1640, Montreal was founded, to give the missionaries a starting point, nearer the scene of their operations. Within thirteen years, the wilderness of the Hurons was visited by sixty missionaries, mostly Jesuits. Making the Huron settlements of St. Louis, and St. Ignatius, their central station, they carried the gospel to the surrounding tribes ; and thus visited and 1634  
to  
1649  
60 mis-  
sionaries

12. How were they treated ?

CHAPTER IX.—1. When we see that different sects are willing to suffer death, in the service of God, what do we perceive ? What two principles of conduct did the Jesuits unite ? — 2. When was Montreal founded ? For what object ? Learn from the map of this period, in connection with the book, the central station of the missionaries.

P'T. II. became the first European explorers of the southern portion of Upper Canada, of which they took possession for the French king.

P'D. I.  
34. 11.

**1646.**  
Father  
Jouges.

The Mo-  
hawks.

3. One of these missionaries, Isaac Jouges, undaunted by the terrors of the Mohawk name, went among these savages, and was imprisoned. He escaped, but afterwards attempted a permanent mission. Arriving at the Mohawk castle, he was accused of blighting the corn of the Indians, by spells of sorcery. Being condemned, he received his death blow with composure. His head was hung on the palisades of the fort, and his body thrown into the placid stream.

French  
attempt  
to colo-  
nize  
N. Y.

4. Circumstances changed. The missionaries were received among each tribe of the Five Nations. Rude chapels were constructed, where the natives chanted the services of the Romish church. But when the missionaries sought to bring their lives under the influence of Christian principles, as to war and the treatment of prisoners, the fierceness of their character prevailed. They returned to their former customs, gave up their religion, and expelled the missionaries. Thus ended the attempts of the French to colonize New York.

**1665.**  
Allouez  
at Lake  
Superior.

5. Father Allouez, bent on a voyage of discovery, early in September, passed Mackinaw, into Lake Superior. Sailing along the high banks and pictured rocks of its southern shore, he rested, beyond the bay of Keweenaw, on that of Chegoimegon. Here was the great village of the Chippewas.

Indian  
council.

6. A grand council of ten or twelve tribes was, at the moment, assembled, to prevent the young braves of the Chippewas and Sioux, from taking up the tomahawk against each other. In this assembly came forward the missionary, and stood, and commanded, in the name of his heavenly, and of his earthly master, that there should be peace.

---

2. What part of the country did the missionaries take possession of for the French king?—3. Give an account of Father Jouges?—4. Of the further attempt to convert the Indians of New York?—5. Give an account of Father Allouez's route to the village of the Chippewas, and show it on the map?—6. What did Father Allouez at this village?

7. The Indians listened with reverence. They had never before seen a white man. Soon they built a chapel; and there they devoutly chanted their vesper and matin hymns; and the mission of St. Esprit was founded. The scattered Hurons and Ottawas here collected around the missionary. He preached to the Pottawotamies, the Sacs and Foxes, the Illinois, and the Sioux.

P.T. II  
P.D. I.  
CH. IX.  
St.  
Esprit  
founded.

8. From each of these tribes, he gained descriptions of their country, their lakes and rivers, of which he made reports to his government. He especially dwelt on what he had heard of the great river "Mesipi." He urged the sending of small colonies of French emigrants, to make permanent settlements in the west.

The  
great  
river  
heard of.

9. A small company, headed by two missionaries, Claude Dablon, and James Marquette, founded the first French settlement within the limits of the United States. It is at St. Mary's, on the falls between the Lakes Superior and Huron... Allouez founded a mission at Green Bay.

1668.  
St.  
Mary's  
founded.

1669.  
Green  
Bay.

10. Marquette selected a young Illinois as his companion, and learned from him the language of his nation. The Hurons heard with astonishment, that he had formed the bold design of exploring the great river of the west; notwithstanding their assertions, that its monsters devoured men and canoes, its warriors never spared the stranger, and its climate was rife with death.

Mar-  
quette's  
boldness.

11. Marquette walked from Green Bay, followed the Fox river, crossed the Portage from its head waters to those of the Wisconsin; when, with no companion but the missionary Joliet, he embarked upon its bosom, and followed its course, unknowing whither it would lead. Solitary they floated along, till, in seven days, they entered, with inexpressible joy, the broad Mississippi. They continued to float with its

1673.  
Follows  
the Wis-  
consin to  
the Miss.

---

7. How was it with the Indians? What was the mission called?  
8. What information was gained, and reported?—9. What account can you give of St. Mary's? Where did Allouez found a mission?—10. What was said by the Indians to deter Marquette from executing his design?—11. Give an account of his route, and trace it on the map.

**P.T. II.** lonely current, until, near the mouth of the *Momonga*, they perceived marks of population.

**P.D. I.**  
**CH. IX.**

Indian  
courtesy.

12. Disembarking, they found, at fourteen miles from the river, a village of the natives. Old men met them with the calumet, told them they were expected, and bade them enter their dwellings in peace. The missionaries declared, by the council-fire, the claims of the Christian religion, and the right of the king of France, to their territory. The Indians feasted them, and sent them away with the gift of a peace-pipe, embellished with the various colored heads and necks of bright and beautiful birds.

Disco-  
vers the  
Missouri.

13. Sailing on their solitary way, the discoverers heard afar, a rush of waters from the west; and soon the vast Missouri came down with its fiercer current to hasten on the more sluggish Mississippi. They saw, and passed the mouth of the Ohio, nor stopped, till they had gone beyond that of the Arkansas. There they found savages, who spoke a new tongue. They were armed with guns; a proof that they had trafficked with the Spaniards, or with the English, in Virginia. They showed hostile dispositions, but respected the peace-pipe, the white flag of the desert.

**1674.**  
Returns  
to Green  
Bay.

14. Marquette now retraced his course to the Illinois,—entered and ascended that river, and beheld the beautiful fertility of its summer prairies, abounding in game. He visited Chicago, and in September was again at Green Bay.

**1675.**  
Mar-  
quette  
dies near  
Lake Mi-  
chigan.

15. The next year, on the banks of the little stream now called by his name, Marquette retired for devotion, from the company with which he was journeying—to pray, by a rude altar of stones, beneath the silent shade. There, half an hour afterwards, his dead body was found. He was buried on the shore of the lake; and the Indian, fancies that his spirit still controls its storms.

16. As Joliet, the companion of Marquette, was returning from the west, to carry the tidings of their

---

12. What happened at an Indian village? — 13. Describe, and trace Marquette's route, to its farthest extent? What inhabitants did he find? — 14. Describe, and trace his return? — 15. Give an account of the death of Marquette?



discovery, he met at Frontenac, now Kingston, the governor of the place, the energetic and highly gifted La Salle. His genius kindled, by the description of the missionary; he went to France, and was commissioned to complete the survey of the great river.

P.T. II

P.D. I.  
CH. IX.**1679**  
La Salle.

17. He returned to Frontenac, built a wooden canoe, of ten tons, and carrying a part of his company to the mouth of Tonnewanta Creek, he there built the first sailing vessel, which ever navigated Lake Erie. On his way across the lakes, he marked Detroit as a suitable place for a colony, gave name to Lake St. Clair, planted a trading house at Mackinaw, and finally cast anchor at Green Bay.

Builds  
the first  
sailing  
vessel on  
Lake  
Erie.Founds  
Macki-  
naw.

18. Here, he collected a rich cargo of furs, and sent back his brig to carry them to Niagara. Then, in bark canoes, he moved his party south, to the head of the lake; and there constructed the Fort of the Miamis. His brig was unfortunately lost; but, with a small company, he steered resolutely west, accompanied by the Jesuit Hennepin.

19. They reached, through many discouragements, by disaster, treachery, and climate, the great Illinois; and following its waters four days journey below Lake Peoria, La Salle there built a fort, which, in the bitterness of his spirit, he named Creve-coeur. Here he sent out a party under Hennepin, to explore the sources of the Mississippi, and himself set forth on foot to return to Frontenac.

**1679.**  
Henne-  
pin with  
La Salle

20. Hennepin followed the Illinois to its junction with the parent stream, ascended that river above the falls, to which he gave the name of St. Anthony. He afterwards reported, though falsely, that he had discovered the sources of the Mississippi.

**1680.**  
He ex-  
plores to  
St. An-  
thony's  
Falls

La Salle returned to his fort on the Illinois, built a small vessel, and the next year, he sailed down the Mississippi, till he reached its mouth. To the country he gave the name of Louisiana, in honor of his sovereign, Louis XIV.

16. Who was La Salle? How did he become interested, and what did he do? — 17. Trace, and describe his route to Green Bay? — 18. What steps did he here take? — 19. Where did he go from thence? Whom did he send out to explore? — 20. What was done by Hennepin? What next by La Salle?

P.T. II. 21. Returning to France, the government sent him  
 P.D. I. to colonize the country which he had visited; but his  
 CH. X. fleet took a wrong direction, and he was carried, with  
 1687. his party, to Texas, where he made the settlement of  
 La Salle St. Louis. Attempting to go to Louisiana on foot, a  
 killed. discontented soldier of his party, gave him his death-  
 shot. Texas was regarded as an appendage to Lou-  
 isiana.

## CHAPTER X.

North and South Carolina.—The Great Patent.—Mr. Locke's  
 Constitution.

1. AFTER Charles II. was restored, the people about  
 him, took advantage of his improvident good nature,  
 and want of conscientious scruples. They thus gained  
 large tracts of American territory—and, neither he  
 who gave, nor they who received, considered, whether  
 or not, it was his to give. In 1663, the king gave  
 Patent of Carolina. Carolina, which more justly belonged to Spain, to  
 1663. Lord Clarendon the historian, Lord Ashley Cooper  
 Earl of Shaftsbury, General Monk afterwards Duke  
 of Albemarle, Lord Craven, the two Berkeleys, Sir  
 John Colleton, and Sir George Carteret.

2. These noblemen next aspired to the glory of  
 founding a sovereignty, which should, not only yield  
 them money, but the fame of legislators; and in 1667,  
 Charles granted them the whole of the country, from  
 the mouth of the river St. Johns to 36° 33' north lati-  
 tude; and from the Atlantic to the Pacific ocean. To  
 frame a government for the future empire, they secured  
 The grant ex- the services, of the well known philosopher, John  
 tended. 1665. Locke. In the meantime, the younger Berkeley, who  
 was governor of Virginia, was to extend his rule over  
 the whole territory.

21. What happened on his last return to America?

CHAPTER X.—1. What traits of Charles II. are here mention-  
 ed? What advantage was taken of them? What grant did he  
 make in 1663? To whom?—2. What grant did he make in  
 1667? Show its extent on the map? Who was to frame a con-  
 stitution for this large country? Who to be governor?

3. But settlers were wanted; and to procure these, various inducements were held out by the company. Two settlements had already been formed within their precincts. One of these, near Albemarle Sound, was begun, at an early day, by enterprising planters from Virginia; and enjoying entire liberty, it had been augmented from that and other colonies, whenever religious or political oppression had scattered their people. This settlement had so increased, as to form, for convenience, a simple democratic government.

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. X.

Settlement at Albemarle, the nucleus of N. C.

1663.

Forms a democracy.

4. The other colony was to the south of this, on Cape Fear, or Clarendon river; and had been originally made, by a little band of adventurers from New England. They, as well as the former colony, had purchased their land of the natives; they had occupied it, and they claimed, as a law of nature, the right of self-government.

Settlers at Cape Fear, united to those of Charleston begin S. C.

5. In the meantime, a number of planters from Barbadoes purchased lands of the sachems, and settled on Cape Fear river, near the territory of the New Englanders. The two parties united. In 1667, they were in danger of famine, and Massachusetts sent them relief. They requested of the proprietors a confirmation of the purchase they had made of the Indians, and of the power, which they had assumed to govern themselves. As a state must have inhabitants, their request was partially granted; and one of their number, Sir John Yeamans, was appointed their governor. The settlement, in 1666, contained eight hundred persons.

Sir J. Yeamans was the leading man of the Barbadoes party.

6. Thus, the germs of liberty had, in the Carolinas, begun to vegetate strongly. And when the great aristocratical constitution, making three orders of nobility, was sent over, in 1670, the ground was already pre-occupied. These dwellers in scattered log cabins in the woods, could not be noblemen, and would not be serfs. Eventually, the interest of the proprietors pre-

1693

[The constitution of Locke abrogated.]

3. What settlement was formed in the northern part of the tract? Of what did it prove to be the nucleus? — 4. Describe the settlement which proved to be the nucleus of South Carolina. 5. What change of inhabitants took place? Who was their first governor? What was their number in 1666? — 6. How was it in respect to Mr. Locke's constitution?

**P'T. II.** vailed over their pride. The inhabitants took their own way in regard to government, and in 1693, the  
**P'D. I.** constitution of Locke was formally abrogated.  
**CH. XI.**

**1670.** Gov. William Sayle, the first proprietary governor of Carolina, brought over a colony, with which he founded old Charlestown. Dying in 1671, his colony was annexed to that of Governor Yeamans. In 1680, the city was removed to the point of land between the two rivers, which received the names of Ashley and Cooper. The foundation of the present capital of the south was laid, and the name of the king perpetuated in that of Charleston.

**1680.** Charles-  
ton  
founded. 8. During the year 1690, King William sent out a large body of French Protestants, who had been compelled to leave their country, by the arbitrary measures of Louis XIV. To a part of these, lands were allotted in Virginia, on James river. Others settled in Carolina, on the banks of the Santee, and in Charleston. They introduced the culture of the vine, and were among the most useful settlers of the province.

**1690.** French protes-  
tants. The Cape Fear colony under Governor Yeamans having migrated south, the unfruitful country which they first occupied reverted to the natives.

## CHAPTER XI.

### A French and Indian War.

**King William's war.** 1. IN consequence of the English Revolution, a war ensued between England and France, which affected the American colonies of both; and is known in our annals, as "King William's war."

**1686.** Baron Castine. 2. The fisheries on the Atlantic coast were regarded as of prime importance; and, on this account, Acadia was highly valued. To protect it, the two French Jesuits, Vincent and Bigot, collected a village of the savage Abenakies, on the Penobscot; and the Baron de St. Castine, a bigoted French nobleman, established

7. Describe the founding of Charleston? — 8. Whom did King William send over in 1690? Where did they settle?

CHAPTER XI.—1. What war occurred in consequence of the English Revolution? — 2. Why was Acadia valued? What was done by Frenchmen to keep it from the English?

there a trading fort. In 1696, the fort, built at Pem- P'T II.  
quid, was taken by Castine; and thus the French P'D. I.  
claimed, as Acadia, all Maine, east of the Kennebec; and CH. XI.  
they artfully obtained great ascendancy over the natives.

3. The tribe of Pennicook, in New Hampshire, had lost several of their number, by the treachery of the whites, who had taken and sold them into slavery. At Dover, in that state, the venerable Major Waldron, a magistrate, and a trader among the Indians, hospitably admitted two squaws to sleep by his fire. At dead of night, they let in a war party from without. They placed Major Waldron upon a long table, and then mocked him with a jeering call, to "judge Indians." Those indebted to him for goods, drew gashes on his breast, saying, "here I cross out my account." Twenty-three were killed, twenty-nine made prisoners, and the town burnt.

**1689**

Penni-  
cooks  
attack  
Dover.

4. Governor Frontenac, at Quebec, planned to send, through the snow, three parties. The first arrived at Schenectady, the night of the 18th of February, and, separating into small parties, they invested every house at the same moment. The people slept until their doors were broken open, and themselves dragged from their beds. Their dwellings were set on fire, and sixty of the inhabitants butchered. Twenty-seven were carried captive, and most of the small number which escaped, lost their limbs in attempting to flee naked, through a deep snow, to Albany.

Feb. 18.  
**1690.**  
Schenec-  
tady de-  
stroyed.

5. The second party of French and Indians, leagued for murder, were sent against the pleasant settlement at Salmon Falls, on the Piscataqua. At break of day—a day which, for fifty of their number, had no morrow, the peaceful inhabitants were waked to experience the horrors of Indian warfare, aided and directed by French ingenuity. The third party from Quebec, in like manner, destroyed the settlement at Casco Bay, in Maine.

Destruc-  
tion of  
Salmon  
Falls.  
March  
18.

2. What fort was taken by Castine? How far did the French claim in Maine?—3. What provocation did the Pennicooks receive? What shocking cruelty did they exercise?—4. What three parties were sent out? By whom? Trace, and describe the route of the first party? Describe the massacre of Schenectady?—5. Trace and describe the route of the second party? Of the third?



**P.T. 11.** 6. Fear and terror were on every side. The several  
**P.D. 1.** governors of the provinces, convened at New York  
**CH. XI.** city. General Winthrop with a body of troops, and  
 May 1. Sir William Phipps, with a large fleet, were sent against  
**1691.** the French. A part of the fleet was wrecked in re-  
 turning, and both expeditions failed.

**Congress  
at N. Y.**

**The  
"credit  
system."**

7. Great expenses were, by these means, incurred by Massachusetts, and the general court authorized, for the first time, the emission of paper money, or notes of credit; making them, in all payments, a legal tender.

**1692.**  
**New  
charter  
of Mass.**

8. The Revolution in England produced a disagreeable change, in the affairs of Massachusetts. King William, refusing to restore its former Government, granted a new charter, which extended its limits, but restricted its privileges. Massachusetts now embraced, besides her former territory, and the adjacent islands, Plymouth, Maine, and Nova Scotia; extending north to the river St. Lawrence, and west to the South Sea, excepting New Hampshire and New York.

**Union in  
heart.**

9. Almost the only privilege which the new charter allowed the people, was that of choosing their representatives. The king reserved to himself the right of appointing the governor, lieutenant governor, and secretary; and of repealing all laws within three years after the passage. As Plymouth, the oldest, and Massachusetts, the principal member of the New England confederacy, were now placed under a royal governor, the union was nominally at an end. But it was already firmly cemented in the hearts and habits of the people.

---

6. What measures were taken in the congress of governors? What expeditions were undertaken? — 7. What means did Massachusetts take to procure money? — 8. How did the English Revolution affect Massachusetts? What course did King William take? How did the new charter affect Massachusetts in regard to territory? What did that province now embrace? 9. How did the new charter affect the liberties of the people? What power had now the king of England? Why could not the confederacy remain as it had been? In what respects had the union become already cemented?

## EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What event marks the beginning of this period? What <sup>P.T. II</sup>  
is its date? Point it out on the chronographer. <sub>P.D. I.</sub>

The Navigation Acts were passed in 1651. Point to the place of this date. The time of "Bacon's rebellion" was 1676. Show its place on the chronographer. New York was founded in 1614, and Albany in 1615. Point to the places of these dates. New Amsterdam was surrendered to the English in 1664. What is the place of this year?

In 1682, William Penn made his celebrated treaty with the Indians. Point out the place of this year. New Jersey was first settled in 1664. Point out the place of this date. Connecticut, including New Haven, obtained a liberal charter in 1662. Rhode Island had also obtained one in 1651. Point to the places of these dates. Elliot completed his translation of the Bible in 1657. Point to the place of this date. King Philip was killed and his war terminated in 1676. Point out the place of this date.

Sir Edmund Andross was made governor of New England in 1686. The charter of Connecticut was hid in the charter-oak, 1687. Point out the places of these years. The first General Assembly of New York met in 1683. Point out the place of this date.

The great patent of Carolina was granted in 1663, and the grant extended in 1667. Point out the places of these two dates. Charleston was founded in 1680. What is the place of this date? Schenectady was destroyed in 1690. Point to the place of this year? At what epoch does this period terminate? What is its date? What is its place on the chronographer?

The teacher can, at his option, select other dates, and require the pupils to locate them on the chronographer.

Long. 93 West 91 from 89 Green- 87 wch. 85

MAP N<sup>o</sup> 5. 1692.

# NEW FRANCE,

exhibiting the discoveries of  
MARQUETTE, LA SALLE,  
and other  
Frenchmen.





Landing of Sir William Phipps.

## PERIOD II.

FROM

THE NEW CHARTER } **1692,** { OF MASSACHUSETTS.

TO

THE FIRST SETTLEMENT } **1733.** { OF GEORGIA BY OGLETHORPE.

### CHAPTER I.

Sir William Phipps.—Cotton Mather.—Salem Witchcraft.—  
Schools.—Yale College.

1. THE new charter was received at Boston, May **P<sup>T</sup>. II.**  
14th, 1692. It was brought over by Sir William **P<sup>D</sup>. II.**  
Phipps, who brought also his commission, as royal **CH. I.**  
governor. He was nominated by the influence of his **May 14.**  
pastor, Cotton Mather, who received him with great **1692.**  
joy. Phipps was a native of Pemaquid, in Maine. He **New**  
was made apprentice to a trade; but being active and **charter.**  
enterprising, he went to England; and, at length, ac- **Sir Wm.**  
quired riches and a title, by recovering, with a diving **Phipps.**  
bell, the treasures of a Spanish wreck.

2. The delusion, with respect to witchcraft, was **Delusion**  
now at its height. The first settlers brought it with **respect-**  
them from the mother country. Laws, making witch- **ing**  
**witch-**  
**craft.**

CHAPTER I.—1. Where was the new charter received?  
By whom brought over? By whose influence was he nominated  
for governor? — 2. What delusion existed? Give some account  
of this delusion?

**P<sup>T</sup>. II.** craft a capital crime, existed in England, and were  
**P<sup>D</sup>. II.** early enacted in Massachusetts. In Springfield in 1645,  
**CH. I.** some individuals were accused and tried, but acquitted. Persons at Boston, Charlestown, Dorchester, and Cambridge, were tried, and some actually executed for the supposed offence. But it was at Salem, where this delusion produced its most fatal effects.

**Convictions on insufficient grounds.** 3. At first, it was old women only, who were suspected of having leagued with the devil, to inflict upon the persons who complained, the various torments, which they asserted, that they felt. The magistrates of the people's choice, had, with Bradstreet, their governor, previous to the arrival of Phipps, discountenanced these persecutions; but the new authorities, under the influence of Cotton Mather, pursued a course which placed the accused in situations, where "they had need to be magicians, not to be convicted of magic."

**And by incompetent witnesses.** 4. The unhappy persons were confronted with those who accused them, and asked, "Why do you afflict these children?" If they denied the fact, they were commanded to look upon the children, who would instantly fall into fits, and afterwards declare that they were thus troubled by the persons apprehended. On evidence no better than this, were  
**20 executed.** twenty persons executed.

**Oct. The general court against the special court.** 5. The general court, on assembling, took ground against these proceedings, and abolished the special court, by which these persons had been condemned. This court was organised by Phipps, and presided over by Stoughton, the lieutenant-governor. The public were addressed on the subject, through the press, by the independent Calef, of Boston; and the eyes of men were at length opened. Those who had been imprisoned were set free; and the memory of the transaction soon became, what it still continues to be, a source of national sorrow and humiliation.

---

3. Who were first accused? How was it with the people's magistrates, in respect to prosecutions for witchcraft? By whom were they upheld?—4. How did the prosecutions proceed? How many persons suffered death?—5. By what court had these persons been condemned? How was shown the power of the press to do good?



6. Not one of the colonies enjoyed a repose so uninterrupted as Connecticut; and therefore none had, in this respect, such advantages for showing the bent of the Puritan mind, in regard to the improvement of the human race, by the right training of the young.

7. As early as 1646, the general court took the matter in hand. "To the end," say they, "that learning be not buried in the graves of our forefathers, the Lord assisting our endeavors, it is ordered, that all the townships with fifty householders, shall keep a school, and pay for the same in such way as they see fit. And further, that if any town has one hundred householders, they shall keep and maintain a grammar school, where young men can be fitted for a university."

**1646**  
P<sup>r</sup>T. II.  
P<sup>r</sup>D. II.  
CH. I.  
Gen. Ct  
of Conn

50  
families.

100  
families.

8. New Haven had also provided by law for common schools, and in 1654, Mr. Davenport proposed the institution of a college, and the town gave lands for the object. Governor Hopkins, of Connecticut, who, for several years, was alternately with Haynes, the chief magistrate of that colony, dying in London, bequeathed, for such an institution, four or five hundred pounds. The school was located at Saybrook.

**1654.**  
Yale  
College.

9. The clergy of Connecticut, feeling the need of a college, nearer than at Cambridge, to furnish learned men as ministers, ten of their number, obtained from the general assembly, a charter of incorporation; together with an annual grant of £120. Thus constituted as trustees, they held their first meeting at Saybrook; chose officers, and made laws for the infant university.

**1701.**  
Charter  
and  
endow-  
ments.

10. The location was inconvenient, and more money being subscribed, to fix the college at New Haven than at rival places, it was removed thither. and received at the same time, accessions,—of books for its library already begun, and in its funds. The most liberal of the donors was Elihu Yale, a native of New Haven,

**1717.**  
College  
removed  
to New  
Haven.

---

6. How was it with Connecticut in respect to education? — 7. What did the general court order in 1646? — 8. What did Mr. Davenport propose in 1654? What can you say of Governor Hopkins? Where was the school first located? — 9. What was obtained for it? By whom? Where did the ten trustees hold their first meeting? What did they do? — 10. Why was the college removed? Why placed at New Haven?

P.T. II. who had made a fortune in India. His name is preserved, in grateful remembrance, by that of the college

P.D. II.  
CH. II.

Gov.  
Fletcher's attempt.

11. Colonel Fletcher, governor of New York, was empowered to take command of the militia of Connecticut. The colony, alarmed, immediately despatched General Winthrop to England, as an agent, to remonstrate with the king and council. Colonel Fletcher however, went to Hartford, in 1693; and, in his majesty's name, demanded the surrender of the militia to his command.

1693.

Oct 26.  
Foiled by  
Captain  
Wadsworth.

12. Captain William Wadsworth, the man by whom the charter was hid, paraded his company; but as an attendant of Fletcher began to read his commission, the captain gave command to "drum;" and when Fletcher called out "silence!" the captain raised his voice higher in a second order, "drum, drum, I say." At length Fletcher gave up in despair; perhaps fearing, if he persisted, that Wadsworth would, in good earnest, fulfil his threat, and "make daylight shine through him."

## CHAPTER II.

European Politics.—Peace of Ryswick, which closes King William's War.—Queen Anne's War soon begins.

1697.  
Peace of  
Ryswick.

1. KING William's war had been feebly pursued. Settlements on Oyster river were, however, destroyed by the French and Indians, and the fort at Pemaquid, which Sir William Phipps had rebuilt by the special direction of the sovereigns, had been taken. In 1697, peace was made at Ryswick, in Germany, by which it was stipulated that all places captured during the war should be restored. Thus had the barbarous ap-

10. From whom receive its name? — 11. How was Connecticut now alarmed? What measures were taken by Fletcher? 12. What by Captain Wadsworth? What was the result?

CHAPTER II.—1. What settlements had been destroyed? What fort taken? What was done in 1697? What was stipulated?

peal to arms been to no other purpose but that of multiplying human woes. But the parties profited little by the lesson. In May, 1702, the contest began, which is known in American history. as "Queen Anne's war."

P'T. II.  
P'D. II.  
CH. II.  
**1702.**

2. The eastern Indians now devastated Maine from Casco to Wells. Deerfield, in Massachusetts, was surprised at midnight, February, 1704, by a party of French and Indians, under Heurtel de Rouville. The sentinel of the fort being asleep, and the snow of such a depth as to allow them to pass over the palisades, they silently entered, and scalped and murdered, or secured as prisoners, the wretched inhabitants. Only a small number escaped by flight. Forty-seven were killed, and one hundred and twenty carried captive to Canada.

**1704.**  
Deerfield  
surprised  
by  
French  
and  
Indians.

3. Early in the assault, the house of the Rev. John Williams, the minister of the place, was attacked by about twenty Indians, who, after the murder of two of his children, secured as prisoners, himself, his wife, and his remaining children. Mrs. Williams, on the second day, faltered in the march, and, according to the Indian custom, was cruelly put to death.

The  
Wil-  
liams  
family.

4. Roused by these inhumanities, the veteran warrior, Benjamin Church, mounted on horseback and rode seventy miles to offer his services to Dudley, now governor of Massachusetts, in behalf of his distressed fellow citizens. He was sent with five hundred soldiers to the eastern coast of New England, to attack the enemy in their own settlements; and, ascending the Penobscot and St. Croix rivers, he destroyed several of their towns, and took a considerable number of prisoners.

**1704.**  
Indian  
settle-  
ments  
destroy-  
ed.

5. In 1705, Vaudreuil, now governor of Canada, proposed to Governor Dudley, a treaty of neutrality. Arrangements were accordingly made for an exchange of prisoners; and thus a large proportion of those

**1705**  
Priso-  
ners ex-  
changed

1. What object has been answered by the war? Was war soon made again? What war? — 2. What can you say of the eastern Indians? Describe the assault upon Deerfield? — 3. What happened to Mr. Williams and his family? — 4. Who went against the Indians? — 5. What was done in 1705?

**P.T. II.** taken at Deerfield, were finally released. Among the number were Mr. Williams, and some of his children.

**P.D. II.** One young daughter remained, married, and raised a family in the tribe which adopted her... In 1710, Port Royal was taken from the French, and its name, in honor of the queen, was changed to Annapolis.

**1710.**  
English  
take Port  
Royal.

**1713.** Queen Anne's war was closed by the treaty of Utrecht, by which Acadia was ceded to the English. For more than ten years, this war had exposed the frontiers to continued attacks from a savage foe. Agriculture was necessarily neglected, a heavy public debt incurred, and a state of general depression ensued.

**1713.**  
Peace of  
Utrecht  
closes  
Queen  
Anne's  
war.

**1710.** Some Palatines of Germany, having been reduced to great indigence, by the wars in that country, went to England to solicit charity of Queen Anne. This princess having obtained for them, grants of land in America, about six or seven thousand arrived, during the year 1710, and planted themselves in the provinces of New York, Pennsylvania, Virginia, and Carolina.

**1710.**  
Palatines  
settle in  
the pro-  
vince.

**1714.**  
George I.

In 1714, Queen Anne dying, George I., ascended the throne of England.

Mass.  
takes in  
all  
Maine.

8. After the treaty of Utrecht, by which France ceded to England, the whole of Acadia, the general court of Massachusetts extended its jurisdiction to the utmost bounds of the province of Maine; and, enterprising fishermen and traders, not only revived the desolated villages, but on the eastern bank of the Kennebec erected new forts, and planted new settlements around them.

Father  
Rasles  
war.

**1717,**  
to  
**1724.**

9. Father Rasles, a Jesuit missionary of France, had for many years ministered, in a rude chapel at Norridgewock, on the Kennebec, among his savage converts of the Abenakies. The Indians under his charge began hostilities against the English, by burning Brunswick. The authorities of Massachusetts had ascertained, by getting possession of the papers of Father

---

5. What place was taken in 1710? — 6. When was Queen Anne's war closed? What were some of its bad effects? — 7. What persons were sent over? By whom? At what time? To what place? Who succeeded Queen Anne? — 8. What was the condition and prospects of Maine? — 9. Give an account of Father Rasles? Where did the Indians, acting under his directions, begin their warfare?

Rasles, that both he, and the governor of Canada were in the counsel of the savages, and were the instigators of their depredations. A party from New England, in August 1724, destroyed Norridgewock, and put to death the aged Jesuit. He was the last of that devoted order, who, in the wilds of America, had labored to gain at the same time, a spiritual kingdom for a heavenly Master, and a temporal one for an earthly sovereign.

P'T. II.  
P'D. II.  
CH. III.

Rasles  
and his  
party de-  
stroyed.

10. The Indians now found, that, though instigated by the French, they were not supported by them; and their sachems, at St. John's, concluded a peace with the colonists; which, as French missions were now at an end, proved durable. English trading houses flourished, and the eastern boundary of New England remained undisputed.

1726.  
Aug. 6.  
Peace  
with the  
eastern  
Indians.

### CHAPTER III.

Fletcher.—Piracy.—The Jerseys united, and joined with New York.

1. GOVERNOR Sloughter, of New York, dying in 1691, Colonel Fletcher received the commission of governor. Fletcher was a good soldier, and having fortunately secured the friendship of Major Schuyler, he was, by his advice, enabled to conduct the Indian affairs of the colony, to the acceptance of the people. Episcopalian ministers were, by the influence of the governor, settled in several parishes; and a religious order thus introduced, which, at this day, forms so respectable a portion of the population of the state.

1692  
Colonel  
Fletcher

1693.  
Introdu-  
ces Epis-  
copacy.

2. In 1698, the earl of Bellamont, succeeded Governor Fletcher. During the late wars, the seas were

1698  
Bella-  
mont.

9. How did the colonists proceed? — 10. What made the Indians willing to conclude a peace? What followed this peace?

CHAPTER III.—1. Whom did Fletcher succeed? At what time? What enabled him to conduct well the Indian affairs? What was done by his influence in respect to religion? — 2. Who succeeded him?



**P'T. II.** infested with English pirates. Bellamont was particularly instructed "to put a stop to the growth of piracy."

**P'D. II.**  
**CH. III.** As no appropriation of money had been made by government, a private adventure against the pirates was agreed on, and one William Kid, undertook the expedition, and sailed from New York. He soon turned pirate himself. After some time, he burnt his ship and returned to the colonies. There is a vague tradition still existing, that he brought large quantities of money, which he caused to be concealed in the earth. He was apprehended at Boston, sent to England for his trial, and there condemned and executed.

**1699.** 3. Such disagreements arose in West Jersey, that the proprietors surrendered the right of government to the crown. Queen Anne united it with the east province, and **NEW JERSEY**, as the whole was now called

**1702.** was to be ruled jointly with New York by a royal governor, having a separate council and assembly of representatives. The queen appointed, as governor of the two provinces, the worthless lord Cornbury. In

**1698.** Lord Cornbury. 1708, she removed him and appointed Lord Lovelace.

**1708.** Lovelace. 1708, she removed him and appointed Lord Lovelace.

4. After a short administration, Lovelace was succeeded by Sir Robert Hunter, and he, in 1719, by Peter Schuyler, who so often acted as the mediator between the whites, and Indians. Commissioners were at this time, appointed to draw the line of partition between the provinces of New York, New Jersey, and Connecticut.

**1720.** 5. In 1720, Mr. Burnet succeeded Schuyler. He instituted measures to stop the trade between New York and Canada; and by this means displeased the merchants. A trading house was built at Oswego,

**1722.** Fortified which was, in 1727, converted into a fortress. Burnet

**1727.** Mont-gomery. was superseded in the government, by Colonel Mont-gomery.

---

2. How did he happen to employ Kid? Give an account of William Kid? — 3. What happened in West Jersey? What was the whole now called? How was it to be governed? Whom did Queen Anne make governor? What did she do in 1708? — 4. Who were the successors of Lovelace? — 5. How did Governor Burnet incur the displeasure of the merchants? What did they do?

6. On his death, the command devolved on Rip Van Dam, an eminent merchant. During his administration, the French erected a fort at Crown Point, which commanded Lake Champlain, and which was within the acknowledged limits of New York...George I. died in 1727, and was succeeded by his son, George II.

P'T. II.  
P'D. II  
CH. IV.

Van  
Dam.  
1727.  
George  
II.

## CHAPTER IV.

Pennsylvania.—Penn's second visit.—Maryland.

1. AFTER William Penn's arrival in England, he became one of the most influential persons in the kingdom. The influence, which he possessed; with King James was never used for selfish purposes, but mainly to obtain benefits for distressed Quakers, and laws in favor of general toleration.

Penn in-  
fluential  
at court.

2. When James became an exile in France, Penn was suspected, by his successor, of holding with him a treasonable correspondence; and, upon vague charges like these, he was a number of times imprisoned. In 1692, the government of Pennsylvania was taken from him; and Fletcher, of New York, appointed by the crown, to be its governor.

1692.  
Deprived  
of the  
govern-  
ment  
of Pa.

3. After strict scrutiny, the conduct of Penn was found to be irreproachable; and in 1694, he was restored to the favor of the king, and reinstated in his government: but not immediately returning to Pennsylvania, he appointed the worthy Thomas Lloyd, his deputy governor.

6. Who was Burnet's successor? What did he permit? What happened in England in 1727?

CHAPTER IV.—1. How was it with Penn after his return to England? Was William Penn a selfish man? — 2. After the English Revolution, by which James was made an exile, what happened to Penn? What became, at this time, of Pennsylvania? 3. Was Penn found guilty? What happened in 1694?

- P'T. II.** 4. In 1699, Penn visited his colony. Finding great  
**P'D. II.** complaint and disaffection respecting the government,  
**CH. V.** he granted, in 1701, a new and liberal charter. To  
**1699.** the assembly, it gave the right of originating bills; to  
 His second visit. the governor the right of rejecting laws passed by the  
 assembly,—of appointing his own council,—and of ex-  
 1701. exercising the whole executive power. This charter was  
 Grants new pri- accepted by the assembly; although it did not satisfy  
 vileges. the discontents of the people.
5. The Territories, afterwards called **DELAWARE**, re-  
 1703. jected the charter altogether; and in 1703, they were  
 The Territories a separate province. allowed to form a separate assembly; Penn still ap-  
 pointing the same governor, over both provinces.  
 Having settled a government, which has given him the  
 glory of being one of the greatest of lawgivers, Penn  
 went to England, no more to visit his beloved province.  
 The executive authority was administered by deputy  
 governors appointed by himself.
6. In the year 1716, the government of Maryland,  
 1716. which since the accession of William and Mary, had  
 Lord Baltimore re-instituted. been held by the crown, was restored to Lord Balti-  
 more, the proprietor. It continued in his hands, and  
 those of his successors, until the American Revolution.

## CHAPTER V.

The Huguenots.—War with the Spaniards.—Tuscaroras and Yamassees.

1. THE English settlers in Carolina, treated with  
 harshness and intolerance, the French Huguenots.  
 French ill treated. They, on their part, bore this ill usage, with meek-  
 ness and forbearance; so that after a few years, they  
 were admitted to the privileges of citizens... John

4. What in 1699? What in 1701? What powers were given by the charter? — 5. What is said of The Territories? What did Penn then do? — 6. What happened in 1716?

CHAPTER V.—1. Who were ill treated? By whom? How was their ill usage borne?

Archdale, one of the proprietors, was sent, in 1695, as governor of North and South Carolina, with power to redress alleged grievances. Having restored order, he left the country the next year.

P<sup>T</sup>. II.  
P<sup>D</sup>. II.  
CH. V.

2. About this time a vessel from Madagascar, touching at Carolina, the captain presented Governor Archdale with a bag of seed rice, giving him, at the same time, instructions as to the manner of its culture. The seed was divided among several planters. From this accident arose the cultivation of this staple commodity of Carolina.

**1695.**  
Rice introduced from Africa.

3. The proprietary governor, invested with arbitrary powers, resided in the southern province, and governed the northern by his deputy. But the deputy governor, though his powers were ample, could never execute them, beyond the limits of the peoples' will.

Too much liberty in N. C.

4. On the breaking out of Queen Anne's war, an attempt was made by Governor Moore, of South Carolina, against the Spanish province of St. Augustine. The expedition was unsuccessful, and so heavy was the expense, that, to pay the debt incurred, the assembly, for the first time, resorted to the expedient of a paper currency.

**1702.**  
The first paper currency of S. C.

5. The Spaniards, aided by the French, and commanded by Le Feboure, in a fleet of five ships, next invaded Charleston. Their attack was met with such spirit, that they retired with loss.

**1706.**  
Spanish invasion repelled

6. In 1712, the Tuscaroras, and other Indians of North Carolina, formed a horrible plot for exterminating the entire white population. They entered, by surprise, the houses of the poor Palatines of Germany, who had recently settled on the Roanoke, and murdered many families. The remaining inhabitants, collecting into a camp, kept guard night and day, until aid could be received from South Carolina.

**1712.**  
War with the Tuscaroras.

---

1. What was done by the proprietors? — 2. How was the culture of rice introduced? — 3. Where did the governor of the Carolinas reside? How did his deputy succeed in governing North Carolina? — 4. What account can you give of the expedition against St. Augustine? What was done to defray the expense? — 5. Give an account of the Spanish invasion? — 6. What happened now to the northern province of Carolina?

P'T. II. 7. That colony sent to their relief, six hundred  
 P'D. II. militia, under Captain Barnwell. He penetrated the  
 CH. V. wilderness, attacked the Indians, killed three hundred,  
 and took one hundred prisoners. Those who sur-  
 They are  
 vived, fled to the chief town of the Tuscaroras; but  
 and de-  
 ated by  
 Barnwell. here Barnwell's troops surrounded them. After  
 great losses, they sued for peace. The Tuscaroras  
 soon after left their country, and united with the Iro-  
 quis; making the sixth nation of that confederacy.

1715. 8. In 1715, the Yamassees, instigated a combination  
 W r of all the Indians from Florida to Cape Fear against  
 with the South Carolina. The warriors of the Creeks, Appala-  
 Yama- chians, Cherokees, and other tribes engaged, exceeded  
 sees in six thousand. The southern Indians fell suddenly on  
 S. C. the traders settled among them, and, in a few hours,  
 ninety persons were massacred. Some of the inhabi-  
 tants fled precipitately to Charleston, and gave the  
 alarm.

9. Formidable parties were also penetrating the  
 northern frontier, and approaching Charleston. These  
 Battle of were repulsed by the militia, but their route was mark-  
 Salt- ed by devastation. Governor Craven, at the head of  
 catchers, twelve hundred men, marched towards the southern  
 frontier, and overtook the strongest body of the enemy,  
 The Ya- at a place called Saltcatchers, where a bloody battle  
 masees was fought. The Indians were totally defeated, and  
 settle in driven from their territory. They were received by  
 Florida. the Spaniards, and settled in Florida. Nearly four  
 hundred of the Carolinians were slain in this war.

10. The legislature, in the distressed condition of  
 the colony, applied to the company for aid and protec-  
 tion, which was denied. For temporary relief, they  
 next made large emissions of paper money. Direc-  
 Evils of tions were given, by the proprietors, to the governor,  
 proprie- to reduce the quantity in circulation. The assembly  
 tary gov- then resolved to appropriate the lands, from which the  
 ernment.

7. Did the southern province make exertions? What did  
 Capt. Barnwell? What became of the Tuscaroras? — 8. What  
 formidable combination was formed? Who were the instiga-  
 tors? What was their force? What was their first outbreak?  
 9. How did they proceed? Where were they defeated? By  
 whom? How many Carolinians were destroyed by these Indi-  
 ans? — 10. What was done in the distress of the colony?



Indians had been driven ; but the proprietors refused to sanction this necessary proceeding. They also encouraged their officers in oppressive measures.

P.T. II.  
P.D. II.  
CH. V.

11. The people were determined, no longer to submit to such tyranny. The governor, Johnson, was informed, that if he would rule under the king; he could retain his office, but not otherwise. Johnson refused, and endeavored to suppress the spirit of revolt; but it had diffused itself beyond his control; and, at last, the people elected Moore, governor of the province.

1719.  
Carolini-  
ans re-  
volt and  
choose a  
governor

12. The colonists stated their situation by agents in England, when it was decided, that the proprietors had forfeited their charter ; and that both the Carolinas should be taken under the royal protection. Nicholson, was appointed governor; and, early the following year, he arrived at Charleston, where he was received with every demonstration of joy.

The  
crown  
appoints  
Nichol-  
son.

13. Peace was made between Great Britain and Spain. Treaties were held with the Cherokees and Creeks, in which boundaries were settled. Governor Nicholson encouraged literary institutions.

His  
good ad-  
ministra-  
tion.

14. The revolution was completed, by an agreement between the crown and seven of the proprietors ; whereby, for a valuable consideration, they surrendered their right and interest, not only in the government of these provinces, but also in the soil. North and South Carolina were, at the same time, erected into separate governments.

1729.  
N. and  
S. Caro-  
lina sepa-  
rated.

10. How did the company of proprietors treat the people ? — 11. What were the people now resolved on ? What did they let Gov. Johnson know ? What reply receive ? Whom did they elect ? — 12. What decision was made in England ? Who was sent as governor ? — 13. How did he administer the government ? — 14. How was this revolution in Carolina completed ?

## CHAPTER VI.

Extension of the French Empire.—New France.

**P.T. II.** 1. **PENSACOLA** was settled by three hundred Span-  
**P.D. II.** iards from Vera Cruz. Scarcely were they established,  
**CH. VI.** when a fleet, under Le Moine d'Iberville, a Canadian  
**1699.** Frenchman, who had been distinguished as a discoverer  
 Pensaco- and a warrior, appeared along their coast, carrying  
 la settled. several hundred persons, mostly from Canada.

**Feb. 3.** 2. The company at first erected their huts on Ship  
**d'Iber-** Island, near the entrance of Lake Borgne. After three  
**vill en-** weeks, d'Iberville proceeded with forty men, entered  
**ters the** the mouth of the Mississippi, and sailed up the stream,  
**Miss.** probably to Red river. On his return, he passed through  
 the bay, which bears his name, and the lakes which he  
 called Maurepas and Pontchartrain, to the bay of St.  
 Louis. On the small bay of Biloxi he erected a fort,  
 and around it his few emigrants were planted.

**1702.** 3. Leaving them under the command of his brother,  
**Mobile** Bienville, he went to France. The climate proved  
**founded.** fatal to numbers, and in 1702, the chief fortress was  
 transferred to the western bank of the Mobile, where  
 was made the first European settlement in Alabama.

**1716.** 4. In 1716, Bienville went up the Mississippi, and  
**Natchez** built Fort Rosalie, on the site of Natchez,—the oldest  
**founded.** European settlement of the grand valley, south of the  
 Illinois. False ideas of the wealth of Louisiana had  
 been spread in France, for purposes of land specula-

**1718.** tion; and in 1718, three ships came over, bearing  
**New** eight hundred emigrants, who founded a city, and in  
**Orleans** honor of the regent of France, named it New Orleans.  
**founded.** By this occupancy, as well as by discovery, France  
 laid claim to Louisiana.

---

**CHAPTER VI.—1.** When was Pensacola settled? What fleet soon appeared? — **2.** Where did the company first stop? Where did d'Iberville then go? Describe, and trace on the map, his route and return? Where were his emigrants planted? — **3.** With whom did he leave the command? To what place was the settlement transferred? — **4.** What was done in 1716? To what cause was the settlement of New Orleans owing? On what did France found her great claims?

5. The French built a fort at Niagara. A colony of one hundred was led to Detroit, as early as 1701, by De La Motte Cadillac, and another in 1712, by Anthony Crozat, who had obtained from Louis XIV., a patent for the exclusive trade of Louisiana. Since the discoveries of the Jesuits, the French had been in possession of the various western routes from the St. Lawrence to the Mississippi; and Chicago, Vincennes, and Kaskaskia, were, at the close of this period, growing settlements.

P'T. II.  
P'D. II.  
CH. VII.  
**1713.**

New  
France.

## CHAPTER VII.

Controversy in Massachusetts, respecting a fixed salary for the royal governor.

1. THE free institutions of the colonies, again alarmed the English government. Massachusetts was ever the least submissive to the royal will. A controversy between that colony and the parent state now began, which led to the war of the revolution. The main subject was a fixed salary for the royal governor, which the English sovereign directed that officer to require; but which, this colony, for a series of years, resolutely refused to pay.

**1702**  
Mass. a  
trouble-  
some  
subject.

2. Massachusetts, to defray the expenses of the war, had made such large emissions of paper money, that gold and silver were banished from the province. The paper depreciated, and the usual commercial evils ensued. The attention of the colony being directed to remedy these evils, a public bank was instituted; in which the faith of the government was pledged for the value of the notes. The profits accruing from the

Embar-  
rass-  
ments.

Public  
Bank

5. What other places were founded by the French soon after?  
CHAPTER VII.—1. Which of the colonies was most prone to dispute the royal will? What did the English government instruct their governors to require? How did the colony meet this demand? — 2. Give an account of the institution of a public bank.

P'T. II. bank, were to be applied for its support. Fifty thousand pounds, in bills of credit, were issued.

P'D. II.  
CH. VII.

1706.

Gov.  
Shute  
makes  
bad  
worse.

3. The bank, however, failed of its desired effect. Governor Shute succeeded at this time, Governor Dudley, and by his recommendation, another emission of bills of credit was made to the amount of one hundred thousand pounds. The consequence of this was, rather to heighten than allay the existing difficulties; as it was found, that the greater the quantity of this factitious substitute for money, the less was its value.

1728.

Burnet  
made  
governor  
of Mass.  
and  
N. H.

4. In 1728, Mr. Burnet, who had been removed from the magistracy of New York, was appointed to that of Massachusetts and New Hampshire. He was instructed by his sovereign to insist on a fixed salary. The general court resisted, and postponed a decisive answer. They voted Governor Burnet the unusual sum of one thousand seven hundred pounds; three hundred for his travelling expenses, and fourteen hundred for his salary. He accepted the appropriation for his expenses, but rejected that for his salary.

Removes  
the court  
from  
Boston to  
Salem.

5. The people of Boston took a lively interest in the dispute, and the governor, believing that the general court were thus unduly influenced, removed them to Salem. Continuing firm to their purpose, he kept the court in session several months beyond the usual time, and refused to sign a warrant on the treasurer for the payment of the members.

1729.

Burnet  
dies.

6. In April, 1729, after a recess of about three months, the general court again convened at Salem, but proving refractory on the subject of the salary, the governor adjourned them, and they met at Cambridge in August. Unable to make any impression, Burnet felt so severely the difficulties of his position, that he sickened with a fever, and died on the 17th of September.

7. His successor, Mr. Belcher, who arrived at Boston in August, 1730, renewed the controversy; but the

---

3. What was the effect of emitting so much paper money? — 4. Who was made governor of Massachusetts in 1728? What was done by the governor, and the court, in reference to a fixed salary? — 5. What removal did the governor make? — 6. What was done respecting the salary in 1729? What effect had these troubles on the governor?

court, after two or three sessions, succeeded with him, (and by consent of the crown,) in a policy which they had vainly attempted with Burnet, that of paying him a liberal sum for present use, without binding themselves for the future.

P.T. II.  
P.D. II.  
CH. VII.  
**1730.**

8. In 1719, more than one hundred families emigrated from the north of Ireland, and settled in the town of Londonderry, in New Hampshire. They introduced the foot spinning-wheel, the manufacture of linen, and the culture of potatoes.

**1719**  
London  
derry  
settled.

9. A phenomenon, singular at the time, and not yet satisfactorily explained, alarmed the people of New England in 1719. This was the *Aurora Borealis*, first noticed in the country, on the night of the 17th of December. Its appearance, according to the writers of the day, was more calculated to excite terror than later appearances of the same kind.

*Aurora  
Borealis.*

10. In 1723, a fort was built on Connecticut river, in the present town of Brattleborough, under the direction of lieutenant governor Dummer, of Massachusetts, and hence it was called Fort Dummer. Around this fort was commenced the first settlement in Vermont.

**1723.**  
First set-  
tlement  
in Ver-  
mont.

11. About this period, a new colony was projected in England, to settle between the Savannah and Altamaha rivers. Although within the limits of the Carolina grant, it was still unoccupied by European settlers. The patriotic deemed it important, that this region should be planted by a British colony, otherwise it might be seized by the Spaniards from Florida, or the French from the Mississippi. At the same time, a spirit of philanthropy was abroad in England, to notice the distresses of the poor, especially those shut up in prisons, and to provide for their relief.

Plan of a  
new  
colony.

12. Actuated by these generous motives, a number of gentlemen in England, of whom James Oglethorpe

Ogle-  
thorpe

7. How was the controversy settled? — 8. What emigrants settled in New Hampshire? What did they introduce? — 9. What can you say of the *Aurora Borealis* of that day? — 10. When and where was the first settlement made in Vermont? 11. What new colony was projected in England? Why did the patriotic in England favor the project? What benevolent spirit was abroad? — 12. Who was to be the leader of the enterprise?



**F.T. II.** was the most zealous, formed a project to settle this  
**P.D. II.** tract, by such of the suffering poor, as might be wil-  
**CH. VII.** ling to seek, in the new world, the means of subsis-  
 tence.

**1732.**

Georgia  
 granted.

13. To this company, the territory between the Savannah and Altamaha, now, in honor of the king, denominated Georgia, was granted; and, with its settlement, was completed, that of the thirteen veteran colonies, which fought the war of the revolution; and whose emblematic stars and stripes, still decorate the banner of American Independence.

13. What may be said of the colony which Oglethorpe and his company settled?

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer.

Queen Anne's war began in 1702. What is the place of this date? Massachusetts extended its jurisdiction over Maine in 1714. What is the place of this year? New York and New Jersey were ruled by one governor in 1698. Point out the place of that year. Penn granted a new charter to Pennsylvania in 1701. Point to the place of that year.

The cultivation of rice was begun in Carolina, in 1695. Point to the place of this date. Paper money was first made in South Carolina, in 1702. Show the place of this year. In 1729 North and South Carolina were erected into separate governments. Point to the place of this date. Mobile was founded by the French, in 1702, Natchez in 1706, and New Orleans in 1718. Point out the places of these dates. Vermont was first settled in 1723. Point out the place of this date.

What event terminates this period? What is its date? Point out its place on the chronographer.

Let the teacher, as before, select other dates, and require the pupils to locate them on the chronographer.







Oglethorpe's Council with the Indian chiefs.

## PERIOD III.

FROM

THE FIRST SETTLEMENT OF } **1733**, } GEORGIA BY OGLETHORPE.

TO

THE PEACE OF PARIS, WHICH } **1763**. } CLOSING THE FRENCH WAR.

### CHAPTER I.

Georgia and Carolina engaged in war with the Spaniards of Florida.—The Slave Trade.—War of the French with the Chickasaws.

1. OGLETHORPE prepared for the settlement of Georgia, by the assistance of a corporation, consisting of twenty-one persons, who were called "Trustees for settling and establishing the Colony of Georgia." He embarked in November, 1732, with one hundred and sixteen emigrants for America.

P.T. II.

P.D. III.

CH. I.

21

trustees.

2. Large sums of money had been subscribed, which were applied to the purchase of clothing, food, arms, agricultural utensils, and transportation for such indigent persons as should be willing to cross the Atlantic, and begin a new settlement.

Supplies,  
how fur-  
nished.

1. Whose assistance had Oglethorpe? At what time did he embark? With how many?—2. For what purposes was money raised?

**P.T. II.** 3. The company arrived at Yamacraw Bluff, after-  
**P.D. III.** wards Savannah, on the first of February, 1733. Here  
**CH. I** Oglethorpe built a fort. His next care was to have a  
**Feb. 1.** good understanding with his neighbors, the powerful  
**1733.** chiefs of the Creeks, Cherokees, Choctaws, and Chick-  
 Ogle- asaws. Oglethorpe invited them to meet him in a  
 thorpe- general council at Savannah. By means of an inter-  
 arrives. preter, he made them the most friendly professions,  
 Council which they reciprocated; and these amicable disposi-  
 of chiefs. tions passed into a solemn treaty.

4. Georgia was soon increased by five or six hun-  
 dred emigrants; but most were idle, and many vicious.  
**50 acres** In order to procure a more efficient population, eleven  
**given to** townships of 20,000 acres each, were laid out on the  
**each** Savannah, Altamaha, and Santee rivers, and divided  
**settler.** into lots of fifty acres each. One of these was to be  
 given to every actual settler.

5. This arrangement proved so attractive, that a  
 large number of emigrants soon arrived. Highlanders  
**Scotch** from Scotland, built the town of Inverness, afterwards  
**and** Darien, on the Altamaha; and Germans, a town which  
**Germans.** they called Ebenezer, on the Savannah.

6. The charter granted to the trustees of Georgia,  
 vested in them, powers of legislation for twenty-one  
**1736.** years; and they now proceeded to establish regulations  
 Civil for the government of the province, in which the inte-  
 govern- rests of humanity were regarded, more than those  
 ment. of trade.

7. In 1736, Oglethorpe erected three forts, one on  
 the Savannah, at Augusta; another called Frederica, in  
 the vicinity of the Scotch settlement on the island of  
**Og.** St. Simons; and a third, named Fort William, on Cum-  
**builds** berland island. The Spaniards remonstrated, and in-  
**3 forts.** sisted on the evacuation of the country, as far as the  
 thirty-third degree of north latitude.

---

3. Where and when did the company arrive? What was first  
 done? What was Oglethorpe's next care? What powerful  
 nations sent their chiefs to the council? What was done at the  
 council?—4. How was the settlement increased? What was  
 done to procure a more efficient population?—5. What effect  
 had this arrangement? What town was built by Scotch High-  
 landers? What by Germans?—6. What was done in relation  
 to government?—7. What three forts did Oglethorpe next  
 build? What ground was taken by the Spaniards?



8. Oglethorpe about this time returned to England. He was appointed commander-in-chief of the British forces in Carolina and Georgia, and sent back with a regiment of six hundred men.

P'T. II.  
P'D. III.  
CH. I.

9. England, having declared war, Oglethorpe twice invaded Florida. His second expedition proved wholly unsuccessful, and produced the unfortunate results of an increase of the public debt, and a temporary distrust between the people and their general. The same year, Charleston, in South Carolina, was destroyed by fire. To relieve the sufferers, the British parliament generously voted £20,000.

1740  
Og. is  
unsuc-  
cessful.

Charleston  
burned.

10. In May, 1742, a fleet was sent from Havanna, from which, debarked a Spanish army at St. Simons. Oglethorpe had collected troops and posted himself at Frederica. He was not in sufficient force openly to attack the enemy; but was himself attacked by a party of Spaniards. His troops, particularly the Highlanders, under Captain McIntosh, fought bravely—repulsed, and slew two hundred of the enemy at “the Bloody Marsh.”

1742.  
June.  
Georgia  
invaded  
by the  
Spaniards.

11. Oglethorpe next attempted to surprise the invaders, by marching to attack their camp in the night. A traitor, who discharged his gun, and then ran into the Spanish lines, defeated his plan. But Oglethorpe made the Spaniards believe, by a stratagem, that the soldier was sent to them by him, to advise them to remain. Some ships from South Carolina appearing in sight, the Spaniards thought they were going to fall into a trap; and they embarked in such haste, that their artillery, provisions, and military stores, fell into the hands of the Georgians.

A stratagem  
makes  
them  
retire.

12. Georgia, in its early settlement, was distinguished by the peculiar humanity in which it was founded. Oglethorpe “sought not himself, but others;”

Character  
of  
Oglethorpe.

---

8. What appointment had Oglethorpe? — 9. What two expeditions did he undertake? What bad results occurred? What misfortune happened to Charleston? What generous act is recorded here? 10. Give an account of the Spanish invasion? Who repulsed the Spaniards? — 11. By what stratagem were they induced to retire? — 12. What was the conduct of Oglethorpe?

P'T. II. and, for ten years, he gave his disinterested services  
P'D. III. without claiming so much as a cottage or a farm.

CH. II. 13. The eloquent Whitfield, with the two Wesleys,  
Whit- the three founders of the sect of Methodists, sympa-  
field and thized with Oglethorpe in his benevolence; and each  
the two spent some time in America, assisting him in his en-  
Wes- terprise. Whitfield founded, near Savannah, a house  
leys. for orphans. In 1752, the Trustees, wearied with a  
Trustees troublesome and profitless charge, resigned their office,  
of and Georgia became a royal province.

1732. 14. Louisiana, after having been for fourteen years,  
The under a company of avaricious speculators, formed at  
Natchez Paris, reverted to the French monarch; and Bienville  
de- was appointed governor. He found the Chickasaws  
stroyed. very troublesome, as they favored the English, rather  
The than the French. The Natchez, under their influence,  
Chicka- had committed murders, for which the whites had  
saws de- wholly destroyed them. Bienville ascended the Tom-  
stroy a bebee to attack the Chickasaws. He was to be aided  
French by a French army from the Illinois. They came first,  
army. and the Chickasaws destroyed them. When Bienville  
arrived, he found the Indians more than a match for  
his force, and immediately retired down the stream.

## CHAPTER II.

Old French War—Capture of Louisburg.—French and English claims to the Basin of the Mississippi.

1. IN 1744, war was again proclaimed between England and France. Louisburg, the capital of the island of Cape Breton, had been fortified with great care and expense, and was called, from its strength, the Dunkirk of America; while, from its position, it com-

13. What eminent ministers of the gospel were with him? What change was made in 1752?—14. Under whom had Louisiana been? To whom did it revert? Whom did he appoint? Give an account of the attack upon the Chickasaws, and its result.

CHAPTER II.—1. In what year was the "Old French War"? What can you say of Louisburg?

manded the navigation of the St. Lawrence, and the fisheries of the adjoining seas. P'T. II.

2. Governor Shirley, of Massachusetts, now meditated an attack on this fortress. He laid open his designs to the general court of the colony, under an oath of secrecy. The plan being thought too great, too hazardous, and too expensive, it was apparently abandoned; but an honest member, who performed the family devotions at his lodgings, inadvertently discovered the secret, by praying for the divine blessing on the attempt. P'D. III.  
CH. II.

3. The people approving the project, with which they became thus accidentally acquainted, were clamorous in its support. It was revived by the court, and after a long deliberation, the vote in its favor was carried by a single voice. Troops were immediately raised by Connecticut, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire, to aid those of Massachusetts. The command of these forces was given to Colonel William Pepperell, a merchant of Maine, who sailed on the 25th of March, and arrived at Casco on the 4th of April. A secret betrayed

4. A British naval force, under Admiral Warren, having been applied to, joined the armament; and the whole arrived at Chapeau Rouge Bay, on the 30th of April. By a series of the most unprecedented good luck, and by almost incredible exertions, the fortress was taken, and with it the whole island of Cape Breton. **1745.**  
Forces commanded by Col. Pepperell.

5. Peace was proclaimed in 1748, and a treaty, signed at Aix la Chapelle, by commissioners from England, France, and Spain, the basis of which was the mutual restoration of all places taken during the war: and Louisburg, to the grief and mortification of the colonies, reverted to the French. Its capture, had, however, done credit to their military prowess; as it had been, by far, the most brilliant exploit of the entire war. From April 30, to June 16, a great feat.

2. What plan was formed by Governor Shirley? What did he in reference to it? How did the general court receive it? How did it come to the knowledge of the people? — 3. What did they think of it? What was finally done by the court? From what states was an army raised? Who commanded? — 4. What naval force joined them? What was the result of the combined effort? — 5. On what basis was peace made at Aix la Chapelle?

**1748.**  
Peace of Aix la Chapelle.

P<sup>R</sup>T. II. 6. The blood and treasure of the many, had again  
 P<sup>R</sup>D. III. been spent without result, and peace was concluded  
 CH. II. without a proper settlement of differences. This was  
 especially the case in regard to the American claims  
 of the contracting powers.

Did not  
 settle  
 differ-  
 ences.

Extent of  
 New  
 France,  
 as stated  
 by  
 French  
 geogra-  
 phers.

British  
 claim the  
 same ter-  
 ritory.

7. The French laid claim to all the lands occupied by the waters flowing into the St. Lawrence and the Lakes; and all watered by the Mississippi and its branches; and, in the west, and on the north, they were erecting fortresses, with an intent to unite and command the whole of this vast territory.

8. The British, on the other hand, asserted a right to the entire country, as may be seen by their early patents, to which they gave an extension from the Atlantic to the Pacific. These conflicting claims, it was clearly foreseen, must soon lead to another war.

9. A number of gentlemen, mostly in Virginia, of whom Lawrence Washington was one, procured in 1750, an act of the British parliament, constituting them "the Ohio Company," and granting them six hundred thousand acres of land, on, or near, the Ohio river. They caused the tract to be surveyed, and opened a trade with the Indians in the vicinity.

10. This becoming known to the French, the governor of Canada complained to the authorities of New York and Pennsylvania, threatening to seize their traders, if they did not quit the territory. Several of their number were accordingly taken, and carried to the French fort at Presque Isle.

Hostile  
 measures  
 of the  
 French.

11. Dinwiddie, the governor of Virginia, alarmed at these movements on the part of the French, had sent a trader among them as a spy, who returning, increased his fears, by vague accounts of the French posts near Lake Erie, without gratifying his curiosity as to the number or object of their forces.

Gov.  
 Dinwid-  
 die  
 alarmed.

---

6. Were these subjects of differences remaining unsettled? — 7. What part of America was claimed by France? What were they doing to unite and command this territory? — 8. What was claimed by the British? Was there any prospect of a peaceable settlement of these differences? — 9. Who were the Ohio Company? What grant had they? What did they do in reference to it? — 10. What course did the French take? — 11. Who was governor of Virginia? What report was brought to him?

12. Dinwiddie determined, although the season was advanced, to send immediately a trusty person, to require the French Commandant to quit the territory; and also to bring such an account of his strength and position, that if he refused peaceably to retreat, some feasible method of ejection might be adopted. A young man of twenty-two, an officer of the militia, was chosen. His figure was commanding, his air inspired respect and confidence. His name was **GEORGE WASHINGTON**.

P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. III.

1752.  
He selects Washington for a difficult duty.

### CHAPTER III.

George Washington—His birth, parentage, and education—His conduct in places of trust, private, and public.

1. WE have already mentioned Colonel John Washington. Lawrence Washington was his son; Augustine Washington, his. He, who is now regarded as the Father of his Country, was the son of Augustine Washington. He was born on the 22d of February, 1732, in Westmoreland county, Virginia. In 1734, his father removed to Stafford county, opposite to Fredericksburg, on the Rappahannock; little thinking that his playful boy, then but two years old, was marked by Providence for a career so elevated.

John, Lawrence, Augustine, and **GEORGE WASHINGTON.**  
1732.

2. In 1743, Augustine Washington died, and left to each of his sons valuable landed estates. To Lawrence, his eldest, he bequeathed the beautiful tract on the bank of the Potomac; and to George, the lands and mansion where he died. George was the oldest offspring of a second marriage, and his excellent mother, Mary Washington, was, by his father's will, his

1743.  
His father dies.

12. What plan did he adopt? Who was chosen?

CHAPTER III.—1. What was the name of George Washington's father? His grandfather? His great-grandfather? When and where was he born? How old was he when his father removed to Stafford county?—2. What occurred on the death of his father? How old was George? Who was his guardian?



**P<sup>T</sup>. II.** sole guardian. It was under her maternal guidance,  
**P<sup>D</sup>. III.** and in the common school, that Washington developed  
**CH. III.** those physical, intellectual, and moral elements, which formed his greatness.

**His early moral character.** 3. When in school he was pains-taking, and exact in the performance of his exercises; and he was, at the same time, so true in his words, so righteous in his actions, and so just in his judgments, that his school-mates were wont to bring their differences before him for decision. Superior also in bodily health, and vigor, he excelled in athletic sports, and adventurous exploits. He loved the military; and tradition reports, that the first battles, in which he commanded, were the mimic engagements, which he taught to his school-fellows.

**His activity.** 4. He learned to read and to write well; and he thoroughly mastered arithmetic. This was all, which the school helped him to acquire. Of himself he practiced composition; and he happily formed a style suited to the lofty tone of his moral sentiments, and the directness and energy of his character. The higher mathematics he learned with pleasure and mental profit, his object being to prepare himself for the occupation of surveyor. He set carefully down in his books, his diagrams, his observations on manners, and his rules of behaviour. Nothing was too laborious, or too tedious for his determined mind.

**Limited advantages over-balanced by self-exertion.** **1748.** 5. To survey the great estates of Lord Fairfax, then residing in Virginia, he first began his career of active life. Though a boy of just sixteen, he was intrusted with what would have been an arduous and difficult duty, to a sound and able man. Among the forest wilds of the Alleghanies, the young surveyor fre-

**A surveyor among the mountains.**

---

2. What were his advantages? — 3. What was his character as a school boy? — 4. What did he learn in school? What important exercise did he practice by himself? Did he early fix upon something which he could follow, to obtain an honorable support? What did he learn, in order to prepare himself for his chosen occupation? What did he do, that he might retain, and be the wiser for what he had learned? Did he not find such labor too tedious? — 5. Was he trusted with important business when young? By whom? What business was it? Where did he practise his profession?

quently ranged alone; but on the summits he rejoiced in the beauty of the earth and sky; and in the valleys he examined well, all rare and curious things.

P'T. II.  
P'D. III  
CH. III.

6. He had often no bed to lodge in, and no roof to shelter him. With his own hands he dressed the game which his musket had procured. Sometimes, however, he shared the wigwam, and the unpalatable fare of the native. But these hardships were an important preparation, for the service he had afterwards to perform. His employment also was lucrative; and he discharged its duties in a manner, that made men regard him, as a youth of extraordinary promise.

He gains property and honor.

7. He was only nineteen, when he was made an adjutant general of the Virginia militia, with the rank of Major. About this time, he accompanied to the West Indies, his brother Lawrence, now declining with a pulmonary disease. His voyage was advantageous to himself, from his great observation and industry; but his brother's disease remained, and he died during the next year. By his will he left George his executor; and gave him a title to the Mount Vernon estate.

1751.  
Made Adjutant with title of Major

Mount Vernon estate

8. Maj. Washington was next placed over one of the four divisions into which Dinwiddie had portioned the militia of "the Dominion" the style then given to Virginia. It was at this period, that he was chosen by the governor, as his envoy to the French. The seat of government for Virginia, was Williamsburg. Thither Washington repaired, and was furnished with a letter from Dinwiddie, to St. Pierre, the French commandant, requiring him with threats, to withdraw from the territory belonging to the English sovereign.

He sets out to cross the wilderness.  
Oct. 31.  
1753.

9. Washington departed on the 31st of October, to traverse more than five hundred miles, much of the way, a pathless, as well as a wintry desert. His route

5. Through what scenes did it lead him? — 6. What hardships did he encounter? Were these on the whole to his advantage? In what way? — 7. What promotion had he at the age of nineteen? What happened in reference to his brother? — 8. What was Virginia called at that time? Into how many divisions was it portioned in regard to the military? What was Washington's public position, when Dinwiddie selected him as envoy? What his first step after accepting the appointment? What was the purport of the governor's letter? — 9. What time in the year did Washington set out? To go how far?

P.T. II. lay through Fredericksburg, Alexandria, and Winchester, to Will's Creek, since Cumberland. Here, taking  
 P.D. III. leave of every vestige of civilization, and having pro-  
 CH. III. cured Mr. Gist, agent of the Ohio company, as interpreter and guide, his party of eight plunged into the recesses of the wilderness.

10. They passed through snow and storms, over mountains, and then down among thickets, into flooded valleys. Coming upon the Youghiogeny they followed it to the Monongahela, and that, to its junction with the Alleghany. "The Fork," as the site of Pittsburg was called, was then a desert; but Washington noticed, and afterwards reported it, as a suitable place for a fort.

From  
Cumber-  
land to  
the Fork.

11. From the Fork, he went down the river twenty miles, to Logstown, where he was to deliver friendly greetings from Dinwiddie, to the great chief of the southern Hurons, Tanacharison, or the Half-king; whose friendship was courted both by French and English. The chief asserted that the land in question, belonged neither to the English nor the French; but the Great Spirit had given it to the Indians, and allowed them to make it their residence. After a friendly council Tanacharison and three of his principal men, accompanied Washington a hundred miles, to the encampment, at French Creek.

Nov. 24.  
At Log-  
stown he  
meets the  
Half-  
king.

12. Here St. Pierre, who had been but a few days in command of the post, received him with the courteous bearing and hospitable attentions of the French gentleman. But to Dinwiddie's request, that he would leave the territory which belonged to the British, he replied, that it did not become him to discuss treaties; such questions should rather be addressed to the governor-general of Canada, the Marquis du Quesne; he acted under his orders, and those he should be careful to obey.

His re-  
ception  
at the  
French  
camp.

13. The return of Washington in the dead of winter, was full of startling and perilous adventure. Once

---

9. Trace and describe the first part of his route? — 10. Describe his journey to the "Fork." — 11. Describe his progress and adventures, till he reached the French camp? — 12. How was he received by St. Pierre? What reply was given to the Governor's letter?

a treacherous guide, aimed his musket at him, but it missed fire; and once, on the Alleghany river, he and his guide, having made in a day, with one poor hatchet, a miserable raft, they, at sunset, trusted themselves upon it, to cross the swollen river, amidst large masses of floating ice. It came down upon them, and threw them from their raft into ten feet water. But they saved themselves by swimming to an island.

P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. III.

The per-  
ils of  
Wash-  
ington's  
return.

14. Major Washington arrived at Williamsburg, on the 16th of January, having been absent only eleven weeks. The energy and prudence, with which he had met and overcome dangers, and the ability, which he had manifested in the discharge of his trust, sunk deep into the minds of his countrymen. His written reports were published with applause, not only through the colonies, but in England.

Returns  
Jan. 16.  
**1754.**  
Absent  
11 weeks

15. Troops were now raised in Virginia; and Washington was made lieutenant colonel, and intrusted with the command. In April, 1754, he marched into the disputed territory, and encamping at the Great Meadows. He there learned that the French had dispossessed the Virginians of a fort, which, in consequence of his recommendation, they were erecting at the Fork, and which the French finished, and named Fort du Quesne.

**1754.**  
He is  
again  
sent with  
a force.

French  
build  
Fort du  
Quesne.

16. He was also informed, that a detachment of French troops, had been sent against him, and were encamped but a few miles west of the Great Meadows. Surrounding their encampment, he surprised, and defeated them. The commander de Jumonville was killed, with ten of his party. On his return to the Great Meadows, he erected a small stockade called Fort Necessity.

W. de-  
feats a  
party.  
10 killed  
22 pris-  
oners.  
May 28.

17. With less than four hundred men, Washington marched to dislodge the enemy from Fort du Quesne; but after proceeding thirteen miles he learned that they had been reinforced from Canada, when he retired.

French  
rein-  
forced.

- 
13. What adventures did Washington meet with on his return?  
14. How long was he absent? What qualities had he manifested, which made a deep impression? What was thought of his written reports? — 15. Under what circumstances did he march into the same country again? Where encamp? What did he hear? — 16. Give an account of a French party, headed by de Jumonville? What did Washington build at Great Meadows?  
17. What did he set out to do? Why did he desist, and turn back?

**P.T. II.** Unable to continue his retreat, from a failure of expected munitions, he entrenched his little army within  
**P.D. III.** Fort Necessity. A party of fifteen hundred French,  
**CR. IV.** soon followed and assaulted the entrenchments. After  
**1754.** a brave resistance, Washington surrendered the fort;  
**July 3.** receiving for the garrison, the honors of war.

## CHAPTER IV.

Congress at Albany.—Convention of governors in Virginia.  
 Braddock.

**Attempt to unite.** 1. THE British government, in prospect of war, proposed to their American colonies, to form a union. Delegates from each of the New England provinces, New York, Pennsylvania, and Maryland, accordingly met at Albany. After deliberating, they accepted a  
**1754.** plan of confederation, which was drawn up by BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, on the 4th of July, 1754. This was just twenty-two years before that great statesman signed the Declaration of Independence.

**Plan suits neither party.** 2. But the plan was disliked in England, because it gave too much power to the people; and in America, because it gave too much power to the king. Thus was shown how widely different, even at that period, were the views of the British and the Americans. It was this difference of opinion, which finally led to the American Revolution.

**Braddock assembles the governors.** 3. General Braddock was dispatched from England with fifteen hundred men. On his arrival in America, he requested a convention of the colonial governors to assemble in Virginia, to concert with him a plan of

**17.** Why did he stop at Fort Necessity? What happened at the fort?

**CHAPTER IV.—1.** What proposal was made by the British government? What was done in consequence? What plan did the delegates accept?—**2.** How was it received in England? How in America? What did this show? What did it lead to?  
**3.** How many men were now sent over? Under whom? What did he request?



military operations. Four expeditions were here resolved upon, the first, against Nova Scotia, the second, against Fort du Quesne, the third, against Crown Point, and the fourth, against Niagara. P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. IV.

4. The expedition against Nova Scotia was commanded by generals Monckton and Winslow. The fleet which conveyed the troops, sailed from Boston. The army distinguished themselves by bravery and good conduct, and with the loss of only three men, put the British in full possession of Nova Scotia.

5. General Braddock commanded the expedition against Fort du Quesne. On his arrival, he engaged Washington, now a colonel, to become his aid. By his advice, Braddock, in marching his army across the wilderness, left his heavy baggage behind, under the care of Colonel Dunbar, with an escort of six hundred men; and at the head of twelve hundred select troops, he proceeded by more rapid marches, towards Fort du Quesne. **1755**  
June 10,  
Braddock's  
army begin their  
march.

6. Braddock was not deficient in courage, or military skill; but he was wholly ignorant of the mode of conducting warfare in American woods; and he held the opinions of the colonial officers in contempt. Washington had, however, ventured to suggest the expediency of employing the Indians; who, under the Half-king, had offered their services, as scouting, and advanced parties. Braddock not only disdained the advice, but offended the Indians by the rudeness of his manner. Thus he rashly pushed on, without knowing the dangers near. Braddock  
contemns  
and dis-  
regards  
advice.

7. It was noon, on the 9th of July, when from the height above the right bank of the Monongahela, Washington looked back upon the ascending army, which, ten miles from Fort du Quesne, had just crossed the stream for the second time. Every thing looked more bright and beautiful, than aught he had witnessed July 9.  
Fine ap-  
pearance  
of Brad-  
dock's  
army.

3. What expeditions did this convention agree on? — 4. Give an account of that against Nova Scotia? — 5. Who commanded the second expedition? In what capacity did Washington accompany him? What measures did he take by Washington's advice? — 6. What can you say of Braddock? What wholesome advice had he, which he despised? — 7. How did Braddock's army appear to Washington, on the morning of July 9th?

P.T. II. before. The companies, in their crimson uniform,  
 P.D. III. with burnished arms and floating banners, were march-  
 CH. IV. ing gaily to cheerful music, as they entered the forest.

They fall  
 into an  
 Indian  
 ambus-  
 cade.

8. Suddenly there burst upon them the Indian war-whoop, and a deadly fire, from opposite quarters, and from unseen foes. Many fell. Panic-stricken, their ranks broke, and they would have fled, but Braddock rallied them; and, a bigot to the rules of European warfare, he constantly sought to preserve a regular order of battle. Thus he kept his men, like sheep penned in a fold, fair marks for a foe, beyond their reach; and, in the only spot, where the Indians, far inferior in numbers, could have destroyed them. They lay on each side of the way, concealed in two ravines.

Wash-  
 ington's  
 wonder-  
 ful pres-  
 ervation.

9. The Indians, singling out the officers, shot down every one on horseback, Washington alone excepted. He, as the sole remaining aid of the general, rode by turns over every part of the field, to carry his orders. The Indians afterwards asserted, that they had specially noticed his bearing, and conspicuous figure, and repeatedly shot at him; but at length they became convinced that he was protected by an Invisible Power, and that no bullet could harm him. After the battle was over, four balls were found lodged in his coat. Two horses had been killed under him; but the appointed guardian of his country, escaped without a wound.

Brad-  
 dock  
 killed.  
 64 offi-  
 cers, 600  
 privates.

10. Braddock, who had been undismayed amidst continued showers of bullets, at length received a mortal wound. Upon his fall, the regular troops fled in confusion. Washington formed, and covered their retreat with the provincials, whom Braddock, in his contempt, had kept in the rear. The defeat was total; sixty-four officers out of eighty-five, and nearly half the privates, were killed or wounded.

11. The army made no halt till it met the division

---

8. How was the scene reversed? What was Braddock's conduct? Where were the Indians concealed?—9. What is very remarkable concerning Washington during this battle?—10. What was the fate of Braddock? What was the condition of the army? What the loss?

under Dunbar, forty miles in the rear. There, Brad-dock died. The whole army continued to retreat till it reached Fort Cumberland, one hundred and twenty miles from the place of action. Colonel Dunbar, withdrew the regulars to Philadelphia, leaving the whole frontier of Virginia open to the depredations of the French and Indians.

P'T. II.

P'D. III.

CH. V.

Dunbar  
in com-  
mand.

## CHAPTER V.

Remainder of the campaign of 1755.—Campaign of 1756.

1. THE troops destined for the third expedition against Crown Point, amounted to more than four thousand. They arrived at Albany the last of June, under the command of General William Johnson, and General Lyman. Here they were joined by a body of Mohawks, under their sachem, Hendrick.

June,  
**1755.**  
Johnson  
and  
Lyman

2. Lyman advanced with the main body of the army, and erected Fort Edward, on the Hudson, for the security of the batteaux, provisions, and artillery; which were forwarded from Albany, by Johnson. Towards the last of August, Johnson removed his force, and encamped at the south end of Lake George. Here he was engaged in preparing to cross the lakes.

Erect Ft.  
Edward

3. In the mean time, the Baron Dieskau led against this force, an army from Montreal. He encountered the Americans near their camp, and was at first successful; but the fortune of the day changed. His army was defeated and fled; and himself, pale, and bleeding with mortal wounds, was found, sitting against a tree in the woods.

Baron  
Dieskau  
attacks  
and de-  
feats a  
detach-  
ment.Is defeat-  
ed by the  
main  
body.

11. Describe the retreat of the army?

CHAPTER V.—1. What was the third expedition of the campaign? How many troops? Where were they on the last of June? Under whose command? Who joined them?—2. In what direction did the two divisions of the army move?—3. Who commanded the French army? Give an account of his operations.

P<sup>T</sup>. II. 4. Johnson, in representing this affair to the British,  
 P<sup>D</sup>. III. made no mention of General Lyman, but obtained for  
 CH. V. himself £5,000, and a baronetcy. The public impres-  
 sion was, that the reward belonged, at least, equally to  
 Lyman.

John-  
son's ho-  
nors tar-  
nish his  
charac-  
ter.

The re-  
mains of  
the  
French  
destroy-  
ed.

5. The poor dispirited remains of Dieskau's army halted at French mountain, where they were, the next day, cut off by a detachment from Fort Edward. Their dead bodies were thrown into a small lake, since called "the Bloody Pond." May the time soon come, when the pure waters of our mother earth, shall no longer be dyed by the blood of her children, barbarously shed by each other's hands!

Sir Wm.  
Johnson  
wastes  
the cam-  
paign.

6. The success at Lake George revived the spirits of the colonies; but Sir William Johnson, did not follow up his success, by proceeding to reduce Crown Point; but he erected, at the scene of his exploit, on the southern shore of Lake George, a fort, which he called William Henry. Leaving six hundred men, to garrison the forts, the remainder of the troops returned to their respective colonies.

1755.  
Aug. 21  
Shirley  
loses the  
cam-  
paign.

7. The enterprise against Niagara was undertaken by Governor Shirley in person. He did not arrive at Oswego until the 21st of August, and he there waited for supplies until the season was too far advanced for crossing Lake Ontario. Leaving seven hundred men, under Colonel Mercer, to garrison the fort, he returned to Albany, and so ended the fourth expedition.

1756.  
Indians  
ravage  
Va. and  
Pa.

8. By the destruction of Braddock's army, the frontiers of Pennsylvania, and Virginia, were left to the mercy of the savages. Washington, at the head of his regiment, did his utmost to defend them; and he strenuously urged that offensive measures should be again adopted, and especially against Fort du Quesne, which he knew was their place of gathering.

---

4. Who gained money and a title, but lost in character? — 5. What became of the remains of the French army? — 6. Did Sir William Johnson follow up his success? What disposition was made of the army? — 7. What happened in regard to the fourth expedition? — 8. What after these failures, was the condition of the frontier states?

## CHAPTER VI.

Campaigns of 1757 and 1758.

1. THUS in the campaign of 1756, little was done. P'T. II.  
That of 1757 is only memorable in our annals, for P'D. III.  
the dreadful massacre at Fort William Henry. Mont- CH. VI.  
calm, who succeeded Dieskau, had early concentrated **1757.**  
his forces, amounting to nine thousand regulars, Cana- Mont-  
dians and Indians, on the shores of the Champlain, at calm be-  
Ticonderoga. Passing up Lake George, he laid siege sieges Ft.  
to Fort William Henry, which was commanded by Wm.  
Colonel Monroe, a British officer. General Webb was Henry.  
at the time, lying at Fort Edward, with the main Brit-  
ish army, four or five thousand strong.

2. Monroe, being vigorously pressed, while he de-  
fended himself with spirit, earnestly entreated General  
Webb for aid. But he entreated in vain, and necessity  
compelled him, on the 2d of August, to surrender. Aug. 2.  
By the articles of capitulation, Montcalm engaged that Monroe  
the English should be allowed to leave the fort with capitu-  
the honors of war; and, in order to protect them from lates.  
the Indians, that an escort should be provided to con-  
duct them to Fort Edward.

3. But the Indians who served for plunder, attacked  
the British in the camp; and the French commander  
either could not, or would not, protect them. They Aug. 3,  
rushed forth, and were pursued. They threw all their The mas-  
money and clothes to the Indians. Not satisfied, the sacre.  
savages pursued them, naked and flying, with toma-  
hawk and scalping knife. A few reached the camp of  
Webb, and some were found bleeding in the woods.  
But of these, many in their agony, had lost their  
reason.

CHAPTER VI.—1. For what is the campaign of 1757 memor-  
able? Give an account of Montcalm, and his army. What was  
the condition of the British forces, and who were commanders?  
2. What was the situation and conduct of Monroe? What of  
Webb? What was stipulated by Montcalm? — 3. Did he keep  
his engagement? Mention some of the circumstances of the  
massacre.



P'T. II. 4. The manner in which the war had been conducted, dissatisfied the people both of England and America; and brought forward as prime minister, the greatest statesman of the British annals, WILLIAM PITT, afterwards Earl of Chatham. So powerful was his eloquence and so austere his patriotism, that he controlled at length, the energies of the government, and the spirit of the people.

P'D. III.  
CH. VI.  
The  
elder  
Wm.  
Pitt.

1758.  
Pitt calls  
on the  
colonies.

An army  
of 50,000  
in America.

July 6.  
Louis-  
burg sur-  
renders.

6,000  
prisoners  
sent  
across  
the At-  
lantic.

July 6.  
Aber-  
crombie  
proceeds  
against  
Tico.

5. In a circular letter, which he addressed to the governors of the provinces, he promised them, that an effectual force should be sent against the French, and he exhorted them to use their utmost exertions to raise men in their respective colonies. Animated by this call, the colonists renewed their efforts, and increased their army to twenty thousand. A large force was also sent from England; so that there was now on foot, an army far greater than had ever before existed in America. These troops, amounting in all, to fifty thousand men, were in readiness for action early in the spring. Three expeditions were resolved on, against Louisburg, Crown Point, and Fort du Quesne.

6. A regular siege, the best conducted of any which had ever been laid in America, placed, on the 6th of July, the fortress of Louisburg, again in the hands of the British. It was by gallant conduct during this siege, that JAMES WOLFE began his career of military renown. With Louisburg, the whole island of Cape Breton, and that of St. John's, fell under the power of the British.

7. General Abercrombie, at the head of sixteen thousand men, proceeded against Ticonderoga and Crown Point. He crossed Lake George, and debarking at its northern extremity, he attempted, with unskilful guides, to pass the three miles of dense woods, which lay between his army and Ticonderoga. As he approached that fort, a detachment of the French fell

4. What was the state of the public mind in regard to the war? What statesman was brought forward? What was his character?—5. What circular did he send to America? What was done in consequence? What was the number of the army? What expeditions were resolved on?—6. How did the attack on Louisburg succeed? What can you say of James Wolfe? 7. Describe the movements of General Abercrombie.

upon him, and an engagement ensued, in which the assailants lost three hundred men, and among others, the amiable Lord Howe.

P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VI.

8. Abercrombie, learning that reinforcements were daily expected by the French, without waiting for his artillery, made a brave but imprudent assault upon the fort, and was repulsed with the heavy loss of nearly two thousand, killed and wounded. He then retired to his former quarters, on the south side of Lake George.

The British lose 2,000.

9. Here he consented, at the solicitation of Colonel Bradstreet, to detach him with three thousand men, against Fort Frontenac. With these troops, who were mostly provincials, he marched to Oswego, embarked on Lake Ontario, and landed on the 25th of August, within a mile of the fort, and in two days forced the important fortress of Frontenac, to surrender. As this fort, afterwards named Kingston, contained the military stores which were intended for the Indians, and for the supply of the south-western troops, its destruction contributed to the success of the expedition against Fort du Quesne.

Aug. 27,  
Colonel  
Brad-  
street  
takes Ft.  
Fronte-  
nac.

10. To General Forbes, with eight thousand men, was assigned the capture of Fort du Quesne. He committed a great error. Against the expostulations and entreaties of Washington, he made a new road by Raystown, instead of taking that already made by Cumberland. The consequence of this was, that it was so late before the army arrived near du Quesne, that the men suffered incredible hardships. The fort was, however, reached, and found deserted. General Forbes died, on his return, in consequence of fatigue and exposure. The fort was repaired, and named Fort Pitt. The neighboring Indians were now glad to make peace.

General  
Forbes  
makes a  
new road  
by Ray's  
town.

Ft. du  
Quesne  
named  
Ft. Pitt.

7. What was the fate of Lord Howe? — 8. What was the result of Abercrombie's operations? — 9. What detachment was sent out? Trace and describe Bradstreet's route. What did he effect? — 10. What army had General Forbes? What was his destination? What error did he commit? What was the consequence? What can you say respecting the fort? What respecting General Forbes? What of the Indians?

## CHAPTER VII.

## The Campaign of 1759.

P.T. II.

P.D. III.

CH. VII.

1759.

Pitt's  
plan em-  
braces  
three  
objects.

1. THE successes of the preceding campaign emboldened Mr. Pitt, to form for this, the great design of dispossessing the French of their American territory. The campaign of 1759, had for its object, nothing less than the entire reduction of Canada. The army was divided into three parts. The first division, under Wolfe, was to make a direct attempt upon Quebec. The second, under Amherst, was ordered to take Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and then proceed north-erly; and the third, under Prideaux, consisting of provincials and Indians, was to reduce Niagara, then to go down the St. Lawrence, and, with the second detachment, conquer Montreal; then join, and aid Wolfe, at Quebec.

July 6.  
Prideaux  
killed in  
besieging  
Niagara.

2. Prideaux besieged Niagara on the 6th of July. He was killed by the bursting of a shell, and the command devolved upon Sir William Johnson, who took the fort with six hundred prisoners. All communication between the northern and southern possessions of the French was thus barred, and the quiet behaviour of the Indians secured.

Pitt  
sustains  
Wolfe.

3. Pitt had discerned the extraordinary qualities of Wolfe, while he was yet obscure, and to him he now confided the command against Quebec. His subordinate officers were carefully chosen. He was provided with a choice army of eight thousand men, and a heavy train of artillery.

Provides  
him a  
choice  
army.

June.  
He lands  
on the  
Isle of  
Orleans.

4. His army debarked, late in June, upon the Island of Orleans. Here Wolfe reconnoitered the position of his enemy, and saw the difficulties which surround-

---

CHAPTER VII.—1. What bold design had Mr. Pitt formed? How was the army divided, and what was each division expected to do? — 2. What was the fate of General Prideaux? Who effected his part of the great plan? — 3. What preparations did Pitt make to ensure Wolfe's success? — 4. Where did Wolfe's army debark?

ed him. Quebec rose before him, upon the north side of the St. Lawrence. Its upper town and strong fortifications, were situated on a rock, whose bold and steep front continued far westward, parallel with the river, and presented a wall, which it seemed impossible to scale. P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VII.

5. From the north-west came down the river St. Charles; entering the St. Lawrence just below the town, its banks high and uneven, and cut by deep ravines. Armed vessels were borne upon its waters, and floating batteries obstructed its entrance. A few miles below, the Montmorenci leapt down its cataract into the St. Lawrence. Strongly posted along the sloping bank of that majestic river, and between its two tributaries, the French army, commanded by Montcalm, displayed its formidable lines. Difficult-  
ties of his  
position.

6. Wolfe took possession of Point Levi, erected and opened heavy batteries, which swept the lower town; but the fortifications of Quebec remained uninjured. July 9.

7. The English general next landed his army below the Montmorenci; but Montcalm would not leave his entrenchments. Wolfe then crossed the stream, and attacked him in his camp. But he was obliged to retire, with the loss of four hundred of his men. He then recrossed the Montmorenci. He  
attacks  
Mont-  
calm  
near  
Montmo-  
renci.

8. Here he was informed that his expected succors were likely to fail. Amherst had found Ticonderoga and Crown Point vacated, and was preparing to attack the French forces, on the Isle aux Noix. Prideaux having lost his life, his plans were carried out by Sir William Johnson. But the enemy were in full force at Montreal; and from neither division of the British army, could the commander at Quebec, now hope for any assistance. French  
at Mon-  
treuil stop  
his suc-  
cors.

9. Wolfe was severely tried. His mind was unbroken, but his bodily health, for a time, failed.

---

4. What was the appearance of Quebec from this place? — 5. Where was the French army posted? — 6. From what place did Wolfe open batteries upon Quebec? With what effect? — 7. Where did Wolfe attack Montcalm? What was he forced to do? — 8. What intelligence did he now obtain? — 9. How did it affect him?

P.T. II. When, however, he was again able to mingle with the  
 P.D. III. army, every eye was raised to him with affection and  
 CH. VII. hope ; and he formed yet another, and a bolder plan.

1759. 10. Pursuant to this, Wolfe broke up his camp at  
 Montmorenci, and returned to Orleans. Then embarking with his army, he sailed up the river several miles higher than his intended point of debarkation. By this movement he deceived his enemy, and gained the advantage of the current and tide, to float his boats silently down to the foot of the rock, which he intended to scale.

Sept.  
 He re-  
 turns to  
 Orleans.

11. Wolfe was the first man who leaped on shore. The rapidity of the stream was hurrying along their boats, and some had already gone beyond the narrow landing-place. The shore was so shelving, that it was almost impossible to ascend ; and it was lined with French sentinels.

He gains  
 the plains  
 of Abra-  
 ham.  
 Sept. 13.

Battle  
 of the  
 Heights  
 of Abra-  
 ham.

12. Escaping these dangers at the water's edge, they proceeded to scale the precipice. The first party who reached the heights, secured a small battery, which crowned them ; and thus the remainder of the army ascended in safety ; and there, on this lofty plain, which commands one of the most magnificent prospects which nature has formed, the British army, drawn up in a highly advantageous position, were, in the morning, discovered by the French.

British  
 loss 600 ;  
 French  
 1,000 ;  
 Prison-  
 ers 1,000.

13. Montcalm, learning with surprise and deep regret, the advantage gained by his opponent, left his strong position, crossed the St. Charles, and intrepidly led on the attack. Being on the left of the French, he was opposed to Wolfe, who was on the right of the British. In the heat of the engagement both commanders were mortally wounded.

Death of  
 Wolfe.

14. The wound, with which Wolfe fell, was the third, which he had received in the battle. He was removed from the field ; but he watched it with intense anxiety, as faint with the loss of blood, he reclined his languid head upon the supporting arm of an officer.

---

10. What were his first movements in reference to his new plan ? — 11. Who was first on shore ? What difficulties were there met ? — 12. What others occurred in scaling the heights ? 13. What were the arrangements of Montcalm ?



A cry was heard, "they fly, they fly!" "Who fly!" he exclaimed. "The enemy," was the reply. "Then," said he, "I die content;" and expired. Not less heroic was the death of Montcalm. He rejoiced, when told that his wound was mortal; "For," said he, "I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec."

P'T. II.

P'D. III.  
CH. VII.Death of  
Mont-  
calm.

15. After the battle, the affairs of the English were conducted with great discretion by General Townshend; whereas, the French, appear to have yielded at once to their panic. The capitulation of Quebec was signed September 18 1759, five days after the battle.

1759.

Sept. 18.  
Quebec  
surrend-  
ers.

16. General Townshend returning to England, General Murray was left in command with a garrison of 5,000 men. The French army retired to Montreal; and M. de Levi, who had succeeded Montcalm, being, in the course of the winter, reinforced by Canadians and Indians, returned the following spring, with a force of 6,000 to Quebec. General Murray left the fortress, and the Heights of Abraham became the scene of another battle more bloody, though not equally important in its consequences with the first.

1760.

French  
attempt  
to regain  
Quebec.

17. The armies on each side sustained the loss of 1,000 men. The battle was not decisive, but the advantage was on the side of the French, who maintained their ground while the English retired within the fortress. Here they were closely invested until they received reinforcements, when M. de Levi, abandoning all thoughts of obtaining possession of Quebec, returned to Montreal, where Vaudreuil, the governor, assembled all the force of Canada.

2d, battle  
of the  
Heights  
of Abra-  
ham

18. In the mean time, General Amherst had made arrangements for assembling before this place all the British forces, from Lake Ontario, Lake Champlain, and Quebec. Here they fortunately arrived within two days of each other, and immediately invested the

Sep. 8  
Canada  
surren-  
ders.

14. How was it with Wolfe, when he was told of the flight of his enemy? How was it at the same time with Montcalm?—

15. Did the French give up Quebec immediately after the battle?—

16. What was the position of the contending armies during the winter?—What was done in the spring?—17. What was the loss in the second battle of the Heights of Abraham?—What military operations followed it?—18. How and when did the capture of Montreal take place?

P.T. II. place. Vaudreuil found the force too strong to be resisted and on the 8th of September, he surrendered  
 P.D. III.  
 CH. VIII. Montreal, Detroit, Mackinaw and all the French possessions in Canada.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### Wars with the Indians.

1760.

1. THE French had stirred up the Cherokees to war. Colonel Montgomery, at the head of an army, went to their country to chastise them. He was at first successful; but the Indians afterwards attacked him in a thicket near Etchoc, and so cut up his army, that he was obliged to return. The next year, an army under Colonel Grant, fought and conquered the Cherokees on the same spot. He pursued them to Etchoc, burned their huts and laid waste their country. The Indians, thus put in fear, ceased their midnight fires and murders, and made peace.

Chero-  
kees in  
arms.

Mont-  
gomery  
defeated.

Grant  
burns  
their  
towns.

2. Interesting events, closely connected with the cession of the French territory, were already in progress among the savages of the north-west. The missionaries, and traders of that nation had wisely won the hearts of the Indians. Said one of their orators. "when the French arrived, they came and kissed us. They called us their children, and we found them fathers." When the more haughty, and less attentive English were preparing to take possession of the western ports, Pontiac, the highly gifted chief of the Ottawas, who sought, like Philip, to regain the primitive independence of his race, made use of the attachment of the red men to the French, to unite them in a general conspiracy against their conquerors.

English  
less  
popular  
with the  
Indians  
than the  
French.

18. What other posts were surrendered ?

CHAPTER VIII.—1. Give an account of the war with the Cherokees.—2. What difference did the Indians find between the manners of the French and the English ? Who was Pontiac ?

3. Pontiac thought, that as the English had expelled the French, if the Indians could exterminate them before they were fully established, they would again be lords of the forest. The plan of Pontiac was not inferior in boldness, to that formed by Pitt for the final conquest of Canada. It was no less than a simultaneous attack upon all the British posts near the lakes. Pontiac, by his inventive genius, his eloquence, and his energy, had acquired such power over the north-western tribes, that all was arranged without discovery. On the 7th of July, 1763, nine of the British forts were actually surprised and captured by the Indians.

P'T. II.

P'D. III.  
CH. VIII.

1762.

Pontiac  
contrives  
a daring  
scheme

1763.

July 7.  
Nine of  
the Brit-  
ish posts  
captured.

4. Maumee and Mackinaw were among the places, which were thus taken, and the garrisons surprised and slaughtered. Detroit was attempted, but the stratagem of Pontiac was there betrayed, by a compassionate squaw. But for some time, he held the place in siege. His allies, however, grew weary of the war, and peace was concluded.

Pontiac's  
stratagem  
fails  
at Detroit.

5. During this period, pious Moravians having been expelled from Germany, came over to America, with the design of devoting themselves to the conversion of the native Indians. Their principal seat was in Pennsylvania. Their most important villages, were Bethlehem, and Nazareth. Their missionaries, male and female, went forth to the western part of Connecticut, to central New York, and through Pennsylvania, to Ohio. They lived among the savages, calling them their brethren and sisters. Thus they won their confidence, and several hundreds of them, manifested the transforming power of the gospel, by the change of their barbarous dispositions and practices, for such as were pious, kind, and gentle.

1746.

The Mo-  
ravians  
among  
the most  
faithful  
of mis-  
sionaries.

6. George III. succeeded to the throne of England

---

3. What were his views? What his plan of operation? How far did he succeed?—4. What two places are mentioned, which were taken by surprise? Where was Pontiac's plan revealed, by the compassion of a woman?—5. What was the object of the Moravians, in coming to this country? Where was their principal seat? Their villages? Where did their missionaries go? How did they treat the natives? How was it with those Indians who received the gospel?

**P.T. II.** soon after the capture of Quebec; and Mr. Pitt, resigning in October, 1761, the following year, the  
**P.D. III.** earl of Bute was made prime minister. The first ob-  
**CH. VIII.** ject of the new administration was to restore peace.  
 October, Scarcely was this accomplished, when Lord Bute  
**1761.** resigned his place, which was given to Mr. George  
 Pitt Grenville.  
 resigns.

Lord  
Bute.

**1763.**  
Peace of  
Paris.

7. The definitive treaty was signed at Paris, in February, 1763, by which England obtained from France all her possessions in America, east of the Mississippi, excepting the island of New Orleans; the navigation of that river being left open to both nations. From Spain she obtained Florida, in exchange for Havana, which had been captured during the war. France, at the same time, gave to Spain the territory of Louisiana.

---

6. Who became king of England? What can you say of Mr. Pitt? Who succeeded him? Who next was prime minister? — 7. When was the treaty of peace signed? What did England obtain from France? What from Spain? Which party received Louisiana?

---

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer.

Georgia was invaded by the Spaniards in 1742. Point out the place of this date. The Ohio Company was formed in 1750. Point to the place of this date. Governor Dinwiddie sent George Washington on an embassy to the French commandant in 1753. Point out the place of this year. Braddock was defeated in 1755. Show the place of this year.

In 1757 occurred the massacre at Fort William Henry. Point out the place of that date. In 1758, Louisburg, Fort Frontinac, and Fort Du Quesne, were taken from the French. Point out the place of that year. General Wolf took Quebec in 1759, and Canada surrendered in 1760. Point out the places of these dates. At what epoch does this period terminate? What is its date? Point to its place on the chronographer.

Let the teacher, after giving these exercises, go back into former periods, giving dates, and requiring the pupils to locate them.

ON account of the liability of young persons to become confused in the history of wars, concerning the side to which officers mentioned belong, we shall, in the principal wars, viz., the French, the Revolutionary, and the War, of 1812, give separate lists of the most distinguished officers of each belligerent.

## FRENCH WAR, FROM 1754 TO 1763.\*

<i>American Officers.</i>	<i>British Officers.</i>	<i>French Officers.</i>
GEORGE WASH- INGTON.	BRADDOCK, Monckton,	MARQUIS DU QUESNE,
Winslow,	Dunbar,	St. Pierre,
Sir William John- son,†	Monroe, WOLFE,	De Jumonville,
LYMAN,	ABERCROMBIE,	DIESKAU,
Shirley,	Lord HOWE,	MONTCALM,
Mercer,	AMHERST,	De Levi,
Bradstreet,	Prideaux,	Vaudreuil.
Forbes.	TOWNSEND, Murray.	

\* The British and Americans were in this war united, and both against the French.

† Sir William Johnson was born in Ireland, but came to America in early life.





# PART III.

FROM 1763 TO 1789.



Death of General Wolfe.

## PERIOD I.

FROM  
THE PEACE { **1763**, } OF PARIS,  
TO  
THE DECLARATION { **1776**. } OF INDEPENDENCE.

### CHAPTER I.

Causes of the Revolutionary War.

1. WE come now to trace the causes by which England lost her colonies, and America gained her independence. We should always remember that there is a GREAT FIRST CAUSE, even God, our Creator and Ruler. We should observe with thankfulness, by what steps, He led our forefathers, and how He made them a way across the deep, and gave them a place, wherein to plant a great nation. In His providence, the time was approaching, when the bonds were to be severed, which bound this country to the parent land.

P.T. III.  
P.D. I.  
CH. I.  
The  
Great  
First  
Cause.

CHAPTER I.—1. In tracing the causes of things, what should we always remember? What should we observe with thankfulness? What in reference to the Great First Cause, can we say of the separation of our country from England?

P<sup>T</sup>. III. 2. But the First Cause, uses, as His agents, the  
 P<sup>D</sup>. I. opinions and wills of men, which guide their conduct.  
 CH. I. The men in Great Britain, who took at this time, the  
 Second lead in the government, had haughty and wrong no-  
 causes. tions, of the power, which England had a right to exer-  
 cise over her distant colonies. They forgot, that the  
 American people were children of the same forefathers  
 with themselves, and heirs of the same political rights.  
 They held the Americans in comparative contempt, as  
 those whose labors and money, must, if *they* demanded,  
 be given to them; without, or against their owner's  
 consent.

Pride  
and fool-  
ishness  
on one  
side.

3. Had the rulers in England, undertaken to oppress  
 the people there in the same manner, *they* would have  
 rebelled; much more the Americans. They, as we  
 have seen, had grown up in their new countries, with  
 a deep sense of the rights of the people. Toil and  
 danger had made them strong and brave. When they  
 saw that the rulers in Great Britain, had determined on  
 making them submit to their unrighteous will, they  
 became alarmed. They resolved, that they would first  
 endeavor, by petitions, to bring them to a better mind.  
 If after that, they persisted in their oppressions, they  
 would refuse to submit; and if force was employed  
 against them, repel it by force; trusting, that a righteous  
 God, would aid their cause.

On the  
other,  
manly  
determi-  
nation.

Lord  
Gren-  
ville.

4. During the French war, the English wanted the  
 services of the Americans; and, besides, those were  
 in power, who opposed the high government party.  
 But the war was no sooner at an end, than this party  
 took the lead, with Lord Grenville at its head.

1764.

Proposes  
the  
stamp act

5. In 1764, Lord Grenville gave notice to the Ameri-  
 can agents in London, that it was his intention to 'draw  
 a revenue from the colonies, and that he should, in the  
 ensuing session of parliament, propose a duty on stamps.

2. What does the First Cause use as his agents, or as second  
 causes? What opinions were held by the leading men in Great  
 Britain? What did they forget? What did they hold concern-  
 ing the Americans? — 3. Of what had the Americans a deep  
 sense? What had made them strong and brave? When did  
 they become alarmed? What did they resolve? — 4. Why did  
 the British oppress the Americans less, during the French war?  
 What happened as soon as it was ended? — 5. What notice was  
 given by Lord Grenville?

6. The colonial agents in London informed their respective colonies of the intended system of taxation. Massachusetts instructed her agents, to deny the right of parliament to impose taxes upon those, who were not represented in the house of commons. The house of burgesses of Virginia appointed a committee to prepare an address to the king and parliament. The assembly of New York also sent petitions, which, in a spirit more bold and decided, than those from any other colony, asserted their own rights, and the limitations of British power.

P<sup>r</sup>T. III.  
P<sup>r</sup>D. I.  
CH. I.  
Mass.,  
Va., and  
N. Y.  
take bold  
ground.

7. Associations were formed in all the colonies to encourage home manufactures, and prohibit, as much as possible, the use of British goods. The tendency of this judicious measure, was to make the colonists less dependent, and, by operating injuriously on the British merchants, to make them a party against the ministry.

Societies  
injure  
the Brit-  
ish trade.

8. Notwithstanding the opposition, which, in truth, was not unexpected, Lord Grenville, introduced into the British parliament, his plan for taxing America, to commence with duties on stamps. In the house of commons, the project, though ably supported, met with ardent and animated opposition.

1765  
Stamp  
Act  
opposed.

9. "Children planted by your care?" exclaimed Colonel Barre, in answer to one who spoke against the Americans. "No! Your oppressions planted them in America! They fled from your tyranny to an uncultivated land, where they were exposed to all the hardships to which human nature is liable.

Colonel  
Barre's  
defense  
of the  
Ameri-  
cans.

10. They nourished by your indulgence? No! They grew by your neglect! When you began to care about them, that care was exercised in sending persons to rule over them, whose character and conduct has caused the blood of these sons of liberty to recoil within them. They protected by your arms? They have nobly taken up arms in your defense!

Recounts  
their ser-  
vices and  
suffer-  
ings.

---

6. What was done by Massachusetts, on being informed of the intention of Lord Grenville? What by Virginia? What by New York?—7. What were formed? What was the tendency of the measure?—8. How, in the first place, was Lord Grenville's project received?—9. Repeat a part of Col. Barre's speech.—10. Relate the succeeding part.



P'T. III. The people of America are loyal, but a people jealous of their liberties, and they will vindicate them."

P'D. I.  
CH. I.

11. Neither the eloquence of Colonel Barre and  
1765. others, nor the remonstrances of the colonists, could prevent the passage of the stamp act. Of three hundred, who voted in the house of commons, only fifty were against it; in the house of lords there was not a single dissenting voice; and the royal assent was readily obtained.

March  
22.  
Stamp  
Act  
passed.

All law  
papers  
must be  
stamped.

12. By this act, no written instrument could be legal, unless the paper was stamped on which it was drawn; and this stamped paper was to be purchased, at an exorbitant price, of the agents of the British government.

Courts of  
admi-  
rality.

Trial by  
Jury sus-  
pended.

13. Provision was made for the recovery of penalties for the breach of this act, as of all others relating to trade and revenue, in any admiralty, or king's marine court, throughout the colonies. These courts proceeded in trials, without the intervention of a jury. This act, suspending trial by jury, and making the colonists liable to be called to trial, for real or supposed offences, to distant provinces, was highly displeasing to the Americans.

Act for  
quar-  
tering  
troops.

14. Anticipating opposition to these measures, parliament passed laws for sending troops to America, and obliging the inhabitants of those colonies to which they should be sent, to furnish them with quarters, and all necessary supplies.

Patrick  
Henry's  
resolu-  
tions.

15. Great was the grief and indignation caused in America by the news of the stamp-act. The Virginia legislature, called the house of burgesses, was in session. The eloquent PATRICK HENRY introduced the five celebrated resolutions, which constituted the first public opposition to the odious act. The last of these declared in

---

11. Did the Stamp Act pass? At what time? With what majority? — 12. What was this stamped paper to be used for? Of whom was it to be bought? At what kind of price? — 13. If the law was violated, before what courts were offenders to be tried? How did these courts proceed in trials? Why were these laws offensive to the people? — 14. What other act offensive to them was passed? — 15. What legislature was in session when news of the Stamp Act arrived? What was the first public opposition to the Stamp Act?



express terms that they were not bound to obey any law imposing taxes, unless made by their representatives.

P'T. III.  
P'D. I.  
CH. II.

## CHAPTER II.

Congress at New York.—Repeal of the Stamp Act.

1. BEFORE the proceedings in Virginia had become known in Massachusetts, the general court of that colony had assembled, and adopted measures to produce a combined opposition to the oppressive measures of parliament. Letters were addressed to the assemblies of the other colonies, proposing that a congress, composed of deputies from each, should meet to consult on their common interest. Delegates were accordingly elected from Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, and South Carolina.

Delegates from nine colonies.

2. On the first Tuesday in October, the delegates met at New York. They drew up a declaration, in which they asserted that the colonists were entitled to all the rights and privileges of natural born subjects of Great Britain; especially of an exclusive right to tax themselves, and the privilege of trial by jury; and that the late acts of parliament had a manifest tendency to subvert these rights and liberties. The congress then prepared petitions to the king, and to both houses of parliament.

1765  
Oct. 7.  
First continental congress.

Petition to the king and parliament.

3. As the day approached on which the stamp act was to take effect, the popular feeling against it increased. This law was so framed, that the evil intended as a penalty for disobedience, was no less than the suspension of the whole machinery of the social order,

Odious features of the stamp act

CHAPTER II.—1. What was proposed in the legislature of Massachusetts? What letters sent? What colonies elected delegates?—2. When and where did the first continental congress meet? What account can you give of the "Bill of Rights," or the declaration drawn up? What petitions did the congress prepare?—3. What evils did the British intend to bring upon the country, if the people refused to buy the stamped paper?

**P.T. III.** and the creation of a state of anarchy. Neither trade  
**P.D. I.** nor navigation could proceed; no contract could be  
**CH. II.** legally made; no process against an offender could be  
 instituted; no apprentice could be indented; no student could receive a diploma, nor even could the estates of the dead be legally settled, until the stamp duty was paid.

August.  
 Impossible for  
 any officer to  
 distribute stamps.

4. Measures were taken to make the situation of all concerned in its collection, so unpleasant, that no one might be found hardy enough to engage as an officer. At Boston, the populace broke the windows, and destroyed the furniture of Andrew Oliver, the proposed distributor of stamps, who then formally pledged himself to have no concern in the execution of the obnoxious statute. In New Haven, Mr. Ingersoll, was obliged to declare the same resolution, not to become a distributor. Similar scenes occurred in other places. Governor Hutchinson, of Boston, suffered heavy losses by the violence of the mob.

A method to  
 prevent their use.

5. The first of November, the day on which the act was to take effect, was ushered in by the tolling of bells, as for a funeral procession, and signs of mourning and sorrow appeared in all the colonies. The proceedings of the courts of justice were suspended, in order that no stamps might be used; and those engaged in disputes were earnestly and effectually exhorted, by the leading men, to terminate them by reference.

1766.  
 January  
 Parliament's  
 declaration.

6. The authorities in England, were, however, at a loss how to proceed; for they saw that measures must be taken, either to repeal the obnoxious statute, or oblige the Americans to submit to it, by force of arms. In January, 1766, the petitions of congress, were laid before the house of commons. After their examination, a resolution was introduced by General Conway, now in the ministry declaring that parliament "had full power to bind the colonies, and people of America,

---

4. What measures were taken to prevent the law from going into operation? — 5. How was the day observed on which it was to take effect? What was done in respect to courts and disputes? — 6. What did the British authorities now perceive? What resolution was adopted?

in all cases whatsoever," which, after an animated debate, was adopted. P.T. III.  
—  
P'D. I.  
CH. II.

7. The next day, the new ministry, bent on a repeal of the stamp act, examined Dr. Franklin before the house of commons. He gave it as his opinion, that the acts of parliament for taxing America, had alienated the affections of the people from the mother country, and that they would never submit to the stamp duty, unless compelled. Feb. 10.  
Dr.  
Franklin  
exam-  
ined.

8. The resolution to repeal that act, was opposed by Lord Grenville and his adherents, who were answered by Mr. Pitt. That great statesman maintained, that taxation was no part of the governing or legislative power, which parliament had a right to exert over the colonies; and concluded with a motion, "that the stamp act be repealed, totally, absolutely, and immediately." Repeal  
advocated by  
Mr. Pitt.

9. The bill for its repeal, at length passed the commons, and was sent to the house of lords, where it met with much opposition. But the cause of the colonies was ably advocated by Lord Camden. "Taxation and representation," he said, "are inseparable—it is an eternal law of nature: for whatever is a man's own, is absolutely his own; no man has a right to take it from him without his consent. Whoever attempts to do it, attempts an injury; whoever does it, commits a robbery." The bill for repeal at length passed the house of lords, but with it was another, in which the declaration was repeated, that "parliament had a right to bind the colonies *in all cases whatsoever*." Passes  
the commons;  
  
Lord  
Camden.  
  
  
March  
18,  
Passes  
the house  
of lords.

---

7. Who was examined before the house of commons? What opinion did he give? — 8. Who opposed the repeal of the Stamp Act? Who advocated it? What motion did he make? — 9. Was the repeal opposed in the house of lords? Who advocated it? On what principle? What was finally done in the house of lords?

## CHAPTER III.

Second attempt to tax America.—Opposition.

P<sup>T</sup>. III.

1. ALTHOUGH the repeal of the Stamp Act gave joy to the colonists, yet, while a principle was at the same time asserted, upon which any future ministry, with the sanction of parliamentary authority, might oppress them, they continued a jealous watch over the British government.

P<sup>D</sup>. I.  
CH. III.

1766.

Colonies  
jealous  
and  
watch-  
ful.

2. General Conway recommended to the colonies to make compensation to those who had suffered in attempting to enforce the Stamp Act. This referred particularly to the Boston affair. The assembly of Massachusetts at first refused to make any compensation to the sufferers ; but they finally consented, though in a manner highly displeasing to the British government ; for the same act which made the appropriation for the damage, gave a pardon to those by whom it was done.

March  
31.

Mass.  
pays for  
the riot,  
but par-  
dons the  
rioters.

3. In July, another change took place in the British ministry, and a cabinet was formed under the direction of Mr. Pitt, now Earl of Chatham. The proceedings of the Americans had given great offense to the British ; and they were condemned by many who had heretofore espoused their cause.

July.  
Pitt in  
power.

4. In May, 1767, Charles Townshend, then chancellor of the exchequer, influenced by Lord Grenville, brought into parliament a second plan for taxing America, by imposing duties on all tea, glass, paper, and painter's colors, which should be imported into the colonies. This bill passed both houses of parliament without much opposition. Another was passed, appointing the officers of the navy, as custom-house officers, to enforce the acts of trade and navigation.

1767.

Parlia-  
ment im-  
pose new  
taxes.

---

CHAPTER III.—1. How did the news from England affect the colonies ? — 2. What did General Conway recommend ? What was done in Massachusetts ? — 3. What change occurred in the British ministry ? — 4. What new plan was proposed for taxing America ? What was done in parliament in reference to it ? What other act passed ?

5. These acts revived the same feelings which the Stamp Act had produced. In Massachusetts, the assembly sent a petition to the king. They also addressed circulars to the other colonial assemblies, entreating their co-operation, in obtaining the redress of their grievances.

P'T. III.  
P'D. I.  
CH. III.  
1768.

6. The British ministry viewed this measure as an attempt to convene another congress; and they had always dreaded the effects of voluntary colonial union, independent of the crown. Governor Bernard required the assembly to rescind the vote by which the circulars were sent to the other colonies. The assembly refused to rescind the vote, and the governor dissolved it. But, instead of intimidating, this measure did but exasperate the people.

Bernard  
dissolves  
the as-  
sembly.

7. In June, the custom-house officers seized a sloop belonging to John Hancock, a merchant of eminence, and a patriot much beloved by the people of Boston. They assembled in crowds, insulted and beat the officers, and compelled them to leave the town.

June 10.  
Seizure  
of Han-  
cock's  
sloop.

8. The assembly of Massachusetts had not convened, since its dissolution by Governor Bernard. A report was circulated, that troops were ordered to march into Boston. A town meeting was called, and the governor was earnestly entreated to convoke the assembly. His reply was "that he could not call another assembly this year, without further commands from the king." A convention of the people was then proposed, and accordingly held, on the 22d of September. The members petitioned the governor, that an assembly might be convened; but he refused, and called them rebels. They transmitted to the king a respectful account of their proceedings, and dissolved, after a session of five days.

The  
governor  
refuses to  
call an  
assem-  
bly.

Sept. 22.  
A con-  
vention.

9. Orders were given to General Gage, the com-

---

5. What measures were taken in Massachusetts? — 6. What was the view of the British concerning the Union? What did Governor Bernard require? What ground was taken by the assembly? What was the consequence? — 7. Where, and on what occasion, were the custom-house officers insulted and beaten? — 8. What did a town meeting in Boston request of the governor? What was his reply? What was then proposed and done?



P.T. III. mander-in-chief of the British troops in the colonies,  
 P.D. I. to station a force in Boston, to overawe the citizens,  
 CH. III. and protect the custom-house officers in the discharge  
 Sept. 28. of their duty. Two regiments were accordingly ordered  
 Two re- from Halifax, and escorted by seven armed ves-  
 giments sels, they arrived at Boston on the 28th of September.  
 come The fleet took a station which commanded the town,  
 from and the troops marched into Boston. The select men  
 Halifax refusing to provide them with quarters, the governor  
 to Bos- commanded the state house to be opened for their re-  
 ton, ception. Though outward violence was restrained by  
 this measure, yet hostile dispositions were increased.

1769.  
 Threat-  
 ening at-  
 titude of  
 Great  
 Britain.

10. The proceedings in Massachusetts were declared by the British parliament, to be "illegal, unconstitutional, and derogatory to the rights of the crown and to parliament." Both houses, in a joint address to the king, recommended vigorous measures, and besought him to direct the governor of Massachusetts Bay, to make strict inquiries, as to all treasons committed in that province since the year 1767, in order that the persons most active in committing them, might be sent to England for trial.

Met  
 with  
 spirit in  
 Virgi-  
 nia.

The bur-  
 gesses  
 make  
 them-  
 selves  
 indepen-  
 dent of  
 non-im-  
 portation

10. The house of burgesses in Virginia met a few days after this address was received in the colonies. They passed resolutions, in which they boldly denied the right of the king to remove an offender out of the colony for trial. When the intelligence of these proceedings reached the governor, he suddenly dissolved the assembly. The members assembled at a private house; elected their speaker, Peyton Randolph, moderator, and proceeded to pass some decided resolutions against importing British goods. These were introduced by Colonel Washington, who had been a member of the house since his resignation. The example was extensively followed.

11. The assembly of Massachusetts convened. They refused to proceed with business while the state house

---

9. What orders were given to General Gage? What forces were brought to Boston, and where placed? — 10. What news was received from England? What was done by the legislature of Virginia? Had Washington been in any public capacity since his resignation? What was now done by him?

was surrounded by an armed force. The governor would not remove it, but adjourned them to Cambridge. Considering the establishment of a standing army in time of peace, as an invasion of their natural rights, they refused to make any of the appropriations of money which the governor proposed, and he again prorogued them. In August, Governor Bernard was recalled, and the government left in the hands of lieutenant governor Hutchinson.

P'T. III.  
P'D. I.  
CH. III.  
**1770.**  
May.  
Assembly of  
Mass. ad-  
journed to Cam-  
bridge.

12. Some of the inhabitants of Boston insulted the military, while under arms; and an affray took place, in which four persons were killed. The bells were instantly rung; the people rushed from the country to the aid of the citizens; and the soldiers were obliged to retire to Castle William, in order to avoid the fury of the enraged multitude. The soldiers were tried and acquitted.

March 5.  
Affray  
with the  
British  
troops.

13. In England Lord North was appointed to the ministry. He introduced a bill into parliament, which passed on the 12th of April, removing the duties which had been laid in 1767, excepting those on tea. But they still claimed the *right* of taxing the colonies. In Rhode Island the people rose and destroyed the Gaspee, an armed British schooner, which had been stationed in that colony, for the purpose of enforcing the acts of trade.

**1771.**  
January.  
Lord  
North  
tempo-  
rizes.

**1772.**  
June.  
The  
Gaspee  
destroyed.

11. Were the British able, by their armed force, to frighten the assembly of Massachusetts, to make laws to please them? Why did they refuse to make appropriations of money? What change occurred respecting governors? — 12. Give some account of the affray with the military? — 13. What now occurred in England? Did the Americans refuse to obey the British, to save the money to be paid in these taxes, or to maintain their rights? What vessel was destroyed?

## CHAPTER IV.

Seizure of Tea.—Boston Port Bill.—Arrival of British Troops

**P.T. III.** 1. THE non-importation agreements which had been  
**P.D. I.** made and rigidly observed, in respect to the article of  
**CH. IV.** tea, now began to affect the commercial interest of  
**1773.** Great Britain. Parliament passed an act, allowing the  
**May.** East India Company to export to America, its teas,  
**Law** free of all duties in England; thus enabling them to  
**made in** reduce its price in the colonies. Tea was accordingly  
**England** shipped from England in large quantities. Resolutions  
**respect-** were extensively adopted, that the tea should not be  
**ing tea.** received on shore, but sent back to England.

**Bostoni-** 2. In Boston, several men disguised as Indians, went  
**aus put** on board the ships during the night, and threw their  
**342** cargoes into the water. Three hundred and forty-two  
**chests** chests of tea were thus broken open, and their con-  
**into the** tents thrown overboard.  
**sea.**

**1774.** 3. The parliament of England, in order to punish  
**Parlia-** the inhabitants of Boston, and oblige them to restore  
**ment** the value of the tea, passed a bill in March, 1774,  
**shuts the** "interdicting all commercial intercourse with the port  
**port of** of Boston, and prohibiting the landing and shipping  
**Boston.** of any goods at that place," until these ends should  
 be accomplished.

**Expo-** 4. General Gage was made governor of Massachu-  
**sure of** setts, in the place of Hutchinson. He had been re-  
**Hutchin-** moved from his office, in consequence of unpopularity  
**son's let-** occasioned by the exposure of letters, which had been  
**ters.** written by him, during the years 1767 and 1768, to  
 the leading men of Great Britain. These had tended  
 greatly to increase the prejudice of parliament against  
 the colonies.

---

CHAPTER IV.—1. What agreements had been made in regard to tea? Were they observed? What did they affect? What act did parliament pass? What was accordingly sent from England? What resolutions adopted? — 2. What daring exploit was performed at Boston? — 3. What was done by the British to retaliate? — 4. What change was made in Massachusetts?

5. On the arrival of the port bill in Boston, a meeting of the inhabitants was held, who declared that the "impolicy, injustice, and inhumanity of the act exceeded their powers of expression!" The assembly convened at this place, but was removed by the governor to Salem. It was here resolved, that a congress, composed of delegates from all the colonies, ought to be elected, to take their affairs into the most serious consideration. They nominated five eminent men, as their representatives to such a congress; and directed the speaker of the house to inform the other colonies of their resolution.

P<sup>R</sup>T. III.P<sup>R</sup>D. I.  
CH. IV.May 10.  
Boston  
port bill  
causes  
excite-  
ment.A gene-  
ral con-  
gress.

6. The governor sent an officer to dissolve the assembly, in the king's name, but as the members would not permit him to enter the hall, he read the order aloud on the staircase; but it was not obeyed until the members had finished their most important business.

Assem-  
bly diso-  
beyes the  
royal au-  
thority.

7. Governor Gage had believed that the advantages arising to the trade of Salem, from shutting up the port of Boston, would render its inhabitants more favorable to the royal government; but the people of that town declared, "that nature, in forming their harbor, had prevented their becoming rivals in trade; and that even if it were otherwise, they should regard themselves lost to every idea of justice, and all feelings of humanity, could they indulge one thought of raising their fortunes upon the ruins of their countrymen."

Noble  
conduct  
of the  
people of  
Salem.

8. The cause of the people of Boston was espoused by all the colonies, and their wants were supplied by contributions. The people of Marblehead generously offered them the use of their harbor, their wharves, and warehouses.

The Bos-  
tonians  
aided by  
the  
whole  
country.

9. When, in May, 1774, the house of burgesses in Virginia, received the news of the Boston port bill, they proclaimed a fast. Lord Dunmore, the governor,

5. What was done on the arrival of the port bill? What important resolution was passed at Salem; and what consequent measures taken? — 6. In what manner did the assembly treat the royal authority? — 7. What generous part did the inhabitants of Salem take? — 8. What those of Marblehead? — 9. What was done by the Virginians respecting the troubles in Boston?

P'T. III. at once prorogued them. They, however, formed an  
 P'D. I. association, and voted to recommend to the colonies  
 CH. V. a general congress. The first of June, the day on  
 which the port bill was to take effect, was devoutly  
 The Vir- observed, in Virginia, as a day of fasting, humiliation,  
 ginians keep a fast. and prayer, to implore that God would avert the evils  
 which threatened them, and "give them one heart,  
 and one mind, firmly to oppose, by all just and proper  
 means, every injury to the American rights."

## CHAPTER V.

### Congress at Philadelphia.

1774. 1. On the 4th of September, 1774, the proposed  
 Sept. 4. congress convened at Philadelphia. In this body, the  
 First most august and important which had ever assembled  
 continen- upon the American shores, all the colonies, except  
 tal con- Georgia, were represented; and all parties, struck with  
 gress. its array of splendid talents and stern patriotism, looked  
 12 colo- forward to results with deep interest and great expecta-  
 nies rep- tioned.

2. Their first measure was to choose, by a unani-  
 mous vote, Peyton Randolph, Esq., of Virginia, as  
 president. They decided, that each colony should  
 have one vote. They chose a committee of two from  
 each province, to draw up a "*Bill of Rights*." They  
 approved of the conduct of Massachusetts, and ex-  
 horted all to perseverance in the cause of freedom.  
 They addressed a letter to General Gage, entreating  
 him to desist from military operations; lest a differ-  
 ence, altogether irreconcilable, should arise between  
 the colonies and the parent state.

9. What petition did they offer to the Almighty?

CHAPTER V.—1. When and where did the continental congress first convene? How many colonies were represented? —  
 2. What was their first measure? What did they decide? Whom choose? What approve? What exhort? What entreat?



3. By a non-importation compact, they agreed and associated for themselves and their constituents, "under the sacred ties of virtue, honor, and love of liberty," not to import, or use any British goods, after the first of December, 1774. They agreed to encourage agriculture, arts, and manufactures in America. Committees were to be appointed in every place, to see that this agreement was observed.

P.T. III.

P.D. I  
CH. V

1774.

Sanction  
non im-  
portation  
acts.

4. Finally, they determined to continue the congressional union, until the repeal by parliament, of oppressive duties—of the laws restricting their rights of trial by jury, and of the acts, against the people of Massachusetts.

Resolve  
to con-  
tinue the  
colonial  
union.

5. In the several addresses which were drawn up by their committees and accepted, congress fully met the high expectations which were entertained of that body of men, of whom Lord Chatham declared, "that, though he had studied and admired the free states of antiquity, the master spirits of the world, yet, for solidity of reasoning, force of sagacity, and wisdom of conclusion, no body of men could stand in preference to this congress."

High  
charac-  
ter of a  
congress.

6. The petition to the king entreated him, in language the most respectful and affectionate, to restore their violated rights. Their grievances, they said, were the more intolerable, as they were born heirs of freedom, and had enjoyed it under the auspices of his royal ancestors. "The apprehension," say they, "of being degraded into a state of servitude, from the pre-eminent rank of English freemen, while our minds retain the strongest love of liberty, and clearly foresee the miseries preparing for us and our posterity, excites emotions in our breasts which we cannot describe."

They  
make an  
able ap-  
peal to  
the king.

7. They express a hope, that the royal indignation will fall on those designing and dangerous men, who, by their misrepresentations of his American subjects, had, at length, compelled them, by the force of accu-

This pe-  
tition  
draught-  
ed by  
Mr.  
Dickens  
son.

3. What was agreed in the non-importation compact? — 4. They determined to continue the union till the repeal of what acts? — 5. What was Lord Chatham's opinion of this congress? — 6. Give some account of their petition to the king? — 7. With what language did this petition close?

P.T. III. mulated injuries, too severe to be longer borne, thus  
 P.D. I. to disturb his majesty's repose; a conduct extorted  
 CH. VI. "from those" who would much more willingly bleed  
 in his service.

A rea-  
 sonable  
 appeal.  
 8. Not less moving was the appeal to their fellow-  
 subjects of England. "Can any reason," they ask, "be  
 given, why English subjects, who live three thousand  
 miles from the royal palace, should enjoy less liberty,  
 than those who are three hundred miles from it?"

Memo-  
 rial to  
 their  
 consti-  
 tuents.  
 9. In the memorial to their constituents, they pre-  
 sented an account of the oppressive measures of par-  
 liament since 1763. They applaud the spirit which  
 they had shown in defense of their rights, and en-  
 courage them to persevere, and be prepared for all  
 contingencies; hinting that those might occur, which  
 1774. would put their constancy severely to the test.

Congress  
 rise,  
 Oct. 6.  
 Their  
 proceed-  
 ings ap-  
 proved.  
 10. The congress rose on the 6th of October. Al-  
 though their powers were merely advisory, yet their  
 decisions received the approbation of the colonial as-  
 semblies, and carried with them all the force of laws.

## CHAPTER VI.

War approaches.—Massachusetts.—British Parliament.

Whigs  
 and  
 Tories.  
 1. THERE were however, a few persons, who fa-  
 voured the cause of Great Britain. They were called  
 Tories, and were regarded as traitors by the great body  
 of the people; who, in opposition to Tories, were called  
 Whigs. These party names were derived from England.

Military  
 stores  
 seized.  
 2. The magazines of gunpowder and other military  
 stores, at Charlestown and Cambridge, were seized by

8. What question did they put to their fellow-subjects in Eng-  
 land? — 9. What was the subject of their memorial to their  
 constituents? — 10. When did Congress rise? What were their  
 powers? What weight had their decisions?

CHAPTER VI.—1. What description of persons favoured the  
 cause of Great Britain? — 2. What was done by the assembly  
 of Massachusetts?

order of Gen. Gage. An assembly was called in Massachusetts; but its sittings were countermanded by the governor. The representatives then met at Salem, resolved themselves into a "provincial congress," adjourned to Concord, and chose John Hancock their president.

P'T. III.

P'D I.  
CH. VI.October.  
The assembly  
of Mass.  
a provincial  
congress.

3. They then resolved, that, for the defense of the province, a number of the inhabitants should be enlisted, to stand ready to march at a minute's warning. In November, they sent persons to New Hampshire, Rhode Island, and Connecticut, to request their co-operation, in order to raise an army of 20,000 men, to act in any emergency.

Minute  
men.

4. The British parliament convened. The king, in his speech, informed the members, that a most daring resistance to the laws still prevailed in Massachusetts, which was encouraged by unlawful combinations in the other colonies; and, finally, he expressed his firm determination to withstand any attempt to weaken or impair the royal authority; and in these sentiments the two houses expressed, in their answer, a decided concurrence.

1774.  
Nov. 20.  
The king  
and parliament  
inflexible.

5. When the British ministry brought the American papers before parliament, Lord Chatham rose. "The way," he said, "must be immediately opened for reconciliation. It will soon be too late. They say, you have no right to tax them, without their consent. They say truly. Representation and taxation must go together—they are inseparable. This wise people speak out. They do not hold the language of slaves. They do not ask you to repeal your laws, as a favor; they claim it as a right. They tell you, they will not submit to them; and I tell you, the acts must be repealed, and you must go through the work; you must declare you have no right to tax—then they may trust you."

Lord  
Chatham  
in favour  
of America.Measures  
proposed  
by Chatham  
rejected.

6. But his plan for conciliatory measures, was negatived by a large majority. Petitions from the mer-

---

3. What did they resolve? To what states send? — 4. What was the tone of the king's speech? What of parliament's reply? — 5. Give some account of Lord Chatham's speech?

**P'T. III.** chants of London, and other commercial places, in  
**P'D. I.** favor of America, were referred, not to the regular  
**CH. VI.** committee, but to one, called by the friends of the  
 colonies, "the committee of oblivion." Dr. Franklin,  
 and the other colonial agents were refused a hearing  
 before parliament, on the plea, that they were ap-  
 pointed by an illegal assembly; and thus was put to  
 silence, the voice of three millions of people, yet in  
 the attitude of humble suppliants.

Colonies  
 refused a  
 hearing.

Blind-  
 ness of  
 the  
 rulers.

7. Both houses of parliament concurred, by a large majority, in an address to the king, in which they declare, "that the Americans had long wished to become independent, and only waited for ability and opportunity, to accomplish their design. To prevent this," they said, "and to crush the monster in its birth, was the duty of every Englishman; and that this must be done, at any price, and at every hazard."

**1775.**  
 Feb. 10.  
 Parlia-  
 ment at-  
 tempt to  
 divide  
 the  
 colonies.

8. On the 10th of February, a bill was passed, by which the colonies of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New Hampshire, and Rhode Island, were restricted in their trade to Great Britain and its West India possessions, and were also prohibited from fishing on the banks of Newfoundland. The same restrictions were soon after extended to all the colonies, excepting New York and North Carolina. It was expected that these prohibitions would prove particularly distressing to the inhabitants of New England, as an idea prevailed, that they depended on the fisheries for their subsistence, and must, if deprived of them, be starved into obedience.

---

6. Did his speech produce any effect? What petitions were offered? How treated? Who was refused a hearing? What may be said of all this? — 7. What address was made by parliament? — 8. What acts did they pass? What was expected from these acts?

## CHAPTER VII.

The War begins by the Battle of Lexington.

1. A SECOND provincial congress having assembled P'T. III.  
P'D. I.  
CH. VII. in Massachusetts, had ordered military stores to be collected, and encouraged the militia and minute-men to improve themselves in the use of arms.

2. General Gage having learned that a number of field pieces were collected at Salem, despatched a party of soldiers, to take possession of them, in the name of the king. The people of Salem assembled in great numbers, and, by pulling up a drawbridge, prevented their entering the town, and thus defeated their object. 1775.  
Feb. 26.  
Attempt  
to  
destroy  
stores at  
Salem.

3. A large quantity of ammunition and stores was also deposited at Concord, about twenty miles from Boston. These General Gage resolved to seize, or destroy; and, with that view, he sent a detachment of 800 men, under the command of Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn. April 18.  
800 men  
sent to  
Concord.

4. When the British troops arrived at Lexington, within five miles of Concord, the militia of the place were drawn up. The advanced body of the regulars approached within musket shot, when Major Pitcairn, riding forward, exclaimed, "Disperse, you rebels!—throw down your arms and disperse." Not being obeyed, he discharged his pistol, and ordered his men to fire. They fired, and killed eight men. The militia dispersed, but the firing continued. The detachment then proceeded to Concord, and destroyed or took possession of a part of the stores. April 18.  
Battle of  
Lexington.

5. They then began their retreat. The colonists pressed upon them on all sides. They went to Lexington, where they met Lord Percy, with a reinforce- Retreat  
of the  
British

CHAPTER VII.—1. What did the legislature of Massachusetts order to be collected? — 2. Where and for what did Gen. Gage send out a party of soldiers? Did they succeed? — 3. To what other place did he send a detachment? For what purpose? — 4. How did the battle of Lexington commence? Did the British take the stores? — 5. Describe their retreat?



P'T. III. ment of 900 men. They however, continued their  
 P'D. I. retreat: but from every place of concealment—a stone  
 CH. VII. fence, a cluster of bushes, or a barn, the concealed  
 British provincials poured upon them a destructive fire. At  
 loss, 273. sunset, the regulars, almost overcome with fatigue,  
 Ameri- passed Charlestown Neck, and found, on Bunker's Hill,  
 can loss, 88. a resting place for the night; and the next morning,  
 under the protection of a man of war, they entered  
 Boston.

6. Blood had now flowed, and no language can  
 Great portray the feelings which the event excited. Couriers  
 excitement. were dispatched in every direction, who gave, as they  
 rode at full speed, their news, to be taken up and  
 Special carried in like manner to other places; and thus, in an  
 couriers increasing circle, it spread like electric fluid throughout  
 spread the news. the land. The messenger, if he arrived on Sunday, at  
 once entered the church, and proclaimed to the breath-  
 less assembly—war has begun! Every where the cry  
 was repeated, “war has begun!” and the universal re-  
 sponse was, “to arms, then—liberty or death!”

7. The legislatures of the several colonies convened,  
 Army appointed officers, and gave orders to raise troops.  
 collected at Every where, fathers were leaving their children, and  
 Boston. Mothers sending their sons to the field; and an army  
 of 20,000 was soon collected in the neighborhood of  
 Boston.

8. General Gage was now so closely besieged in  
 British Boston, that although the British had the command  
 besieged in of the sea, his provisions became scarce.

9. To gain possession of Ticonderoga and Crown  
 Plans for Point, individuals in Connecticut, borrowed of the le-  
 taking gislature of that colony, eighteen hundred dollars.  
 Ticonde- They then proceeded to Bennington to secure the co-  
 roga and operation of “the Green Mountain Boys.”  
 Crown Point.

10. This was an appellation given to the hardy  
 Green freemen who had settled in that vicinity by the au-  
 Moun- thority of New Hampshire, and who had manifested  
 tain Boys.

---

6. Describe the state of the public mind, and the manner of  
 spreading the news? — 7. What was done in the several states?  
 — 8. What was the situation of Gen. Gage? — 9. What enter-  
 prize was set on foot in Connecticut? What steps taken? — 10  
 Who were the Green Mountain Boys?

their resolution in defense of their lands from the sheriffs of New York; that state claiming over them a jurisdiction, which they would not allow. At the head of this determined band, were Colonels Ethan Allen, and Seth Warner. They gladly engaged in the enterprise. Troops were soon raised, and the command was entrusted to Allen.

P.T. III  
P.D. I.  
CH. VII.  
Ethan  
Allen  
and  
Seth  
Warner.

11. In the meantime, Benedict Arnold, with the intrepid boldness of his character, had, in Boston, formed and matured the same design, and was on the march to execute it, when he was surprised to find that he had been anticipated. Becoming second in command to Allen, they marched together at the head of three hundred men from Castleton, and reached Ticonderoga on the 10th of May. They surprised and captured that fortress, and took peaceable possession of Crown Point.

Benedict  
Arnold.

1775.  
May 10  
They  
capture  
Ticon-  
deroga  
and  
Crown  
Point.

12. Arnold, having manned and armed a small schooner found in South Bay, captured a sloop-of-war lying at St. Johns. The pass of Skeensborough, now Whitehall, was seized at the same time, by a detachment of volunteers from Connecticut. One hundred pieces of cannon, and other munitions of war were obtained in this fortunate expedition.

Arnold  
seizes a  
sloop-of-  
war.

13. The continental congress again assembled at Philadelphia on the 10th of May, and Mr. Hancock was chosen President. Bills of credit to the amount of three millions of dollars were issued for defraying the expenses of the war; and the faith of the "Twelve United Colonies" pledged for their redemption.

May 10.  
Congress  
issue  
paper  
mouney.

14. Lord Dunmore, the Governor of Virginia, showed his distrust of the people by seizing and conveying to an armed vessel in James' River, some powder belonging to the colony. Patrick Henry at-

Lord  
Dunmore  
and  
other  
govern-  
ors  
retire.

10. Where had they settled? Under what state? What other state claimed jurisdiction over them? Would they allow it? Whom did they defend their lands against? Who was the commander of the force sent against Ticonderoga? — 11. What other person had formed the same design? Did they capture the forts? At what time? — 12. What other feat was performed by Arnold? — 13. When and where did congress next assemble? What bills of credit issue? — 14. What was the affair in Virginia respecting the powder?

P'T. III. tempting to retake it, Lord Dunmore paid him its value  
 P'D. I. in money. He then proclaimed Henry and his party  
 CH. VIII. rebels. Letters of Lord Dunmore to England were  
 intercepted. The people became so incensed, that  
 Dunmore fearing for his safety, fled to a man-of-war  
 named the Fowey, lying at Yorktown. The govern-  
 nors of North and South Carolina also, abandoned  
 their provinces.

## CHAPTER VIII.

Battle of Bunker Hill.—Washington.

**1775.** 1. IN May, the British army in Boston received a  
 May 25. powerful reinforcement from England, under Generals  
 Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne. General Gage now  
 proclaimed martial law throughout Massachusetts. He  
 however offered pardon to all rebels, who would re-  
 turn to their allegiance, except Samuel Adams and  
 John Hancock. He agreed to permit the people of  
 Boston to depart; but after a portion had gone, he  
 changed his policy and kept the remainder.

June 12. Gage's procla-  
 mation.

He vio-  
 lates his  
 promise.

2. Learning that the British threatened to penetrate  
 into the country, congress recommended to the coun-  
 cil of war to take such measures as would put them  
 on the defensive, and for this purpose, a detachment  
 of one thousand men, under Colonel Prescott, was  
 ordered, on the night of the 16th of June, to throw  
 up a breastwork on Bunker's Hill, near Charlestown.  
 By some mistake, the troops entrenched themselves  
 on Breed's Hill, nearer to Boston. They labored with  
 such silence and activity, that by return of light they

Night of  
 June 16,  
 Ameri-  
 cans  
 fortify  
 Breed's  
 Hill.

**14.** How did Lord Dunmore dispose of himself? How was it with other royal governors?

CHAPTER VIII.—1 What arrival was there in Boston? What did Gen. Gage now proclaim? What agree to do? How violate his promise? — 2. What did congress recommend? What was accordingly ordered? What was done in regard to entrenchments.

had nearly completed a strong redoubt, without being observed. P.T. III.

3. At dawn, however, the British, discovering the advance of the Americans, commenced a severe cannonade from the ships in the river; but this not interrupting them, General Gage sent a body of about three thousand men, under Generals Howe and Pigot. They left Boston in boats, and landed under the protection of the shipping in Charlestown, at the extreme point of the peninsula, then advanced against the Americans.

P.D. I.  
CH. VIII

June 17.  
British  
cross  
from  
Boston.

4. They set fire to Charlestown, and amidst the glare of its flames glittering upon their burnished arms, advance to the attack. The Americans await their approach in silence, until they are within ten rods of the redoubt—then taking a steady aim, and having advantage of the ground, they pour upon the British a deadly fire. They are thrown into confusion, and many of their officers fall. They are thus twice repulsed. Clinton now arrives; his men again rally; advance towards the fortifications, and attack the redoubt on three sides at once.

Burn  
Charles-  
town.

5. The ammunition of the colonists failed. Courage was no longer of any avail, and Colonel Prescott, who commanded, ordered a retreat. The Americans were obliged to pass Charlestown neck, where they were exposed to a galling fire from the ships in the harbor. Here fell General Joseph Warren, whose death was a severe blow to his mourning country.

1775.  
June 17.  
British  
loss,  
1054.  
Ameri-  
can, 453.

6. On the fifteenth of June, congress elected, by a unanimous vote, GEORGE WASHINGTON, who was present, and who had, from their first meeting at Philadelphia, been a delegate from Virginia, to the high office of general and commander-in-chief of the army of the United Colonies. When his appointment was signified to him by the president of congress, he was

June 15.  
Wash-  
ington  
elected  
command-  
er-in-  
chief.

Wash-  
ington's  
modesty.

3. What measures were taken by the British to dislodge the Americans? — 4. Give some further description of the battle of Bunker's Hill? — 5. Give some account of the retreat of the Americans? What general was killed? Learn from the side note the number of killed and wounded on each side. — 6. What important office was now created? How was it filled?

P.T. III. deeply penetrated with a mingled sense of the high honor which he had received, and the responsibility of the station to which he was raised.

P.D. I.  
CH. VIII.

His dis-  
interest-  
edness.

7. He declined all compensation for his services; for as money could not buy him from his endeared home, and as he served his country for justice, and the love he bore to her cause, he would not allow his motives to be misconstrued. He stated that he should keep an exact account of his expenses; and those, congress, he doubted not, would discharge.

He joins  
the army  
at Cam-  
bridge.

8. Soon after his election, Washington set out for the camp at Cambridge. He found the British army strongly posted on Bunker's and Breed's hill, and Boston neck. The American, consisting of 14,000 men, were entrenched on the heights around Boston, forming a line which extended from Roxbury on the right, to the river Mystic on the left, a distance of twelve miles.

His  
great ex-  
ertions.

9. Washington perceived, that although the people were ardent in the cause of liberty, and ready to engage in the most desperate enterprises, yet there was a total want of discipline and military subordination among the troops. The army was scantily supplied with arms and ammunition, and their operations retarded, by a want of skilful engineers. He set himself with astonishing energy and judgment, to the labor of bringing order out of confusion.

Dr.  
Franklin  
the first  
post-  
master-  
general.  
Posts  
from Fal-  
mouth  
to Sa-  
vanuah.

10. During this session of congress, also, the first line of posts for the communication of intelligence through the United States, was established. Benjamin Franklin was appointed, by a unanimous vote, post-master-general, with power to appoint as many deputies as he might deem proper and necessary, for the conveyance of the mail from Falmouth, in Maine, to Savannah, in Georgia.

---

7. How was it respecting a compensation for his services? — 8. Where did Washington join the army? What was its number? — 9. What was the condition of the army? — 10. What was the beginning of our present post-office system? Who was the first postmaster-general? Through what line was the mail to be conveyed?



## CHAPTER IX.

## Invasion of Canada.—Death of Montgomery.

1. WHILE the British army was closely blockaded in Boston, congress conceived the design of sending a force into Canada; as the movements of Sir Guy Carleton, the governor of that province, seemed to threaten an invasion of the northern frontier. Two expeditions were accordingly organized and dispatched, one by the way of Champlain, under Generals Schuyler and Montgomery, the other by the way of the river Kennebec, under the command of Arnold.

P.T. III  
P.D. II  
CH. IX.

Americans  
send two  
parties  
against  
Canada.

2. Gen. Schuyler, though he rendered faithful service, did not on account of his health go to Canada. Montgomery showed himself an able officer. On the 3rd of November he took St. Johns, and proceeding to Montreal, Sir Guy Carleton abandoned the place. About this time Col. Ethan Allen, who was an officer in the army, was, in a rash adventure, made prisoner. He was loaded with irons and sent to England.

Nov. 3.  
St. Johns  
taken.

3. Arnold with 1000 men had with incredible perseverance penetrated the wilderness of Maine. He arrived at Point Levi on the 9th of November. On the 13th he crossed and occupied the heights of Abraham, but his army was reduced to 700 men, and Carleton was now in Quebec with 1500. He retired to Point aux Trembles to await the other division of the army.

Nov. 9.  
Arnold  
before  
Quebec.

4. Montgomery's arrival was on the first of December. He found himself in a situation far more critical and embarrassing than that of Wolfe, sixteen years before. His army was wasted, so that the united force was less than a thousand; and these were enfeebled by fatigue amidst the rigors of a Canadian

Bad  
position  
of Mont-  
gomery.

CHAPTER IX.—1. Who was governor of Canada? What two expeditions were set on foot? — 2. How did the western division under Montgomery proceed? — 3. How did the eastern under Arnold? — 4. What time did Montgomery join Arnold? What was his situation?

P<sup>T</sup>. III. winter, which had already set in with uncommon severity.

P<sup>D</sup> 1.  
CH. IX.

Desperate  
assault.

Defeat  
and  
death of  
Montgomery.

5. He attempted to batter the walls of Quebec. He made piles of ice on which to mount his cannon; but the strong walls remained uninjured. With the advice of all his officers he took then the desperate resolution of storming the city. As the day dawned, and in a snow-storm, the army in four divisions, made the attempt. Two were to make feigned movements in order to divide the attention of the troops in the city; while Montgomery and Arnold, at the head of the other two, made real attacks in opposite points, intending to meet. Arnold had forced his way. Montgomery was cheering on his men, when he received his death-shot. Arnold was wounded and retired. The enterprise failed, with the loss of 400 men killed or made prisoners.

Arnold  
block-  
ades  
Quebec.

6. The treatment of Carleton to his prisoners, did honor to his humanity. Arnold, wounded as he was, retired with the remainder of his army, to the distance of three miles below Quebec; where, though inferior in numbers to the garrison, they kept the place in a state of blockade, and in the course of the winter, reduced it to distress for want of provisions.

1775.  
Oct. 18.  
Falmouth  
burned.

Efforts  
of an ex-  
asperated  
people.

7. Orders were given to the British naval commanders, to lay waste and destroy all such sea-ports, as had taken part against Great Britain. In consequence, Falmouth, now Portland, was burned by the orders of Captain Mowatt of the British navy. This so exasperated the people, that they now put forth new efforts. They collected military stores; they purchased powder in all foreign ports where it was practicable, and, in many colonies, commenced its manufacture. They also began more seriously to turn their attention to their armed vessels.

Dec. 13.  
Congress  
fit out 13  
ships.

8. Congress resolved to fit out thirteen ships, and raise two battalions of marines. They framed articles

5. What attempts did he make? What desperate assault? At what time? What are some of the circumstances? What the final result? — 6. Where was Arnold during the winter? — 7. What orders were given to the British naval commanders? What place was burnt? What effect had this on the people?

of war for the government of the little navy, and established regular courts of admiralty, for the adjudication of prizes. The American privateers swarmed forth. Alert and bold, they visited every sea, and annoyed the British commerce, even in the very waters of their own island.

9. Lord Dunmore, still on board the king's ship, issued a proclamation declaring martial law, and promising freedom to such slaves as would leave their masters, and join his party. Several hundred negroes and royalists obeyed the call, when, leaving his ships, he occupied a strong position near Norfolk. The assembly sent 800 militia to oppose his movements. On the 7th of December they were attacked by the royalists and negroes, but they repelled the assailants, and gained a decisive victory; after which, they occupied the town of Norfolk.

Nov.  
Lord  
Dun-  
more  
makes an  
attempt.

Dec. 7.  
Is de-  
feated.

10. Lord Dunmore, with his remaining forces, again repaired to the ships, where, in consequence of the many royalists who joined him, he became reduced to great distress for want of provisions. In this situation he sent a flag to Norfolk, demanding a supply. The commander of the provincials refusing to comply, he set fire to the town, and destroyed it. This availed him little. Assailed at once by tempest, famine, and disease, he with his followers, sought refuge in the West Indies.

1776.  
Jan. 1.  
Burns  
Norfolk  
and  
abandons  
"the do-  
minion."

11. The last hope of the colonies for reconciliation, rested in the petition of congress to the king, which had been emphatically styled "The Olive Branch." It was sent over by Mr. Penn, a descendant of the proprietor of Pennsylvania, and a former governor of that colony. The king, instead of responding to its affectionate language, accused the Americans in his speech, of rebellion; and declared that they took up arms to establish an independent empire.

1775.  
Mr. Penn  
carries  
over the  
"Olive  
Branch"

---

8. How did Congress now make a beginning with regard to a public navy? How was it with the American privateers? — 9. What were Lord Dunmore's movements in Virginia? How was he opposed? — 10. What was his last act in the dominion? Did it avail him? — 11. What was the last petition of congress to the king called? By whom was it sent? How was it received?

P'T. III.

P'D. I.  
CH. IX.The  
king and  
the par-  
liaments  
hostile.

12. He recommended that vigorous measures should be taken to subdue them, and such also as were likely to weaken them by division. Large majorities in both houses answered the king's speech, by the same accusations against the colonies, and the same determination to reduce them to obedience, by measures of coercion and distress. Thus, with a folly which English patriots now deplore, was the "Olive Branch" contemptuously rejected; and thus the last hope of honourable peace was crushed.

Dec.  
Severe  
laws.

13. An act was soon passed prohibiting all trade and commerce with the colonies; and authorizing the capture and condemnation of all American vessels with their cargoes, and all others found trading in any port or place in the colonies, as if the same were the vessels and effects of open enemies; and the vessels and property thus taken were vested in their captors; and the farther barbarous item was added, that the crews were to be treated, not as prisoners, but as slaves.

England  
hires  
merce-  
naries.The  
last  
wrongs.

14. About the same time, England made treaties with the landgrave of Hesse Cassel, and other German princes, hiring of them 17,000 men, to be employed against the Americans; and it was determined to send over, in addition to these, 25,000 English troops. By the passage of this act, the hiring of foreign mercenaries, and the rejection of this last petition, Great Britain filled up the measure of her wrongs to America, and sealed her final separation from her colonies.

---

12. What did the king recommend? How did parliament reply? What is now thought of the conduct of these rulers by wise men and patriots of their own nation? — 13. What severe law was passed? — 14. What number of men did England hire of the German princes? Do you think the slave-holders in the United States would for money set their negroes to kill people, that neither they or their nation had any quarrel with?

## CHAPTER X.

Washington enters Boston.—Disasters in Canada.

1. **ALTHOUGH** Britain was preparing so formidable a force, yet the American army was not only reduced in numbers, but at the close of the year 1775, was almost destitute of necessary supplies. The terms of enlistment of all the troops had expired in December; and although measures had been taken for recruiting the army, yet on the last day of December, there were but 9,650 men enlisted for the ensuing year.

P.T. III

P.D. I.  
CH. X.The  
army  
small  
and  
ill-ap-  
pointed.

2. Gen. Washington, finding how slowly the army was recruited, proposed to congress to try the influence of a bounty; but his proposal was not acceded to until late in January, and it was not until the middle of February, that the regular army amounted to 14,000. In addition to these, the commander-in-chief, being vested by congress with the power to call out the militia, made a requisition on the authorities of Massachusetts, for 6,000 men.

A bounty  
given.Militia  
called  
out.

3. Washington had continued the blockade of Boston during the winter of 1775-6, and at last resolved to bring the enemy to action, or drive them from the town. On the night of the 4th of March, a detachment silently reached Dorchester Heights, and there constructed, in a single night, a redoubt which menaced the British shipping with destruction. On the morning of the 17th, the whole British force, with such of the loyalists as chose to follow their fortunes, set sail for Halifax. As the rear of the British troops were embarking, Washington entered the town in triumph.

**1776.**  
March 4.  
Dorches-  
ter for-  
tified.The  
British  
evacuate  
Boston,  
Mar. 17.

4. The plans of the British cabinet embraced, for the campaign of 1776, the recovery of Canada, the re-

British  
have 3  
objects  
for the  
cam-  
paign.

**CHAPTER X.—1.** What was the condition of the American army at the close of '75?—**2.** What did Washington recommend? What was done?—**3.** What took place at Boston in March '76?—**4.** What did the British mean to do in the course of the year?



P'T. III. duction of the southern colonies, and the possession  
 P'D. I. of New York. This last service was entrusted to  
 CH. X. Admiral Howe, and his brother, General Howe; the  
 latter of whom succeeded General Gage, in the com-  
 mand of the British troops.

5. Arnold had continued the siege of Quebec, and  
 Arnold had greatly annoyed the garrison; but his army had  
 before suffered extremely from the inclemency of the season,  
 Quebec. and from the breaking out of the small-pox. Not-  
 withstanding the garrison of Montreal had been sent  
 Is badly to reinforce him, he had scarcely 1,000 effective men.  
 situated.

1776. 6. General Thomas now arrived and superseded  
 A disas- Arnold. He made several attempts to reduce Quebec,  
 trous but the sudden appearance of the British fleet obliged  
 retreat, him to flee with such precipitation, that he left his  
 May 5. baggage and military stores. Many of the sick also  
 fell into the hands of Carleton, by whom they were  
 treated with honourable humanity.

7. One after another, the posts which had been con-  
 June. quered by the Americans, fell into the hands of the  
 Ameri- British, and before the close of June, they had re-  
 cans eva- covered all Canada. The Americans lost, in this un-  
 cuate fortunate retreat, about 1,000 men, who were mostly  
 Canada. taken prisoners.

8. The British fleet, destined to the reduction of the  
 Sir Peter southern colonies, sailed, under Sir Peter Parker, to  
 Parker attack Charleston, where they arrived early in June  
 sails to The marines were commanded by General Clinton.  
 attack  
 Charles-  
 ton.

9. An intercepted official letter had given the alarm  
 Sulli- to the Carolinians. On Sullivan's island, at the en-  
 van's is- trance of Charleston harbor, they had constructed a  
 land for- fort of the palmetto tree, which resembles the cork.  
 tified. This fort was garrisoned by about 400 men, com-  
 June 28. manded by Colonel Moultrie. On the morning of the  
 British 28th of June, the British ships opened their several  
 are re- broadsides upon it, but their balls were received by  
 puls- the palmetto wood, and buried as in earth. Moultrie

---

5. How was Arnold situated in the spring? — 6. Who was his successor? What was he forced to do? — 7. Mention some of the circumstances of the unfortunate close of the invasion of Canada. — 8. What fleet went to attack Charleston? — 9. How was Charleston defended?

defended the fortification with such spirit, that it has ever since been called by his name. P.T. III.

10. Once during the day, after a thundering discharge from the British cannon, the flag of the fort was no longer seen to wave; and the Americans, who watched the battle from the opposite shore, were, every moment, expecting to see the British troops mount the parapets in triumph. But none appeared; and, in a few moments, the striped banner of America was once more unfurled to their view. The staff had been carried away by a shot, and the flag had fallen upon the outside of the fort. A serjeant, by the name of Jasper, had jumped over the wall, and, amidst a shower of bullets, had recovered and fastened it in its place. At evening, the British, completely foiled, drew off their ships, with the loss of two hundred men.

P'D. 1.  
CH. X.  
**1776.**

Jasper  
recovers  
the flag.

British  
sail for  
N. York

11. Washington had early apprehended that the enemy would endeavour to get possession of New York. He had, therefore, detached General Lee from Cambridge, to put Long Island and New York in a posture of defense. Soon after the evacuation of Boston, the commander-in-chief followed, and, with the greater part of his army, fixed his head-quarters in the city of New York.

Wash-  
ington's  
head-  
quarters  
at New  
York.

12. On the 7th of June, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, made a motion in congress, for declaring the colonies FREE AND INDEPENDENT. While the proposition was pending, individuals, public presses, and legislatures, sent from every quarter of the country to Philadelphia, a voice approving such a measure.

June 7.  
Indepen-  
dence  
proposed  
in con-  
gress.

13. On the 14th of June, the legislature of Connecticut passed resolutions, instructing their delegates in congress, to propose to that body to declare the American colonies free and independent states, absolved from all allegiance to the king of Great Britain. The reasons, they state to be—the taking away their just rights—the contemptuous refusal to listen to their

June 14.  
The  
feeling of  
all ex-  
pressed  
by Con-  
necticut.

---

10. Mention serjeant Jasper's exploit. What was the British loss? — 11. What did Washington apprehend? What arrangements make? — 12. What proposal was made in Congress?

P'T. III. "humble, decent, and dutiful petitions"—the endeavour to reduce them to abject submission, by war and bloodshed, subjecting their persons to slavery, and hiring foreign mercenaries to destroy them;—so that no alternative was left, but either to submit to what must end in the extreme of wretchedness, or, appeal ing to God, to declare a total separation.

July 4. 14. The sentiments which Connecticut had thus embodied, pervaded the whole country. Congress, therefore, on the 4th of July, 1776, declared to the world, that "these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES."

Independence.

13. How had the Connecticut legislature expressed the sentiments of the nation? — 14. What was done on the 4th of July?

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point to it on the chronographer. The Stamp Act was passed in 1765. Point out the place of this event. The first continental congress assembled in 1774. Point to the place of this date. The battle of Lexington was fought April 18th, 1775, and the battle of Bunker Hill June 17th. Point to the place of these dates.

Congress again assembled at Philadelphia, May 10th, and Washington was appointed commander-in-chief June 15th, 1775. Point out the year of these dates. The British evacuated Boston, March 17th, 1776. When does this period terminate? What event marks its termination? Point out its place on the chronographer.

*American Officers. Foreigners in the  
American service.*

WASHINGTON	<i>French.</i>
ALLEN,	LA FAYETTE,
WARNER,	D'Estaing,
ARNOLD,	ROCHAMBEAU,
PRESCOTT,	DE GRASSE,
WARREN,	Viomesnil.
PUTNAM,	—
SCHUYLER,	—
MONTGOMERY,	—
Thomas,	<i>English.</i>
MOULTRIE,	Lee.
Hale,	—
SULLIVAN,	—
STIRLING,	—
Mifflin,	<i>Polanders.</i>
Wooster,	KOSCIUSKO,
Herkimer,	PULASKI.
St. Clair,	—
GATES,	—
MORGAN,	—
STARK,	<i>Prussian.</i>
LINCOLN,	STEUBEN.
GREENE,	—
James Clinton,*	—
Boyd,	—
PICKENS,	<i>German.</i>
Ashe,	DE KALB.
Buford,	—
Huger,	—
SUMPTER,	<i>Irish.</i>
MARION,	Conway.
WAYNE,	—
Lee,	—
Hayne,	—
Ledyard,	<i>Scotch.</i>
Hamilton.	PAUL JONES.

*British Officers*

GAGE,  
Pitcairn,  
Smith,  
Lord Percy,  
Lord Dunmore,  
Gen. Howe  
(Sir William),\*  
Gen. CLINTON  
(Sir Henry),  
BURGOYNE,  
Pigot,  
CARLETON  
(Sir Guy),  
Lord Howe  
(Admiral),\*  
De Heister  
(German),  
Tryon,  
Frazer,  
St. Leger,  
Baum,  
CORNWALLIS,  
Donop,  
Campbell,  
PREVOST,  
TARLETON,  
Arnold,  
Lord RAWDON,  
André,  
Leslie,  
Balfour,  
Stuart,  
Arbuthnot,  
Philips.

\* Only once mentioned in this book.

\* Admiral Lord Howe and General Sir William Howe, were brothers to each other, and to that Lord Howe who was killed in the French war



# MAP N<sup>o</sup> 8. 1776.







Washington taking Command.

## PERIOD II

FROM  
THE DECLARATION { 1776, } OF INDEPENDENCE,  
TO  
THE COMMENCEMENT OF { 1789. } THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT.

### CHAPTER I.

Lord Howe attempts pacification.—American disaster at Long Island.

1. CONSIDERED as a step in the great march of P.T. III.  
human society, no one can be fixed upon of more P.D. II.  
importance, than the solemn promulgation of the writ- CH. I.  
ting, which contained the grievances of America, and July 6.  
declared her freedom. It embodied also, the universal 1776.  
wrongs of the oppressed; sent forth a warning voice The De-  
to the oppressor; and declared the common rights of clar-  
all mankind. ation  
important to the  
world.

2. The signing of this declaration, by the members  
of the American congress, who were the leading men  
of the nation, was doing that, which, if Great Britain  
should prevail, would subject every signer to the With  
America  
the final  
decision

CHAPTER I.—1. Why may the Declaration of Independence  
be properly regarded as an era in the history of mankind? — 2.  
Why did the people of the United States consider the signing of  
the declaration as their final decision?

P'T. III. penalty of death. As these patriots had thus exposed  
 P'D. II. themselves for the sake of their country, all now re-  
 CH. II. garded the grand decision as unalterably made.

3. The British troops from Halifax, under the command of General Howe, took possession of Staten Island on the 2d of July; and those from England, commanded by Admiral Howe, landed at the same place on the 12th. These, with other English, and several Hessian regiments, would make up an army of 35,000 of the best troops of Europe.

July 2, to  
 July 12,  
 British  
 in great  
 force at  
 Staten  
 Island.

Lord  
 Howe  
 attempts  
 peace-  
 able ex-  
 peditors  
 too late.

4. Lord Howe, who was a man of kind disposition, hoped that the Americans, would be so much afraid of this great force, that they would submit, without his employing it against them. He took various measures to appeal to the people against the decision of Congress, but he did not succeed. Perceiving Washington's great influence, he wrote him a letter, directing it to Mr. Washington. The General sent it back unopened; for he said that he was not addressed in his public capacity; and as an individual, he would hold no intercourse with the enemies of his country.

Grand  
 plan  
 of the  
 British

5. General and Admiral Howe now determined to attack New York. From this point they might, they hoped, proceed with their grand scheme, which was to divide New England from the south. Carleton, with 13,000 men, was to make a descent from Canada, by the way of Lake Champlain, and form a junction with Howe, who was to ascend the Hudson.

Wash-  
 ington's  
 army.

6. Thirteen thousand of the militia were ordered to join the army of Washington, which, thus increased, amounted to twenty-seven thousand; but a fourth of these were invalids, and another fourth were poorly provided with arms. From these and other causes, the force fit for duty did not exceed ten thousand; and of this number the greater part was without order or discipline.

---

3. How large a British army was in or near the United States? — 4. What hopes had Lord Howe? What measures did he take? What occurred between him and Washington? — 5. What appears to have been the grand scheme of the English? What city did they wish to make their head quarters? — 6. What was the number and condition of Washington's army?

7. These inconveniences proceeded, in part, from want of money, which prevented congress from paying regular troops, and providing for their equipments; and partly from parsimonious habits, contracted during peace, which withheld them from incurring, with promptitude, the expenses necessary to a state of war; while their jealousy of standing armies inspired the hope, that they could, each year, organize for the occasion, an army sufficient to resist the enemy.

8. On the 22d of August, the English landed without opposition on Long Island, between the villages of New Utrecht and Gravesend. They extended themselves to Flatlands, distant four miles from the Americans, and separated from them by a range of wood-covered hills, called the heights of Gawanus, running from east to west.

9. Washington had made the best disposition of his forces in his power, to guard the city of New York. The main army was on the island of New York, with detachments sent out to the most exposed points. Of these, the largest was on Long Island, extending from Wallabout Bay westward, and were under command of Generals Putnam, Sullivan, and Stirling. They were opposed to the vastly superior force of the British, under the experienced Generals Clinton, Percy, Cornwallis, and Grant, and the Hessian commander, de Heister.

10. Over the heights of Gawanus, there were but three roads. With such a force opposed to them, how could the American generals neglect to guard these passes, and watch them closely? Yet one of these roads, the most easterly, or Jamaica road, was left so carelessly guarded, that while a part of the British army were taking up the attention of the Americans, with a great noise and show of attack, another portion march-

P<sup>r</sup>T. III.  
P<sup>r</sup>D. II.  
CH. I.

1776.  
Its inferiority  
to the  
British.

Aug. 22.  
British  
land on  
L. Island.

The two  
armies  
are op-  
posed.

Aug. 27.  
Defeat at  
Brook-  
lyn.

Am. loss  
probably  
2000.  
British  
loss 400.

7. From what did this unhappy state of things proceed? — 8. Where did the English army land? How were they arranged? — 9. What disposition of his troops was made by Washington? — 10. What carelessness were some of the American officers guilty of? What disaster was the consequence? What was the loss on both sides in the battle of Brooklyn?\*

\* N. B. The questions sometimes refer to the side notes

P'T. III. ing easterly passed the heights through that road, and  
 P'D II. thus placed the Americans between two fires. They  
 CH. II. could not then win the battle, though they fought  
 bravely. It proved the most bloody and the most  
 disastrous defeat of the whole war.

11. In the height of the engagement, General Washington crossed to Brooklyn from New York. He saw with anguish that his best troops were slaughtered or taken prisoners. Had his object been his own glory, he would probably have drawn all his troops from the encampment; and also called over all the forces from New York, to take part in the conflict: but victory having declared in favour of the English, his judgment decided, that the courage with which it inspired them, and the superiority of their discipline, destroyed all just hope of recovering the battle. And, with true heroism, he preserved himself and his army, for a happier future.

Wash-  
 ington's  
 anguish.

His pru-  
 dence  
 and self-  
 posses-  
 sion.

12. On the night of the 28th, Washington cautiously withdrew the remainder of his troops from Brooklyn to New York; to which place the detachment from Governor's Island, also retired. Finding, however, a disposition in the British to attack the city, and knowing that it would be impossible to defend it, he removed his forces to the heights of Harlaem.

Aug. 28.  
 He re-  
 moves  
 the  
 troops.

## CHAPTER II.

Disasters following the defeat on Long Island.

1. ABOUT this time, Captain Hale, a highly interesting young officer from Connecticut, learning that Washington wished to ascertain the state of the British

Capt.  
 Hale ex-  
 ecuted as  
 a spy.

10. At what time, year, month and day, did the Americans meet this dreadful reverse? Show the position of the armies by the map.—11. What was Washington's conduct?—12. What changes in the position of his army did he now make?

CHAPTER II.—1. Who was Captain Hale? On what service was he sent?

army on Long Island; volunteered for the dangerous service of a spy. He entered the British army in disguise, and obtained the desired information; but being apprehended in his attempt to return, he was carried before Sir William Howe, and by his orders was executed the next morning. At the place of execution, he exclaimed, "I lament that I have but one life to lay down for my country."

P'T. III.  
P'D. II.  
CH. II.

2. On the 15th of September, the British army took possession of the city of New York. Gen. Howe again attempted to negotiate; but he could not promise the Americans independence, and they would listen to no other terms. Still the prospects of the country were alarming. Until the check at Brooklyn, the Americans had flattered themselves, that Heaven would constantly favor their arms. They now almost despaired of divine protection. The militia abandoned their colors by hundreds, and entire regiments deserted, and returned to their homes. In the regular army desertions were common. Their engagements were but for a year, or for a few weeks; and the hope of soon returning to their families induced them to avoid dangers. Every thing appeared to threaten a total dissolution of the army.

Sept. 15.  
British  
enter N.  
York.

Ameri-  
cans dis-  
pirited  
by de-  
feat.

1776.  
Militia  
desert.

The  
regular  
army  
insubor-  
dinate.

3. Washington strove earnestly, with exhortations, persuasions, and promises, to arrest this spirit of disorganization. If he did not succeed according to his desires, he obtained more than his hopes. To congress he addressed an energetic picture of the deplorable state of the forces, and assured them that he must despair of success, unless furnished with an army that should stand by him until the conclusion of the struggle. To effect this, a bounty of twenty dollars was offered at the time of engagement, and portions of unoccupied lands were promised to the officers and soldiers.

Congress  
offer a  
bounty.

---

1. Where? What was his fate? — 2. When did the British enter New York? Would the Americans submit after their defeat at Brooklyn? What effect however, had it on their minds? What on the army? — 3. What was the conduct of the commander? What did he represent to congress? What did they do?



P.T. III. 4. But although Washington hoped ultimately to  
 P.D. II. reap the benefit of these arrangements, yet time must  
 CH. II. intervene; and his present prospect was that of a  
 handful of dispirited and ill-found troops, to contend  
 against a large and victorious army. In this situation  
 he adopted the policy to harass and wear out his  
 enemy, without risking any general engagement. By  
 this policy, Fabius Maximus had, two thousand years  
 before, preserved Italy, when invaded by Hannibal.  
 Washington has, therefore, been called "the American  
 Fabius."

5. A skirmish occurred, on the 16th of September,  
 between a British and American detachment, in which  
 the Americans had the advantage. The British sought  
 to get possession of the two roads leading east, from  
 which direction Washington received his supplies. To  
 keep one of these roads open, Washington removed  
 his camp to White Plains. Here the British attacked  
 him, but though there was bloodshed on both sides,  
 the enemy failed of their object. Washington re-  
 mained, till on the night of the 30th, when he with-  
 drew to North Castle. Leaving here 7,500 men under  
 Gen. Lee, he crossed the Hudson, and took post near  
 Fort Lee.

6. On the 16th of November, occurred the disas-  
 trous loss of Fort Washington; with the 2000 Ameri-  
 can troops, which composed its garrison. The gar-  
 rison of Fort Lee on the opposite bank of the Hudson,  
 under the guidance of Gen. Greene, evacuated the fort,  
 and joined Washington; who, with the main army,  
 had removed to Newark in New Jersey.

7. Washington retreated across New Jersey, and  
 was leisurely followed by a British army under Lord  
 Cornwallis. They entered Newark the day on which  
 Washington left it; and pursued him as he passed on  
 through New Brunswick, Princeton, and Trenton.

4. What policy did Washington adopt? — 5. What occurred  
 on the 16th of Sept.? What on the 28th of Oct.? What on the  
 30th? — 6. What forts were taken by the British? What num-  
 ber of American prisoners? Where was Washington? Who  
 joined him? — 7. Give an account of Washington's memorable  
 retreat through New Jersey? Show the scene of operations on  
 the map.

Here, at the Delaware, the British expected to seize their prey; but with a diligence and energy far exceeding theirs, the Americans had just crossed over,—the last boats with the baggage, being still on the river when the enemy appeared on the opposite bank.

P'T. III.  
P'D. II.  
CH. II.

8. Cornwallis had no boats in which to cross the river. He arranged his army along the eastern bank, from Mount Holly to Trenton, and waited for the Delaware to freeze. The British commanders had an army of at least six-fold numerical strength to that of Washington; and nothing but their own inertness, and his great and skilful exertions, hindered their overtaking him. This seems one of those cases, in which we can see clearly an interposing Providence.

Inefficiency of the British.

9. Feeble as was the American army when Washington commenced his retreat, it had hourly diminished. His troops were unfed amidst fatigue; unshod, while their bleeding feet were forced rapidly over the sharp projections of frozen ground; and they endured the keen December air, almost without clothes or tents. Washington, with the firmness of the commander, united the tenderness of the father;—he visited the sick,—paid every attention in his power to the wants of the army,—praised their constancy,—represented their sufferings to congress,—and encouraged their despairing minds, by holding out the prospects of a better future.

1776.  
Dec.  
Distress of Washington's army.

He becomes truly the "Father of his country."

10. The distress of the Americans, was increased by the desertion, of many of the supposed friends of their cause. Howe, taking advantage of what he considered their vanquished and hopeless condition, offered free pardon to all, who should now declare for the royal authority. Of the extremes of society, the very rich and the very poor, numbers sued for the royal clemency; but few of the middle classes deserted their country in its hour of peril.

The time that "tried men's souls."

---

8. What arrangements did Lord Cornwallis make? What was the difference in the strength of the armies? What in the energy and diligence of the commanders?—9. What was the condition of the American army? What the course of Washington?—10. How were the distresses of the army increased?

## CHAPTER III.

American successes at Trenton and Princeton.

**P.T. III.** 1. WASHINGTON, in this emergency, called in the  
**P.D. II.** distant detachments of the army; and fifteen hundred  
**CH. III.** militia, under Gen. Mifflin, joined him. He had ordered Gen. Lee to go north, for certain important objects; but Lee thought that better uses might be made of the army under his command; and disobeying his orders, he had lingered among the mountains of New Jersey. Here a party of British cavalry surprised and took him prisoner. Gen. Sullivan conducted his forces to Washington's camp.

Gen. Lee  
insubordinate.

Made  
prisoner.

**1776.**  
A critical  
moment  
improved.

2. With these reinforcements, the American army amounted to about 7,000 effective men. A few days, however, would close the year, and the period of enlistment for a considerable portion of the soldiers would expire with it. The cause of America demanded that important use should be made of the short space which intervened. At this critical moment, Washington, perceiving the inactivity of his enemy, struck a capital blow for his country.

Dec. 26  
and 27.  
Washington at  
Trenton.

Am. loss  
12. Two  
were  
frozen.

3. He determined to recross the Delaware, and attack the British posts at Trenton and Burlington. The main body of the army, commanded by Washington in person, effected the passage, though with suffering and danger; for the night was intensely cold, and the river filled with floating ice. The troops marched in two divisions, but both arrived at Trenton at the same moment. The Hessians, under Colonel Rahl, were surprised, and their commander slain. Prisoners, to the number of 1,000, were taken by the Americans, who immediately re-crossed the Delaware

---

CHAPTER III.—1. What measures did Gen. Washington take to increase the exhausted army? What did Lee? What became of his forces? — 2. What was now the number and condition of the American army? What did Washington perceive, and the cause of the country demand? — 3. Give an account of the affair at Trenton?

Two days after the action, Washington crossed his whole army over the Delaware, and took quarters at Trenton.

P<sup>r</sup>T. III.  
P<sup>r</sup>D. II.  
CH. III.

4. Howe was thunderstruck at this astonishing reverse. Cornwallis, leaving a part of his troops at Princeton, immediately proceeded towards Trenton, with the intention of giving battle to the Americans, and arrived, with his vanguard, on the first of January.

1777

Jan. 1  
British  
in mo-  
tion.

5. Washington knew the inferiority of his force, and was sensible, too, that flight would be almost as fatal to the republicans as defeat. About midnight, leaving his fires burning briskly, that his army should not be missed, he silently decamped, and gained, by a circuitous route, the rear of the enemy. At sunrise, the van of the American forces met, unexpectedly, two British regiments, which were on the march to join Cornwallis. A conflict ensued: the Americans gave way:—all was at stake. Washington himself, at this decisive moment, led on the main body. The enemy were routed, and fled. Washington pressed forward towards Princeton, where one regiment of the enemy yet remained. A part of these, saved themselves by flight; the remainder were made prisoners. Thus had he again accomplished his object.

Jan. 3.  
Prince-  
ton.  
Br. loss  
k. 100.  
Am. loss,  
k. Gen.  
Mercer,  
perhaps  
70.

Prison-  
ers taken  
300.

6. Thrilling were the emotions, with which, these successes were hailed, by a disheartened nation. Even to this day, when an unexpected and joyful event is to be related, the speaker, who perchance knows not the origin of the proverb, exclaims, “Great news from the Jerseys!!”

Great  
joy.

7. On hearing the cannonade from Princeton, Cornwallis, apprehensive for the safety of his New Brunswick stores, immediately put his army in motion for that place. Washington, on his approach, retired to Morristown. When somewhat refreshed, he again took the field; and having gained possession of Newark, Woodbridge, Elizabethtown, and indeed of all the enemy’s posts in New Jersey, except New Brunswick

Jan. 6.  
Wash-  
ington  
retires to  
Morris-  
town

4. What movement was made by the British?—5. What second bold stroke was struck by Washington? What effect had these successes on the nation?—7. What movements were next made by the two armies?

P.T. III. and Amboy, he retired to secure winter-quarters at  
 P.D. II. Morristown.  
 CH. IV.

1777. 8. Washington's military glory now rose to its  
 meridian. Indeed, nothing in the history of war  
 shows a leader in a more advantageous point of light,  
 than the last events of this campaign, did the com-  
 manding general.—Hannibal made war for revenge;  
 Cæsar and Napoleon for ambition; Washington for  
 justice,—for the rights of his country, and of mankind.

Wash-  
 ington's  
 great  
 merit.

## CHAPTER IV.

Difficulties and exertions of Congress.—Campaign of 1777.

High  
 charac-  
 ter of the  
 old con-  
 gress.  
 Their  
 difficul-  
 ties.

1. CONGRESS in the mean time were surrounded with difficulties which would have utterly discouraged men of weaker heads, or fainter hearts. They were without any power, except the power to recommend. They had an exhausted army to recruit, and this, not merely without money, but almost without credit; for the bills, which they had formerly issued, had almost entirely lost credit.

Franklin,  
 Deane &  
 Lee.

2. To raise money they authorized a loan,—they created a lottery,—and they sent three commissioners to France to borrow of that government. These commissioners, Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee, were also, if possible, to prevail upon the French government, to acknowledge the American independence.

April 26.  
 Tryon  
 burns  
 Danbury.

3. On the 25th of April, 2,000 men, under Governor Tryon, major of the royalists, or tories, having passed the sound, landed between Fairfield and Norwalk. The next day, proceeding to Danbury, they compelled the garrison, under Colonel Huntington, to

9. What was now Washington's reputation?

CHAPTER IV.—1. What was the situation of Congress? — 2. What did they do to raise money? Whom send to France? For what objects? — 3. Give an account of Gov. Tryon's expedition?



retire; and not only destroyed the stores, but burned the town. P'T. III.  
P'D. II.  
CH. IV.

4. Meantime, 800 militia had collected to annoy them, on their return; of whom 500, under Arnold, took post at Ridgefield, to attack their front, while 200, under General Wooster, fell upon their rear. Both parties were repulsed. Wooster was slain; and Arnold retired to Saugatuck, about three miles east of Norwalk. The enemy having spent the night at Ridgefield, set fire to it, still retreating, although continually harassed by Arnold's party, now increased to 1,000. At Campo, between Norwalk and Fairfield, they took refuge on board their ships. 1777.  
Ridge-  
field. Br.  
loss, 170.  
Am. 100.

5. The British had collected at Sag Harbor, on Long Island, large magazines of forage and grain. Colonel Meigs left Guilford, on the 23d of May, with 170 men, destroyed the stores, burned a dozen brigs and sloops, and returned without loss. May 23.  
Sag Har-  
bour.  
Br. loss,  
k. 6; pri-  
soners,  
90.

6. Congress had, with great judgment, selected Dr. Franklin as one of the mission to France. A profound knowledge of human nature, had given to this philosopher a manner possessing a peculiar charm, attractive to all, however different their taste or pursuits. He exerted these powers so successfully, that he excited great interest at the court of France for the American cause. Dr.  
Franklin  
at the  
court of  
France.

7. Several gentlemen of rank and fortune came forward and offered their services. The most distinguished of these, was the Marquis de la Fayette, a young nobleman, who, although he had every thing to attach him to his own country, yet took the resolution to risk his life and fortune, for the cause of American liberty, and human rights. La Fay-  
ette and  
others  
offer  
their ser-  
vice.

8. After the disastrous battle of Long Island, he was told of the despairing state of the country, then so poor, that it could not provide him a conveyance. Magna-  
nimity of  
La Fay-  
ette.

---

4. Give an account of the retreat of the British, and show it on the map?—5. Give an account of Col. Meigs' exploit?—6. What kind of man was Dr. Franklin? What effect did he produce?—7. Who made offers of service?—8. What trait of magnanimity can you relate of La Fayette? How was he received in the United States?

P'T. III. "Then," said La Fayette, "this is the moment when  
 P'D. II. I can render the most essential service." He provided  
 CH. V. a vessel for himself. His arrival caused heartfelt joy.  
 1777. Washington received him as a son; and Congress  
 made him a major-general.

9. Washington removed the main army from Morristown, to a strong position on the heights of Middlebrook. Gen. Howe, crossed the Hudson and appearing before Washington's camp, vainly endeavoured to draw him out. Affecting then to retreat in haste, Washington pursued, when he turned upon him; but the American general regained his camp, a skirmish only having ensued.

10. The British had taken Rhode Island in December. On the 10th of July, the British commander, General Prescott, was made prisoner by a daring party of forty country militia, under Col. Barton. General Prescott was surprised at night, and taken from his bed.

Move-  
ments of  
the two  
armies.  
June.

July 10.  
Col.  
Barton's  
exploit.

## CHAPTER V.

### Burgoyne's Invasion.

1. THE grand British plan, as has been mentioned, was to send an army to Canada, which should invade by the way of Lake Champlain; while a force from New York should go up the Hudson to act in concert. It was supposed the east might thus be divided from the south.

2. General Burgoyne was sent from England with an army, and arrived at Quebec in May. Burgoyne's army consisted of 7,173 British and German troops, besides several thousands of Canadians and Indians. His plan of operation was, that Colonel St. Leger

The  
grand  
plan to  
be at-  
tempted.

1777.  
May.  
Bur-  
goyne  
sent  
over.

9. Give some account of the two armies? — 10. Give an account of the capture of Gen. Prescott.

CHAPTER V.—1. What was now the grand scheme of the British? — 2. Who was sent over to effect it? What forces had Burgoyne? What was his plan of operation?

should proceed with a detachment by the St. Lawrence, Oswego, and Fort Stanwix, to Albany. Burgoyne, proceeding by Champlain and the Hudson, was to meet St. Leger at Albany, and both, to join General Clinton from New York. Burgoyne moved forward with his army, and made his first encampment on the western shore of Lake Champlain, at the river Boquet.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. V.  
June 20.  
Burgoyne at the river Boquet.

3. St. Leger had united with Sir John Johnson, and having nearly 2,000 troops, including savages, they invested Fort Stanwix, commanded by Col. Gansevoort. General Herkimer, having collected the militia, marched to the relief of Gansevoort. He fell into an Indian ambuscade on the 6th of August, and was defeated and slain. St. Leger pressed upon the fort.

Battle of Oriskany  
Herkimer's defeat.  
Am. loss, 400.  
Aug. 6.

4. General Schuyler, who commanded the northern forces, dispatched Arnold to its relief. On hearing of his approach, the Indians, having previously become dissatisfied, mutinied and compelled St. Leger to return to Montreal... Burgoyne advanced to Crown Point, from whence he proceeded to invest Ticonderoga, which was garrisoned by 3,000 men under Gen. St. Clair. Up to this period, a circumstance respecting this fort seems strangely to have been overlooked. It is commanded by an eminence near, called Mount Defiance. The troops of Burgoyne got possession of this height on the 5th of July, and St. Clair, finding the post no longer tenable, evacuated it on the same night.

Aug. 22.  
St. Leger returns to Montreal.

June 30.  
Burgoyne at Crown Point.

5. The garrison, separated into two divisions, were to proceed through Hubbardton to Skeenesborough. The first, under St. Clair, left the fort in the night, two hours earlier than the second, under Colonel Francis. The stores and baggage, placed on board 200 batteaux, and convoyed by five armed galleys, were to meet the army at Skeenesborough.

July 5.  
The British take Ticonderoga.

6. General Frazer, with 850 of the British, pursued

---

3. Describe the route of St. Leger? When, and by whom, was the battle of Oriskany fought? What was the American loss? — 4. By what means was St. Leger forced to return? By what means did Burgoyne get possession of Ticonderoga? — 5. What arrangements were made for the retreat of St. Clair's army? — 6. Give an account of the disaster at Hubbardton?

P'T. II. and attacked the division at Hubbardton, whose rear  
 P'D. II. was commanded by Colonel Warner. The Ameri-  
 CH. V. cans made a brave resistance, but the British, in the  
 1777. heat of the action, receiving a reinforcement, the re-  
 July 7. publicans were forced to give way. They fled in  
 Am. loss, every direction, spreading through the country the  
 k., w. terror of the British arms. Many of the wounded  
 and pris., perished in the woods.  
 nearly  
 1000.

Br. loss, 7. A part of the stores and armed galleys, which  
 k. 130. had been sent up the lake, fell into the hands of the  
 British. St. Clair, on hearing of these disasters, struck  
 July 12. into the woods on his left. He was joined by the  
 St. Clair, remnant of the vanquished division, conducted by  
 reaches Colonel Warner. After a distressing march, he  
 Ft. Ed- reached the camp of General Schuyler, at Fort Ed-  
 ward. ward. Warner, with a detachment, remained in Man-  
 Aug. 13. chester. Burgoyne took possession of Skeenesborough.  
 Gen. Schuyler, with the American army, retired from Fort  
 at the Edward to Saratoga, and from thence to the islands at  
 Mo- the mouth of the Mohawk.

8. General Schuyler had obstructed the roads, by  
 Gates breaking the bridges, and, in the only passable defiles,  
 more po- by cutting immense trees on both sides of the way, to  
 pular, fall cross and lengthwise... General Gates was ap-  
 super- pointed to supersede General Schuyler in the com-  
 sedes mand. Lincoln, Arnold, and Morgan, were sent north,  
 Schuy- which encouraged volunteers to join the army. The  
 ler. celebrated patriot of Poland, Kosciusko, was also in  
 the army, as its chief engineer.

July 30. 9. Burgoyne, having with much labor and time.  
 Bur- opened a way for his army, arrived at Fort Edward on  
 goyne the 30th of July, but he was in want of supplies.  
 reaches Learning that there was a large depôt of provisions at  
 Ft. Ed- Bennington, he sent 500 men, under Lieut. Col. Baum,  
 ward. a German officer, to seize them. General Stark, with  
 Col. a body of New Hampshire and Vermont militia, was  
 Baum at on his march to join General Schuyler. He met the  
 Ben- nington.

7. What became of St. Clair's division? Of Col. Warner's?  
 Where was now Burgoyne? Where was Gen. Schuyler?—8.  
 What popular officers now joined the army?—9. What de-  
 tachment did Burgoyne send out? Where was Gen. Stark?  
 Give an account of the battle of Bennington.

British force four miles from Bennington. Baum was killed, and his party defeated. The militia had dispersed, to seek for plunder, when a British reinforcement of 500 men arrived. The Green Mountain Boys, under Colonel Warner, appeared at the same time, and the British were again defeated, and compelled to retreat.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. V.  
**1777.**  
Aug. 16.  
British  
loss 600

10. Miss M'Crea of Fort Edward, was engaged in marriage to Capt. Jones, an officer of Burgoyne's army. She left her father's house by stealth, and for this wrong step, she paid a direful penalty. The Indians whom she accompanied, and whom Capt. Jones had first sent, met in the woods a second party, whom he had unwisely dispatched to aid the first. They quarreled; each determining to conduct the lady to their employer. The first party, finding the second likely to succeed, tied her to a tree and shot her.

The  
murder  
of Miss  
M'Crea.

11. When this tragic affair became known; it greatly excited the minds of the people against the British, who had thus let loose the cruel savages upon the land; and there was now a general rising, and rush to the camp of Gates. The army thus reinforced,—encouraged by the victory of Bennington, and now amounting to 5,000, Gates left the encampment at the islands, and advancing to Stillwater, occupied Behmus heights.

Sept. 8.  
Gates  
encamps  
at Sara-  
toga.

12. On the 12th, Burgoyne crossed the Hudson, and on the 14th, encamped at Saratoga, about three miles distant from the American army. An obstinate and bloody battle occurred at Stillwater on the 19th. Both sides claimed the victory; but the advantage was clearly on the side of the Americans. Skirmishes, frequent and animated, occurred between this and the 7th of October, when a general battle was fought at Saratoga.

Sept. 19.  
Bur-  
goyne  
defeated  
at Still-  
water.

Oct. 7  
British  
defeated  
at Sara-  
toga.

13. The Americans made the attack. The battle was fierce and desperate. The British gave way in

Loss  
great on  
both  
sides.

10. Relate the story of Miss M'Crea? — 11. What effect did it produce on the public mind? What advance movement was made by Gates? — 12. What by Burgoyne? Where did the armies meet and contend? Which had the advantage? When and where was a great and decisive battle fought? — 13. Why could not Burgoyne retreat? What did he do on the 17th of Oct.?



P.T. III. fifty minutes. That short time decided great events.  
 P.D. II. The loss was severe in killed and wounded, on both  
 CH. VI. sides. The British lost Gen. Frazer. Arnold had  
 1777. greatly distinguished himself in the battle, and was  
 Frazer is severely wounded... Burgoyne made efforts to retreat  
 killed. but he was hemmed in by a foe, whose army constantly increasing, now amounted to four times his own wasting numbers. He capitulated on the 17th of October.

14. The whole number surrendered, amounted to 5,762 men. There also fell into the hands of the Americans, 35 brass field pieces, and 5,000 muskets. It was stipulated that the British were to have free passage across the Atlantic; but they were not to serve again in North America, during the war. On hearing of the defeat of Burgoyne, the British garrison at Ticonderoga returned to Canada, and not a foe remained in the northern section of the Union. Sir Henry Clinton had sailed up the Hudson; but as Burgoyne had failed, he returned to New York; having first barbarously burned Esopus, now Kingston.

Whole  
Br. loss,  
9,000.  
Part  
from de-  
sertion.

Garrison  
of Ti.  
retreat to  
Canada.

## CHAPTER VI.

Battle of Brandywine.—British in Philadelphia.—Germantown.

1. ADMIRAL and Gen. Howe, intent on the capture of Philadelphia, left Sandy Hook on the 23d of July. They were long at sea. At length they were heard of, sailing up the Chesapeake. They disembarked their troops, amounting to 18,000, at the head of the Bay. Washington crossed the Delaware and marched to oppose them. Approaching the enemy, he encamped

Howe  
lands at  
Elkton.

Aug. 25.  
Wash.  
marches  
to meet  
him.

14. How many men were surrendered? How many pieces of artillery? What did Sir Henry Clinton?

CHAPTER VI.—1. Trace on the map and describe the course of Admiral Howe's fleet? What course did Washington take?

on the rising grounds which extend from Chad's Ford; and there, the shallow stream of the Brandywine, being between the armies, he awaited an attack from the British commander.

P'T. III.

P'D. II.

CH. VI.

1777.

2. Early in the morning, the hostile army commenced the assault Washington had made, and partly executed, a plan which would probably have won the day; but in the heat of the action, his judgment was misled by false intelligence, and he lost the battle. Gen. Green here distinguished himself; as did the brave Polander, Pulaski. Gen. La Fayette, endeavouring to bring back the flying, to face again the enemy, received a wound in the leg. When in his old age, the country for whom he here shed his blood, conveyed him, an honoured guest, returning from her shores, the new war-ship which carried him to France, was named from this battle, the Brandywine.

Sept. 11.

Brandy-

wine.

Am. de-

feat.

Br. loss,

500.

Am. loss,

1,300.

3. Congress, finding themselves insecure in Philadelphia, adjourned to Lancaster, to which place the public archives and magazines were removed. A detachment of the British army, under Cornwallis, entered the American capital, while the main body, under Howe, took post at Germantown. The American army encamped at Skippack creek. Washington, knowing that Howe was weakened by detachments, left his camp at seven in the evening of Oct. 4th, and at dawn succeeded in giving the British a complete surprise. They at first retreated in disorder. Several companies having thrown themselves into a stone house, annoyed the Americans. A thick fog came on, and unable to distinguish friend from foe, confusion arose in the American ranks, and they lost the battle.

Sept. 26.

The

British

enter

Phila.

Oct. 4.

Ger-

man-

town.

Am. loss,

k. 200,

w. 600,

pris. 400.

4. Congress had made it death to any citizen to furnish the enemy with food; and such was the spirit of the people, and the vigilance of the commander, that Howe now found his army in danger of starva-

Howe in

danger of

starving.

---

2. Give an account of the battle of Brandywine? Mention the loss on both sides? What officers distinguished themselves? What vessel was named after this battle? — 3. What movement did Congress make? When did the British troops enter Philadelphia? Where were Generals Howe and Washington? Describe the battle of Germantown?

P'T. III. tion. To prevent this, he must open the navigation  
 P'D. II. of the Delaware, which had been obstructed by sunken  
 CH. VI. ranges of frames, and by forts on Mud Island, Red  
 1777. Bank, and other places. Howe removed his army to  
 Ft. Mer- Philadelphia; and to open the navigation, he sent Col.  
 cer. Donop with a detachment of Hessians. They at-  
 Hessians tacked Fort Mercer on Red Bank, and were repulsed  
 lost 500. with heavy loss. At length, however, the British sent  
 Opens against it such a force, that the Americans evacuated  
 the navi- it. The British fleet then passed up the Delaware to  
 gation. Philadelphia. Much of the American shipping in the  
 river was burnt; and the remainder fell into the hands  
 of the enemy.

5. Washington now retired to winter-quarters at Valley Forge. The huts for the camp were not completed, when the magazines were found to contain scarcely a single day's provision. As to clothing,—they were destitute, almost to nakedness. Barefooted, on the frozen ground,—their feet cut by ice,—they left their tracks in blood. A few only had a blanket at night. Straw could not be obtained, and the soldiers, who, during the day, were benumbed with cold, and enfeebled by hunger, had at night no other bed than the damp ground. Diseases attacked them; and the hospitals were replenished, as rapidly as the dead were carried out.

6. This melancholy state of the army was owing to the condition of the finances. Congress had carried on the war thus far, by making a great quantity of paper money. That is, they had issued notes in the name of the government, promising to pay the holders such and such sums. If the government had possessed gold and silver enough actually to pay these notes, whenever they were presented, then they would have

---

4. What was the condition of the British army? What was now Howe's object? What measures did he take? Did he succeed?—5. Where did Washington make winter-quarters? As to the condition of the army, had they food? Had they clothing? Had they shoes? What was their lodging at night? What the state of their health?—6. How had congress thus far carried on the war? Give some account of the "continental money" as their bills were termed. Why did people become unwilling to take it?

Dec. 11.  
 Wash-  
 ington's  
 winter-  
 quarters  
 at Valley  
 Forge.

The  
 distress  
 of the  
 army.

The pa-  
 per mo-  
 ney be-  
 comes  
 bad.

been good money, like the bills of good banks. But they had no specie; and the country became over-run with this paper. People began to think it doubtful whether it ever would be redeemed; and then they did not wish to take it. Its market value had depreciated to one-quarter: that is, for an article, valued at one dollar, must be paid of this money four dollars.

P.T. III.

P.D. II.

CH. VI.

1777.

1-4 below par.

7. But the people, who had such articles to sell, as the army needed, would not sell them, and take for pay this paper money at par. Congress on the other hand would not allow their agents to part with it below par, and the country was so poor, they had nothing else to give. The consequence was, that they could not now provide either food or clothing, for the army. The pay of the officers was not sufficient to provide them the necessaries of life. Those who had fortunes were spending, or had already spent them. Those who had not, were in a state of actual suffering. Many resigned;—not merely the worthless,—but often, the bravest and the best.

Congress have no other

The army suffers.

8. Amidst the grief and care, to which the commander was thus subjected, a cabal was stirred up, to prejudice the minds of the people against him; and thus to get his office for Gen. Gates. The most active agent of the plot, was Gen. Conway. Even congress so far gave way as to appoint this man inspector-general. Washington, in the calmness of his righteous mind, turned not aside from his public duties, to notice his private enemies. But the people took his part; and, the more for this magnanimity. The army were so indignant, that at length, all who had been engaged in the plot, whatever had been their former services, were now afraid of their resentment, and kept out of the way. Gen Conway's office, was given to the Baron Steuben, a Prussian officer.

Shameful cabal against W.

An example of magnanimity.

9. A law was passed, the object of which was to make the officers contented to remain in the army. It al-

---

6. How much had it now depreciated?—7. Why could not the government agents procure things needful for the army? How was it with the officers?—8. How was the commander now treated? How did this vile treatment affect Washington,—the people, and the army?

**P.T. III.** lowed them half-pay for seven years after the close of the war. . . The Americans were successful in the de-  
**P.D. II.** predations, which their swift sailing privateers made  
**CH. VI.** upon the British commerce. With these they boldly  
 scoured every sea, even those about the British islands.  
 Since 1776, they had already captured 500 of the  
 British vessels. Early in the season, Sir Henry Clinton  
 arrived in Philadelphia, to supersede Sir William Howe.  
**Officers** provided for.  
**Success** of Am. priva-  
**teers.**

10. The news of the capture of Burgoyne caused a deep sensation in Europe. The English people were astonished and afflicted. The FRENCH ACKNOWLEDGED THE INDEPENDENCE OF THE UNITED STATES. A treaty of alliance was made, on the 6th of February, by which it was stipulated that France and the United States should make common cause; and that neither party should make either peace or truce with England without the consent of the other; and neither party lay down their arms, till the independence of the United States was secured. The American commissioners, Franklin, Deane, and Lee, were received at the court of France as the representatives of a sister nation. M. Gerard was appointed minister to the United States. Dr. Franklin, still in France, was the following. Sep-  
**1778.** England in per-  
 plexity.  
 France makes a treaty with the U. S.  
 May. A French minister arrives with the treaty.

11. The British now sent over three men, Carlisle, Eden, and Johnstone, under pretence of treating for peace; but, in reality, to plot secretly against the government established in the United States; and to draw off influential individuals, by direct bribery, and the promises of wealth and titles for the future. Johnstone offered to Gen. Reed, if he would aid the royal cause, ten thousand pounds sterling, and any office in the colonies within the king's gift. "I am not," said the patriot, "worth purchasing; but, such as I am, the king of England is not rich enough to buy me."

A plan unworthy a great nation.

9. What law was passed? What success had the American privateers? By whom was Howe superseded? How did the English receive the news of Burgoyne's capture? What important result did the news produce in France? — 10. What arrangements were now made by France and the United States? — 11. What plan did the British government now resort to? How did Gen. Reed reply to the offer of Johnstone? — 12. How did congress treat those emissaries?



12. In some instances, Johnstone had the indiscretion to write. The indignant patriots brought forward his letters, which contained the evidence of his base intrigues, and Congress indignantly forbade all farther communication.

P'T. III.  
P'D. II  
CH. VII.

## CHAPTER VII.

Battle of Monmouth.—Seat of war transferred to the South.

1. THE British army, on the 18th of June evacuated Philadelphia, and, marching through New Jersey, now directed their course to New York. Washington left Valley Forge, and adding to his army the New Jersey militia, hung on the rear of the enemy, and brought them to action at Monmouth or Freehold. The advantage was on the side of the Americans. In the beginning of the battle, Gen. Lee was guilty of an inadvertence which endangered the whole army. Washington rebuked him sternly; for which, Lee afterwards wrote him insulting letters. A court martial censured Lee, and suspended him from his command.

June 28.  
Battle of  
Mon-  
mouth.  
Br. loss,  
700.  
Am. not  
so much.

2. The French now fitted out a fleet, which under the Count d'Estaing, left Toulon on the 18th of April, and arrived in America in June. Washington, in order to derive the utmost advantage from the presence of the French fleet, directed an expedition against the British forces at Newport, in Rhode Island. He detached a force of 10,000 troops under the command of Gen. Sullivan. By concert with Sullivan, d'Estaing arrived off Newport, on the 25th of July.

d'Es-  
taing and  
Sullivan  
sent to  
R. I.

3. On the 9th of August, Sullivan landed on the north end of Rhode Island. On the 10th, the fleet of

---

CHAPTER VII.—1. What did the British army on the 18th of June? Give an account of the battle of Monmouth. — 2. What was now done by the French? What plan was conceived by Washington? — 3. What was done by Gen Sullivan? What caused the failure of the expedition?

**P'T. III.** Lord Howe appeared in sight, and d'Estaing left Sullivan to give chase to the British admiral. The craft  
**P'D. II.** Howe led him on, and both fleets were soon out of sight. When he returned he was in so shattered a  
**CH. VII.** condition, that he left Sullivan, in spite of his remonstrances, to his fate. He narrowly, by good generalship, escaped falling with his whole army into the hands of the British. An engagement occurred between the hostile armies, at Quaker Hill. These affairs caused Washington much trouble, as they irritated the Americans against the French... In June occurred the "Massacre of Wyoming," well known as a delightful valley on the banks of the Susquehannah. The perpetrators were a body of tories and Indians, led by Col. John Butler, a tory, and Brandt, a half-blooded Indian.

**Savannah.** 4. In their military operations, the enemy now placed their principal hope of success, in conquering the southern states. Sir Henry Clinton sent to Georgia 2,500 men, commanded by Col. Campbell. Savannah being unprepared for defense, he defeated the Americans, and then took possession of the city. That part of the American army which escaped, retreated into South Carolina... Washington took winter-quarters at Middlebrook.

**1779.** 5. The capital of Georgia being already in possession of the British, they soon overran the adjacent country. Gen. Prevost, commander of the troops at St. Augustine, pursuant to the orders of Clinton, left Florida, and, after having in his way taken Sunbury, the only fort which held out for congress, he arrived at Savannah, where he took the command. The whole of Georgia was now under the authority of the royalists.

**Tories encouraged to rise.**

6. There were tories at the south, though not so

---

3. What was the loss in the battle near Quaker Hill? Of what party were Butler and Brandt the leaders? Of what massacre were they the perpetrators? — 4. What did the enemy now regard as their principal plan of operations? What force was sent from New York? To what place? What was the American loss at Savannah? Where did the remainder of the army go? — 5. Give an account of the British movements in Georgia? — 6. Were there tories in the south?

many as the British had been led to believe. To encourage them, they moved up the river to Augusta. They sent out many persons to persuade them to take up arms immediately, promising them revenge on their opposers, and great rewards. The royalists rose, put themselves under the command of Col. Boyd, and, moving towards the British army, pillaged, burnt and murdered on their way. A Carolinian force, under Col. Pickens, met them, and after severe fighting, totally defeated them.

P.T. 111  
P.D. 11.  
CH. VII.  
Col.  
Pickens  
defeats  
the Tories  
near  
Augusta.

7. Gen. Lincoln now took command of the southern forces, at Charleston. Intending to recover the upper part of Georgia, he detached Gen. Ashe, with 2,000 men, of the Carolina militia, to take post at a strong position, on Briar creek. Here he was completely surprised by Gen. Prevost. The militia fled, without firing a shot; but many of them were drowned in the river, and swallowed up in the marshes.

Lincoln  
at the  
south.

1779.  
Ashe de-  
feated at  
Briar c.  
March 3.  
Am. loss,  
1600.

8. Again the British were masters of all Georgia. Gen. Prevost now proceeded to organize a colonial government. He defeated the Americans under Gen. Moultrie, and compelled them to evacuate Black Swamp and Purysburg, in which they had placed garrisons. On the 11th of May he appeared before Charleston; but Gov. Rutledge, and Gen. Lincoln, successfully defended the city.

Prevost  
carries  
all before  
him.  
May 11.  
At  
Charles-  
ton

9. In May, Sir H. Clinton sent out from New York a fleet, with a corps of 2,000 men, under Gen. Matthews, to ravage and subdue Virginia. Portsmouth, Norfolk, Suffolk, and Gosport, were barbarously burned. Failing in the grand object of producing a revolt, Clinton recalled his troops to New York... The British again planned to cut off in part the eastern states from the others, by getting the entire command of the waters of the Hudson. Gen. Clinton succeeded in taking the important forts at

British  
in Va.  
burn  
several  
towns.

---

6. What happened to a party in arms? — 7. Who received the command of the southern army? What did he do? What detachment did he send out? What was its fate? What was the American loss? — 8. What were now the British operations in Georgia and Carolina? What happened at Charleston? — 9. Describe the descent made by Gen. Matthews upon Virginia?

P'T. III. Stony and Verplank's Points. The British, however,  
 P'D. II. were not more than six weeks in possession, before  
 CH. VIII. they were surprised at Stony Point by a detachment  
**1779.** of the American army, ably commanded by Gen.  
 July 15. Wayne. His assault of Stony Point, was one of the  
 at Stony most brilliant successes of the war. Washington re-  
 Point. moved the artillery and munitions, dismantled and  
 Br. loss, abandoned the fort.  
 600.

Am. loss, 100. 10. The Connecticut privateers cut off the supplies  
 of the British at New York. Clinton sent a detach-  
 Tryon in ment under Tryon to New Haven, which destroyed  
 Conn. all the shipping in that port. Tryon then burned  
 burns several  
 towns. Fairfield, Norwalk, and Greenwich... To chastise the  
 Indians, Gen. Sullivan, with 3,000 troops, proceeded  
 up the Susquehannah. At Wyoming he was joined by  
 Aug. 29. a reinforcement of 1,600 men, under the command of  
 Sullivan James Clinton, of New York. The Indians and roy-  
 defeats the Tories and  
 and Indians. alists, under their ferocious leaders, Johnson, Butler,  
 and Brandt, had advanced to Newtown, and there  
 thrown up an entrenchment. Sullivan attacked and  
 defeated them, and laid waste their country.

## CHAPTER VIII.

Campaigns of 1779, and 1780.—The British conquer the South.

Oct 3. 1. By previous concert, the French fleet, and the  
 Unfor- army of Lincoln were to co-operate against the British  
 tunate force, under Prevost, now at Savannah. A bombard-  
 bom- ment was commenced by the allies. Fifty-three pieces  
 bard- of cannon, and nine mortars, sent an incessant shower  
 ment of balls and shells, and the city was on fire in many  
 of Savan-  
 nah.

9. What happened on the shores of the Hudson? — 10. What provocation had Conn. given to the British? How were the Indians chastised?

CHAPTER VIII.—1. What now were the French engaged in? What course was taken by d'Estaing? What did the allies agree to attempt? Give an account of the bombardment of Savannah.

places. The burning roofs fell upon the women, the children, and the unarmed multitude; and every where were seen the crippled, the wounded, and the dying. But the fort remained uninjured. It was then resolved to assault the town. The flower of the combined armies were led to a bloody and unsuccessful attack, by the two commanders, d'Estaing and Lincoln. Count Pulaski here fell. The allies, totally defeated, raised the siege.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. VIII.

1779.  
Fr. loss,  
700.  
Am. loss,  
400.

2. On the coast of Great Britain, Paul Jones, a native of Scotland, but commanding a small fleet in the service of the United States, attacked Capt. Pearson, the commander of an English fleet in convoy of merchant ships. This fierce battle occurred in the night; with the horrible circumstances of magazines of powder blowing up,—vessels taking fire, and sinking,—and the most shocking carnage. In some of the vessels, more than three quarters of the officers and men were killed. Jones finally prevailed.

Paul  
Jones'  
melan-  
choly  
victory

3. At the close of this year, a dollar in specie could scarcely be obtained for forty in continental bills. But, the paper was fluctuating in its value. Hence a set of men arose, who preferred speculating on this currency, to honest industry; and often in the changes which occurred, the worthless amassed sudden wealth, while many deserving persons of moderate fortunes, sunk at once to poverty. The honest individual of private life, will be surprised to learn another reason of the depreciation of American paper. England, on this occasion, turned counterfeiter. Her ministers sent over, and her generals distributed whole chests of spurious bills, so perfectly imitated, as scarcely to be distinguished from the true.

Public  
immo-  
rality  
caused  
by a fluc-  
tuating  
currency

England  
counter-  
feits  
money.

4. Washington took winter-quarters at Morristown... Sir Henry Clinton, with 7,000 men, sailed in December from New York, and soon after his land-

Sir H.  
Clinton  
with  
7,000  
men at  
the  
south.

1. Give an account of the assault?—2. Who was Paul Jones? Give some account of his sea-fight?—3. What was now the condition of the country in regard to the currency? What effect had it on the morals of the people? What had England done to aid in depreciating the currency?—4. Where was Washington? Where did Sir Henry Clinton go?



**P.T. III.** ing, menaced Charleston. Gen. Lincoln removed  
**P.D. II.** thither with his army; and in conjunction with Gov.  
**CH. VIII.** Rutledge, tried every measure to put the city in a pos-  
**1780.** ture of defense. But they had great difficulties to en-  
 counter. The militia had been disbanded; they were  
 dispirited, and afraid to enter Charleston on account  
 of the small-pox, which was there prevailing.

Lincoln  
and Rut-  
ledge.  
Their  
discour-  
agements.

Huger's  
defeat at  
Monk's  
corner.

May 12.  
Lincoln  
surren-  
ders his  
whole  
army.

5. Clinton commenced the seige on the 1st of April. On the 14th, a detachment of the American army, under Gen. Huger, was defeated at Monk's corner. Thus the only retreat of the army of Lincoln was cut off. On the 7th of May, Fort Moultrie was given up. Gen. Lincoln then surrendered his army; which consisted of seven general officers, ten continental regiments, and three battalions. Four hundred pieces of artillery, and four frigates fell into the hands of the enemy.

Clinton  
master of  
S. C.

6. After taking possession of the capital, Clinton's next object was to make himself master of the whole state. A corps of Carolinians, under Col. Buford, were in arms. Col. Tarleton, noted for rapid movement and unrelenting cruelty, was sent against him at the head of a body of cavalry. He came up with him at Waxhaw, defeated him, and barbarously slew his men, after they had laid down their arms, and while they were crying for quarter.

June 10.  
Returns  
to N. Y.

Many Carolinians flocked to the royal standard. Clinton wrote to England, that "South Carolina was English again." He published a full pardon to all who should immediately return to their duty. But they must take up arms in support of the royal cause. Gen. Clinton distributed his army into the most important garrisons, and leaving Lord Cornwallis in the command of the southern department, he returned to New York.

7. The winter had been so severe, that all the waters

---

4. What was the condition of Charleston in regard to defense against invasion? — 5. What advantages were gained by the British previous to the 8th of May? What was surrendered? — 6. What was Clinton's next object? Who were in arms? Give an account of Tarleton? Of the engagement? What was at this time the position of affairs in South Carolina?

about New York were frozen...Springfield, in New Jersey had been burned by the Hessian army.

P'T. III.  
P'D. II.  
CH. VIII.

8. Congress now decided, that in future, the continental bills should pass, not at the value indicated by the note, but at such a rate as people were willing to allow. ... In Carolina, and Georgia, the British treated all those who adhered to the republic, with great severity. Against their agreement, they were about to compel them to fight in their armies. They then said, "If we must fight, it shall be for America and our friends, not for England and strangers."

Congress sanctions the depreciation of their bills.  
Southern patriots.

9. The women of Carolina, refused their presence at every scene of gaiety. Like the daughters of captive Zion, they would not amuse their conquerors. But, at every hazard, they honored, with their attention, the brave defenders of their country. Sisters encouraged their brothers,—the mother her son, and the wife her husband; and their parting advice was, "prefer prisons to infamy, and death to servitude."

1780.  
Heroism of the women of South Carolina.

10. In every part of the nation that fire of patriotism rekindled, which burned so brightly, in the beginning of the revolution. The militia and the men of capital, came forward with alacrity. The women, with Martha Washington at their head, formed an industrious society, to make clothing for the soldiers. All seemed ready to contribute, in such ways as they could, to the common cause.

Renewal of patriotism.

The wife of the commander.

11. At this period, La Fayette, who, by leave of Congress had visited France, returned with the cheering intelligence, that a considerable body of French troops had embarked for America. The fleet soon arrived, bearing 6,000 soldiers, under the command of the Count de Rochambeau. To prevent contention, it was arranged that Gen. Washington should be the

La Fayette returns.

July 10.  
A Fr. squadron arrives.

---

7. Was the winter of 1779-80 severe? What was done in New Jersey by the Hessians? — 8. How were the men of the south treated? What did they say? — 9. What was the conduct of the women of the south? — 10. How did the same spirit manifest itself throughout the nation — 11. At what time did the French squadron arrive? What number of troops came over? Who commanded the French troops? Who commanded the whole allied army?

P'T. III. commander-in-chief of all the forces, both French and American.

P'D. II.  
CH. VIII.

1780.

Partisan  
officers  
and men.

Sumpter  
defeats  
the Br. at  
Hanging  
Rock.

Baron de  
Kalb en-  
ters N.  
C. with a  
force,  
and is  
joined by  
Gates.

He is  
joined by  
many.

Aug. 16.  
Am. de-  
feated at  
Camden.  
Am. loss,  
2000.  
Br. loss,  
324.

Death of  
de Kalb.

12. The insolence of the British troops had aroused the people of North and South Carolina. Among the partisan officers, who headed the resolute parties which were formed, none rendered such distinguished services as Cols. Sumpter and Marion. Their men were such as were contented to serve their country, half-clothed, half-fed, and half-armed, rather than submit to lose the rights of freemen. Frequent skirmishes with the British, at length, furnished muskets and cartridges; and Col. Sumpter, whose numbers now amounted to 600 men, assaulted the strong post of Rocky Mount, where he was repulsed; he then attacked, and destroyed a British regiment at Hanging Rock.

13. A few regular troops, under the command of the Baron de Kalb, had been sent from Maryland to the defense of Carolina. At Deep River they were joined, on the 25th of July, by Gen. Gates, who had been appointed to the command of the southern army. He advanced towards South Carolina with a force, now amounting to about 4,000 men. Multitudes flocked to join Gates, among whom were whole companies, which had been levied for the service of the king.

14. Lord Rawdon, who had the command of the British forces of Carolina, had concentrated them at Camden, where he was joined by Cornwallis. The hostile armies, each making an attempt to surprise the other, met in the darkness of night. Waiting, by mutual consent, for the dawn, they drew up their men for the fight. The American militia fled, and the regulars could not sustain the unequal strife. Gen. Gregory was killed in this disastrous and bloody battle; the Baron de Kalb was mortally wounded. All theartil-

12. What distinguished partisan officers appeared at the south? What kind of men composed their parties? Who was successful at Hanging Rock?—13. Who was sent from Maryland? Who joined him? How large was the southern army? How was the army further enlarged?—14. Where and under whom were the British forces? Describe the meeting of the armies—the arrangements of the generals? Describe the battle of Camden. When did it occur? What was the loss?

lery, baggage, and stores, fell into the hands of the enemy. P'T. III.

15. After this disastrous defeat, Gen. Gates retreated to North Carolina, leaving the British triumphant in the south. Col. Sumpter, on learning the defeat of Gates, retired with 300 men to North Carolina. Tarleton, with his legion, surprised him on the banks of Fishing Creek. Sumpter, with a few of his men, escaped; but most of them were taken by Tarleton, and put to the sword. Marion, who about this time was promoted to the rank of brigadier general, still kept the field. P'D. II.  
CH. IX.  
1780.  
Aug. 18.  
Tarleton  
defeats  
Sumpter  
at Fish-  
ing  
Creek.  
General  
Marion.

## CHAPTER IX.

### Arnold's Treason.

1. ARNOLD did not fully recover from the wounds which he received in the battle of Saratoga. Not being able to take the field, he was, by his own request, made commandant of Philadelphia. Here, he indulged in high play, and extravagance of living; by which he expended more than his income. When he found that this was the case, had he possessed the good sense and moral courage to retrench his expenses, and give up the vicious habit of gaming, much disgrace and suffering might have been spared.

Arnold  
becomes  
extrava-  
gant.

2. But instead of this, he kept on in these expensive courses; and set himself to devise expedients, to get the required money. In presenting his accounts to the government, he made dishonest charges; and when they were challenged, he attempted to carry

Extrava-  
gance  
breeds  
disho-  
nesty.

15. What did General Gates? What officer yet made head in South Carolina? What misfortune did he meet? Who yet kept the field?

CHAPTER IX.—1. Give an account of Arnold? When he found his expenses exceeded his income what ought he to have done? — 2. Into what measures did his extravagance lead him? How were his dishonest accounts received?

**P.T. III.** them through, by bluster and bravado. In the end  
**P.D. II.** these accounts were disallowed; he was tried, for his  
**CH. IX.** disrespectful language and behaviour to those in au-  
**1780.** thority; and by the sentence of a court martial, reprimanded by Washington.

**Revenge and treason follow.** 3. Revenge was now added to avarice; and Arnold addressed a letter to Col. Robinson at New York, opening, by this means, a negotiation with Sir Henry Clinton, in which he sold himself to the British to do their bidding, for the sum of ten thousand pounds, and a commission in the British army.

**The price of himself and his country's blood.** 4. Instigated by Clinton, he sought and obtained of Washington the command of the fortress at West Point. His first measure was to scatter the army, so that it might be easily cut off by the British. Major André, the young and interesting aid-de-camp of Gen. Clinton, had been by him intrusted to plan with Arnold, how the army might be put into the power of the British.

**He obtains the command at West Point.** 5. To concert their last measures, André met Arnold a little below Stony Point. They spent the whole night in conference; and when the day dawned, their arrangements were not all concluded. André was kept in close concealment through the day, and at night he prepared to return. By the entreaties of Arnold, he was prevailed upon to change his uniform for a common dress.

**Major Andre.** 6. It became necessary for him to proceed towards New York by land. He took a horse from Arnold, and a passport, under the name of John Anderson. Having safely passed the American guard, and reached Tarrytown, near the British posts, three soldiers of the militia crossed his way, and he passed on. One of them thought the traveller had something peculiar in his appearance, and called him back. André inquired, "where are you from?" "From below," (intending

**Sept. 21.** They have a personal interview.

**Andre is taken by three soldiers.**

2. What was done by a court martial? — 3. What did Arnold's fierce passions next lead him to? For what did he sell himself? 4. What command did he obtain? Why did he scatter the army? Whom did Sir Henry Clinton authorize to plan with Arnold the delivery of the army? — 5. Relate the circumstances of the interview? — 6. Relate the circumstances of André's seizure?



to be understood from New York,) replied the soldiers. **P'T. III.**  
 "So am I," said the self-betrayed André. The soldiers **P'D. II.**  
 arrested him. **CH. IX.**

7. André plead earnestly to be released, and offered large sums of money ; but the humble patriots spurned the bribe, and were deaf to the entreaty. Their names were John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wert. They searched his person, and found papers in his boots, in the hand-writing of Arnold, which disclosed the treason. They immediately conducted

**1780.**

Paulding  
 Wil-  
 liams,  
 and Van  
 Wert.



André to Col. Jameson, the officer, who commanded the advanced guard, near Peekskill. This officer could not be persuaded that his general was a traitor, and he permitted André to write to him. Arnold seized a boat and escaped.

They  
 take him  
 to the  
 nearest  
 American  
 fort

7. What did André ? What were the names of the three who seized him ? What further happened to Andre and Arnold ?

P.T. III. 8. Washington summoned a court martial, of which  
 P.D. II. Greene and La Fayette were members. André appear-  
 CH. IX. ed before his judges with a noble frankness. He dis-  
 guised no fact, and resorted to no subterfuge. His  
 judges, according to the usages of war, were com-  
 pelled to sentence him to death as a spy. He was  
 accordingly led from his prison to the gallows.

Oct. 2.  
 Execu-  
 tion of  
 Andre.

Oct. 7.  
 Defeat of  
 the Br. at  
 King's  
 Moun-  
 tain.  
 Br. loss  
 300.

9. After the battle of Camden, Lord Cornwallis  
 marched into North Carolina. He had sent before  
 him Col. Ferguson with a body of troops. They had  
 committed such shocking outrages, that the people,  
 highly exasperated, had collected in great numbers,  
 under several commanders, the principal of whom  
 were Campbell and Shelby. They attacked Ferguson  
 on a woody eminence, called King's Mountain. He  
 was killed and his party totally defeated.

Cornwal-  
 lis re-  
 treats to  
 S. C.

Affair at  
 Black-  
 stocks.

Dec 2.  
 Gates is  
 super-  
 seded by  
 Greene.

10. This was a severe blow to Cornwallis, and ren-  
 dered his situation in North Carolina precarious.  
 Cols. Sumpter and Marion were on the alert, and his  
 troops were in continual danger of being surprised by  
 these active leaders. He therefore retired to South  
 Carolina, and stationed his army at Winnsborough.

11. Tarleton was sent in pursuit of Sumpter. He  
 attacked him at Blackstocks, but was compelled to  
 retreat. Sumpter being dangerously wounded, his  
 forces were disbanded. Gen. Gates was now super-  
 seded by Gen. Greene. This officer found the army at  
 Charlottetown.

Arnold  
 makes a  
 descent  
 upon  
 Virginia.

12. Gen. Leslie, with 1,500 men, having joined  
 Cornwallis at Winnsborough, his hopes of reducing  
 North Carolina and Virginia were renewed. Arnold,  
 whom the British had made a brigadier-general, had  
 been sent to the Chesapeake. He landed 1600 men in  
 Virginia, and commenced, what now seemed his favo-  
 rite employment, the devastation of his country.

---

8. What course did Washington pursue? What was the fate  
 of Andre?—9. Describe the operations of the British? Who  
 had committed outrages? Who were the leaders of the people?  
 Describe the affair of King's Mountain?—10. Why did Corn-  
 wallis now retire to South Carolina?—11. Give an account of  
 the affair at Blackstocks? By whom was Gates superseded?  
 Where did Green find the army?—12. What can you relate of  
 Arnold?

## CHAPTER X.

Robert Morris.—Revolt of the Pennsylvania line.—Cornwallis at the South.

1. It is scarcely possible to conceive a situation more trying than that of the American Congress. They were striving, not for conquest, but for existence; their powerful foe was in full strength, in the heart of their country; they had great military operations to carry on, but were almost without an army, and wholly without money, as their bills of credit had ceased to be of any value.

P.T. III.

P.D. II.  
CH. X.1780.  
Perplexities of congress.

2. But instead of sinking in despair, they redoubled their exertions. They directed their agents abroad to borrow, if possible, from France, Spain, and Holland. They resorted to taxation, and they determined on introducing thorough reform, and strict economy. They accordingly appointed as treasurer, the excellent Robert Morris, of Philadelphia. By a national bank, to which he obtained the approbation of congress, he contrived to draw out the funds of wealthy individuals; and by borrowing, in the name of the government from this bank, and pledging freely his private credit, he once more put the government in funds. Franklin had obtained from Louis XVI. a gift of six millions of livres; and his guarantee to the States General of Holland, which, on this security, lent to congress the sum of ten millions of livres.

They lay a direct tax to raise money.

Morris founds the first national bank.

Franklin obtains money from France and Holland

3. Before these measures had imparted vigor to the fainting republic, an event occurred which threatened its subversion. The Pennsylvania line, amounting to near 1,500 men, were suffering the extremity of want. A violent tumult broke out on the night of the 1st of January. The soldiers declared that they would march, with arms in their hands, to the hall of congress, and demand justice. It was in vain that their

1781.

Jan. 1.  
Revolt of the Pa. line.

CHAPTER X.—1. What difficulties had congress to encounter? —2. What course did they take? Whom did they make treasurer? What measures did Morris adopt? What had Franklin obtained? —3. Give an account of the mutiny of Jan 1781?

P'T. III. officers attempted to appease them. Their most popular leader, La Fayette, was constrained to quit the camp. Gen. Wayne presented himself boldly among them, with a pistol in his hand, but they menaced his life, and pointed their bayonets, as if to execute their threats.

P'D. II.  
CH. X.

1781.

Jan.

A pacific course advised by Washington and adopted by congress.

Clinton's emissaries hanged.

New Jersey troops revolt and are punished.

4. Sir Henry Clinton, informed of these affairs, sent three American loyalists, to make them the most tempting offers. The commissioners of congress offered them at the same time, the earliest possible payment of arrears, an immediate supply of necessary clothing, and an oblivion of past conduct. The mutineers accepted these proposals; and congress, in due time, fulfilled the conditions. The Pennsylvanians then delivered up the emissaries of Clinton, who were immediately hanged. The troops of New Jersey next erected the standard of revolt. Washington marched against them with so powerful a force, that he compelled them to submit; and chastising their leaders with severity, the army was no longer disturbed by sedition.

Greene separates the southern army into two divisions.

Jan. 17. Battle of the Cowpens.

Br. loss, 800.  
Am. loss, 12 k., 60 wounded

5. Gen. Greene separated the southern army, which consisted of 2,000 men, into two parts; and at the head of one division he encamped at the confluence of Hicks' creek with the Pedee; while Col. Morgan, at the head of the other, moved by his direction into the western part of the state.

6. Cornwallis detached Tarleton, who finding Morgan's division at a place called the Cowpens, attacked with his usual impetuosity. After one of the severest and best fought engagements of the whole war, the British were entirely defeated, with heavy loss.

Morgan pursued by Cornwallis.

7. Cornwallis pursued the victorious party. Each army exerted themselves to reach the fords of the Catawba, before the other. Morgan succeeded; having crossed the river two hours only, when the British

---

3. What was done to overawe, and what to appease the mutineers? — 4. What did Sir H. Clinton? How was the difficulty settled? What was done to Clinton's emissaries? What happened in regard to the troops of New Jersey? — 5. How did Gen. Greene proceed in regard to the southern forces? — 6. Relate the affair of the Cowpens, mentioning the loss? 7. Give an account of the race between the two armies?

appeared on the opposite bank. Night came on, a heavy rain fell, and Cornwallis was obliged to wait three days before the subsiding waters allowed him to pass. Greene here joined Morgan, having left Gen. Huger in command. Another race was begun, from the Catawba to the Yadkin. Again the British commander arrived just as the Americans had crossed, and again the waters rose, so that he could not immediately follow them.

P.T. III.

P.D. II.

CH. XI.

1781.

Another  
race  
from the  
Catawba  
to the  
Yadkin.

8. Gen. Greene marched to Guilford, where he was joined by the forces under Gen. Huger. Cornwallis proceeded to the Dan; intending, by reaching these fords before the Americans, to prevent their communication with Virginia. In this, also, he was disappointed.

Feb. 9.

The two  
divisions  
unite.

9. Greene's army had been augmented to 4,400. He now advanced upon his enemy, and took post at Guilford Court House, about eight miles from the British general. The armies met on the 15th of March. The American regulars fought for an hour and a half, with great bravery, and in some instances forced the British to give way. They were, however, at length compelled to retreat, but it was only step by step, and without breaking their ranks. Cornwallis, after a few days repose, marched towards Wilmington; and from thence into Virginia, to co-operate with Arnold, in subduing that state. Greene proceeded towards Camden in South Carolina.

Mar. 15.

Battle of

Guilford

C. H.

Am. loss,

1,300.

Br. loss,

probably

more.

## CHAPTER XI.

Campaign of 1781.--Battle of Eutaw Springs.--Cornwallis taken.

1. LORD RAWDON, whom Cornwallis had left to command in Carolina, fixed his head-quarters at Cam-

8. Where was General Greene joined by the forces under Huger? Give a further account of the movements of Cornwallis?—9. Give an account of the battle of Guilford Court House. Where did Cornwallis then go? Where did Greene?



P'T. III. den. Gen. Greene advanced to Hobkirk's Hill, within  
P'D. II. a mile of Camden, where he entrenched his army.

CH. XI. Here the Americans carelessly suffered themselves to  
1781. be surprized in the night by Lord Rawdon. By good

Battle of generalship, Greene came near defeating the British;  
Hob- but the advantage in the encounter, was at last with  
kirk's H. the enemy. Greene retired five miles, and encamped.  
loss near-ly 300 on each side.

Rawdon 2. Rawdon however, found his army weakened,  
leaves and the inhabitants, in every direction, rising against  
Camden. him. On the 10th of May he evacuated Camden, and  
May 10. retreated towards Charleston. In two months, most  
of the upper forts of the British, were either abandoned or taken by the Americans. Marion, Sumpter, and Lee, took three of the forts, and 800 prisoners.

Hostilities suspended. 3. Lord Rawdon now established his camp at Orangeburg. Greene pursued him; but finding his position covered by the windings of the Edisto, he bent his march, on the 16th, to the heights which border the Santee. The season proved uncommonly hot and sickly, and the contending armies, by tacit consent suspended their operations... A tragic scene occurred about this time at Charleston, which greatly irritated the Carolinians. Col. Isaac Hayne was executed, without even the form of a trial, by order of Lord Rawdon and Col. Balfour.

Sept. 8. 4. Gen. Greene crossed the Congaree, and descended  
Battle of along its right bank, intending to attack Col. Stuart,  
Eutaw who had succeeded Lord Rawdon in command. This  
Springs. officer fell back upon Eutaw Springs, and thither Gen.  
Br. loss, Greene pursued him. The armies engaged on the  
Am. 600. 8th. The battle of Eutaw Springs, is memorable as being one of the most bloody, and valiantly contested fields of the war; and also for being the last of any note that occurred at the south. Greene's army in the first encounter, routed the British, but they found

---

CHAPTER XI.—1. How were the armies in South Carolina now situated? Give an account of the battle of Hobkirk's Hill? —2. What was Rawdon's situation after the battle? 3. Where did each army now move, and where rest for a season? What measure of the British incensed the Carolinians? —4. Give an account of the movements of the armies? Give an account of the battle which now occurred? Why was the battle of Eutaw Springs memorable?

in their flight a house, and other sheltering objects, where they made a stand and rallied. Greene withdrew, bearing to his camp 500 prisoners. He with his officers received the thanks of Congress. The British no longer dared to keep the open country, but retired to Charleston. The whole of South Carolina and Georgia, except their capitals, was recovered.

5. La Fayette, at the head of 1,200 light infantry, was now dispatched by Washington towards Virginia, while a French fleet from Rhode Island, was sent out to cut off the retreat of Arnold from the Chesapeake. But Clinton sent Admiral Arbuthnot, who fought the French off Cape Henry, and obliged them to return. Clinton sent Gen. Philips, with 2,000 men, to assist Arnold. La Fayette arrived in time to save Richmond; but he witnessed from that place, the conflagration of Manchester, on the opposite bank of the James.

6. Cornwallis went to Petersburg, and was there met by Arnold. He then moved the whole army into the interior of Virginia, hoping to overrun and subjugate the state. He harassed the country by sending out his light troops, especially those under Tarleton. They on one occasion, came near taking prisoner Mr. Jefferson, then governor of the state. But he secreted himself, and escaped.

7. Cornwallis was suddenly recalled to the sea-coast, by an order from Sir Henry Clinton. Fearing that the Americans and French meditated an attack on New York, he had directed Cornwallis to embark 3,000 of his troops for that city. He marched with his army to Portsmouth, where he received counter orders. Clinton having had a reinforcement, he believed he could dispense with further aid; but he ordered Cornwallis to remain upon the coast. This general marched to Yorktown, which he proceeded to fortify.

8. Washington had learned that a French fleet with a large force under the Count de Grasse was to

P.T. III.

P.D. II.  
CH. XI.

1781.

Am. re-  
gain the  
country.La Fay-  
ette sent  
to Va.Mar. 16.  
Naval  
battle.  
Fr. and  
English  
fleets.Man-  
chester  
burned.Corn-  
wallis  
and  
Arnold  
unite.Sir H.  
Clinton  
recalls  
Corn-  
wallis.  
Remands  
his  
order.Aug. 23.  
Corn-  
wallis  
enters  
York-  
town.

4. What was now the condition of the British in South Carolina? — 5.-6. What was done in and near Virginia? — 7. Why was Cornwallis recalled to the sea-coast? Where did he fortify?

8. What fleet did Washington expect?

**P.T. III.** arrive in the Chesapeake. He concerted measures with.  
**P.D. II.** Count Rochambeau, the French commander in the  
**CH. XI.** United States. The allied force was concentrated in  
**1781.** the neighbourhood of New York. Sir Henry Clinton  
 Wash- believed they meant to attack him there. He was sur-  
 ington's grand manoeuvre. prised to learn that Washington had directed their  
 march south, through New Jersey; but supposed it a  
 feint to draw his army from their defenses. The allied  
 forces had gone to take Cornwallis; and had so got  
 the start of Clinton, that he could not now hinder  
 them.

**De** 9. The Count de Grasse, with twenty-five sail of  
**Grasse** the line, entered the mouth of the Chesapeake, only  
**enters** one hour before Washington arrived at the head of  
**and** Elk, and immediately performed the part assigned to  
**blocks** him, by blocking up the mouths of the York and  
**up the** James rivers; thus cutting off all communication be-  
**Chesa-** tween the British at Yorktown and New York. A  
**neake.** French squadron from Rhode Island got safely by the  
 British fleet, and brought the artillery necessary for the  
 siege.

**1781.** 10. Clinton, vainly hoping to make a diversion in  
 favor of Cornwallis, sent the traitor Arnold, lately  
**Sept. 6.** returned from Virginia, to ravage Connecticut. The  
**Fort** garrison of fort Griswold, in Groton, near New Lon-  
**Gris-** don, being attacked, made a resolute defense. At length  
**wold.** they were overpowered. As the British entered, an  
 officer inquired, "who commands this fort?" "I did,"  
**The gar-** said Col. Ledyard, "but you do now;" and presented  
**rison** his sword. The monster took it, and plunged it in  
**butcher-** his bosom. Scarcely was there a father of a family,  
**ed.** in the little town of Groton, but was that night butcher-  
 ed; and almost its entire population was made  
**Arnold** widows and orphans. New London was then burned.  
**burns N.**  
**London.**

11. By the aid of the French fleet, Washington had

---

8. With whom did Washington take counsel? Where were the allied forces concentrated? What did Clinton suppose? What in the mean time did Washington do?—9. What fleet arrived? Where? When? What did it perform? How were the allies supplied with artillery?—10. What diversion did Clinton attempt to make in favor of Cornwallis? Relate the capture of fort Griswold? What was the traitor's next exploit?

effected the removal of his army and stores from the head of Elk. The whole force amounted to 16,000; 7,000 of whom were French. The allies commenced their works at Yorktown, on the night of the 6th of October. On the 14th, two redoubts in advance of the English main works were taken; the one by the Americans under La Fayette and Col. Hamilton, and the other by the French, under the Baron Viomesnil.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. XI.

Oct. 14.  
Two re-  
doubts  
taken.

1781.

Corn-  
wallis at-  
tempts to  
escape.

12. Cornwallis had confidently expected aid from Clinton, but becoming discouraged, he made an effort to escape, by crossing the river in the night. His army were to embark in three divisions:—a part had already crossed, and landed at Gloucester Point; a part were upon the river; the third division alone had not embarked. The air and the water were calm, and his hopes of escape were high. In a moment, the sky was overcast, and a tempest arose. The very elements seemed armed against him, as if he was checked by an Invisible Power, which watched over the American people. At dawn, the besiegers opened a destructive fire upon him, and he was glad, when the abating tempest allowed, to return to his almost dismantled fortifications.

13. Seeing no hope, the general on the 17th, sent a flag to Washington, and the terms of surrender were immediately agreed on. A sloop, laden with such persons as Cornwallis selected, was to be allowed to pass, without search or visit, to New York. The whole remaining British force was to be surrendered to the allies; the land army, with its munitions, to the Americans; the marine, to the French.

October  
17 to 19  
Number  
surren-  
dered  
7,000.  
Cannon  
60.  
To the  
French  
2 frigates  
20 trans-  
ports.

14. This event caused a burst of joy throughout America. Nor did the people, or the civil rulers, amidst the honors, which were showered upon the

Rejoic-  
ings,  
public  
and  
devout.

---

11. How was Washington enabled to remove his army and stores? What was the number of the combined army? What was done, and by whom, on the night of the 14th? — 12. What reflections might Cornwallis naturally make? — 13. What step did Cornwallis now take? What were the most important of the terms of surrender? What was surrendered to the Americans? What to the French? How did this surrender affect the Americans?

P'T. III. American and French commanders, forget to acknowledge their supreme obligation, to the GREAT COMMANDER and RULER, of armies, and of nations.

1781.

La Fayette returns to France.

15. Gen. La Fayette, who had sought America in her adversity, left her as soon as prosperity dawned upon her fortunes. He embarked about this time for France; leaving deep, in the hearts of a grateful people, the remembrance of his virtues and his services.

## CHAPTER XII.

Vermont.—Measures of Peace.—Fears and discontents of the Army happily quieted.

Situation of Vermont.

1. VERMONT was, at this period, an independent nation. Its territory was first settled by grants from New Hampshire, and afterwards decided, by the English government, to belong to New York; and had that state given quiet possession of the soil to those individuals who had purchased, and cultivated farms under New Hampshire, Vermont would now have been a part of its territory. But the attempt having been made to eject those settlers by force, they forcibly resisted. The inhabitants met in convention, in 1777, and declared the New Hampshire grants to be an independent state, under the title of "New Connecticut, alias Vermont;" the first appellation, and the ungraceful "alias," being afterwards dropped. Their affairs were, at first, managed by several of the leading men, called "a Council of Safety." Their first legislature met at Windsor, in March, 1778.

1777. Declares itself independent.

Exhaustion of the U. S.

2. It was most fortunate for America that the result of the last campaign had been favorable; for such was

11. What did they remember to acknowledge? — 15. Where was now the most generous of the defenders of America?

CHAPTER XII.—1. What was Vermont? Under what state had the first settlements been made? What state afterwards laid claims to the settlements? How did the settlers proceed? By whom were their affairs first managed?



the extreme poverty of the government, that it seems impossible that another could have been sustained. The several state governments wholly failed of paying their taxes; alleging the utter inability of the people to meet further taxation.

3. The people of England had also felt very severely their great expenses; and on hearing the disasters which had attended their arms, they murmured against the government for continuing the war. The house of commons, moved by this expression of feeling, as well as by the eloquent speeches of Gen. Conway, and others, voted, "that they should consider as enemies to his majesty and their country, all who should advise, or attempt, a further prosecution of offensive war on the continent of America."

Feb.  
Parliament  
takes  
measures  
for  
peace.

4. To be ready for overtures of peace, congress appointed as their agents four distinguished men, already in Europe,—Dr. Franklin, John Adams, John Jay, and Henry Laurens. Mr. Adams procured, from the states of Holland, on the 19th of April, the recognition of American Independence. On the 8th of October, he obtained a treaty of amity and commerce; and, not long after, a loan of money; to the great relief of his exhausted country.

Franklin,  
Adams,  
Jay, and  
Laurens,  
to treat  
for  
peace.  
April 19.  
Holland  
recognises  
Am. independence.

5. On the 20th of January, 1783, preliminary articles of peace were signed at Versailles. The definitive treaty was deferred until the adjustment of affairs between England and France, and was not signed until the 3d of September, 1783. The terms granted to the Americans by this treaty, in respect to the extent of territory, and right to the fisheries, were equal to their most sanguine expectations. It was a treaty which made America, independent, in fact, as well as in name.

1783.  
Sept. 3.  
Definitive  
treaty is  
signed.

---

2. What was the condition of the United States at the close of the war? — 3. What was the state of public feeling in England? What resolution passed in parliament? — 4. What men were chosen by congress? For what purpose? What was procured from Holland? By whom? — 5. When were the preliminaries of peace signed, and where? What was deferred? Till what time? What can be said of the terms of the treaty as regards the United States?

P.T. III. 6. The officers of the army feared, that if they  
 P.D. II. should disband, themselves and their services would  
 CH. XII. be forgotten. Some were ambitious; and thought that  
 Discon- if a monarchy should succeed, they might become  
 tents among dukes or earls. A letter was addressed by one of  
 the offi- these to Washington, endeavouring, in a smooth  
 cers. and artful strain, to persuade him, that a monarchy was  
 A rebuke. the most desirable form of government, and himself a  
 suitable man for king. Washington replied, that "he  
 viewed such ideas with abhorrence, and must reprehend  
 them with severity."

1783. 7. But the discontents of the army remained; and  
 Washington repeatedly urged congress to attend to  
 their just claims. While the army were lying at New-  
 burg, an anonymous paper, able, but seditious, was cir-  
 culated. The advice it contained, was that the officers  
 should cease to *petition* congress, but march with  
 arms in their hands, and *demand* justice. Washing-  
 ton had foreseen such a crisis, and had remained with  
 the army. His monitory voice was heard, as he ex-  
 hortated the officers not to tarnish their fame, pure and  
 bright as it was; but to believe and trust, that their  
 country would yet be grateful for their devotion and  
 services. To congress, Washington wrote; and in the  
 most forcible language, presented the claims, and great  
 merits, of those, who had breasted the common danger,  
 and gained for all, the inestimable prize.

8. Congress used their utmost exertions to meet  
 the exigency. They commuted the half-pay, which  
 had been pledged, for a sum equal to five years' full  
 pay. The officers were satisfied, and the army peace-  
 ably disbanded. . . . On the 19th of April, just eight  
 years from the battle of Lexington, the joyful cer-  
 tainty of peace was proclaimed from head-quarters to  
 the American army. On the 25th of November, the

---

6. What fears had the officers of the army? What ambitious project had some of them? What letter was addressed to Washington? How did it affect his mind? — 7. Give a further account of the discontents of the army? What paper was circulated? What did it propose? How did Washington meet this crisis? To what did he exhort the officers? How did he write? — 8. What did congress? What did then the officers? What happened on the 19th of April? What on the 25th of November?

British troops evacuated New York, and a detachment entered it from the army of the new Republic. P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. XIII.

9. On the 4th of December, Washington parted from his officers at New York. A day was appointed at Annapolis, where Congress were sitting, and in the presence of a large and deeply affected audience, he resigned his offices, and commending his country to the protection of God, retired to Mount Vernon, followed by the benedictions of America, and the admiration of the world. **1783.**  
Dec. 23  
Washington  
resigns.

## CHAPTER XIII.

Depression subsequent to the war.—Shays' Rebellion.—  
Constitution formed.

1. At the close of the war, heavy debts encumbered the general and state governments. Heavy burdens were necessarily laid upon the people, who were so poor as to be often nearly destitute of the necessities of life. The distress of the country at length produced insurrections. **1784.**  
Distresses, discontents and insurrections.

2. In August, nearly 1500 insurgents assembled under arms at Northampton. They took possession of the court-house, to prevent the sittings of the court, and the issuing of executions. The next month a similar scene was acted at Worcester. The leader was Daniel Shays. At the head of 300 men he marched into Springfield, and barred the court-house against the supreme court. Gen. Shepard at the head of 1200 men, was sent to Springfield; where the multitude refusing to lay down their arms, he fired upon them, and killed three men. The rioters fell into confusion, and soon dispersed. Fourteen only were **1787.**  
'Shay's' rebellion  
Gen. Lincoln sends Gen. Shepard to Springfield.

9. What occurred on the 4th of Dec. ? On the 23rd ?

CHAPTER XIII.—1. What was the condition of the country ? What was the consequence of this extreme depression ? — 2. Relate the circumstances of Shay's rebellion. How was it quelled ? How was the affair finally disposed of ?

P.T. III. sentenced to death, and these were afterwards pardoned.

P.D. II.  
CH. XIII.

Defects  
in the  
govern-  
ment.

Articles  
of confe-  
deration.

1786.

Dele-  
gates  
meet  
from five  
states.

3. The articles of confederation, although they had served, during the pressure of danger, to keep the several parts of the nation together, were now found inadequate. Congress had no authority *to enforce* its ordinances; and now, that the pressure of public danger was removed, they were contemned and disregarded. A convention of delegates, from five of the middle states, met at Annapolis, in 1786, who came to the conclusion, that a thorough reform of the existing government, would alone be effectual for the welfare of the country; and Congress passed a resolution, recommending a general convention of delegates, to be holden at Philadelphia.

1787.

Consti-  
tution  
framed  
at Phila.

Honest  
differ-  
ence of  
opinion.

4. In May, 1787, the convention met, and instead of amending the articles of confederation, they proceeded to form a new constitution. Their debates were long and arduous. Much honest difference of opinion existed; in particular, where the strength of the new government came in question. On the one hand it was contended, that, if the government was made too weak, a state of anarchy, and consequent revolution, would ensue; on the other, that if it were made too strong, America would lose those blessings of liberty, which she had bled to obtain; and only make an exchange of foreign, for domestic oppression. Those in favor of holding the states strongly united, were called, at this time federalists, and their opponents, anti-federalists.

Points in  
the slave  
question  
agitated  
and com-  
promised

5. Other points of dispute arose, which were still more dangerous, because they divided parties by geographical lines. The most difficult of these, regarded the representation, in congress, of the slave-holding

3. Why was the government, as it then existed, found inadequate? Where did a convention meet? At what conclusion did they arrive? What resolution was passed by congress?—

4. What important assemblage convened in May, 1787? What did they proceed to do? In what respect was there an honest difference of opinion in the minds of the framers of the constitution? What was maintained by each side? Who were called federalists, and who anti-federalists?—5. What other point of dispute was there?

states. The slaves were at length allowed to be reckoned, in settling the quota of representatives, as equal to three-fifths of an equal number of free white inhabitants. That these great difficulties were compromised, holds up this convention, as an example to future times, of the triumph of strong patriotism and honest zeal for the public welfare, over party feeling and sectional prejudice.

6. The supreme authority, in whose name the constitution is promulgated, is that of "the people of the United States;" the objects for which they ordain and establish, and bind themselves to obey its precepts, are "to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to themselves and their posterity."

Its mandates from "the people."

Its objects.

7. The legislative power of the Federal Union, is vested in a senate and house of representatives, the latter to be chosen for two years, by electors qualified to choose representatives to the state legislatures;—each to have been for seven years an inhabitant of the United States, and at least twenty-five years of age. Representatives are to be appointed in each state, according to the number of the inhabitants; though there must never be more than one representative to thirty thousand people. Lest the congress should become too numerous, the apportionment is varied; once in ten years; or after the taking of each census.

The people represented by the lower house.

8. The senate is composed of two members from each state, to be chosen by the state legislatures. The term of service is six years; but the first senate was to be so chosen, that one-third of the members had two years to remain in office, another four, and another six; so that, thereafter, no more than one-third of the senate should be composed of new members.

The states represented by the senate.

---

5. How was it disposed of? What may we say of this convention?—6. What is the supreme authority in which the constitution is promulgated? What are the objects for which it was established?—7. In what is the legislative power vested? How are representatives chosen—and for what time? By whom? How are they apportioned?—8. Of how many members is the senate composed?



P'T. III. A senator must have been an inhabitant of the country nine years, and be not less than thirty years of age.

P'D. II.  
CH. XIII.

Presiding  
officers.

Time.

9. The house of representatives choose their presiding officer, who is called the speaker. The senate are presided over by the vice-president of the United States. Congress must sit as often as once a year, and the ordinary sessions commence on the first Monday in December.

The representatives  
have the  
purse.

The executive  
the  
sword.

The judicial  
power.

Impeachment.

10. All bills for raising a revenue must originate in the house of representatives. While the executive bears the public sword, the branch nearest the people carries the purse. . . . The executive power is vested in a president and vice-president; each chosen for a term of four years; each to be a native born citizen, and to have attained the age of thirty-five. The president is commander-in-chief of the army and navy when in actual service. With the consent of two-thirds of the senate, he is vested with the power to make treaties, to appoint ambassadors, judges of the supreme court, and many other officers.

11. The judicial power is vested in one supreme court, and such other courts as congress may establish. The judges retain their offices during good behaviour. They as well as the president and vice-president, may be impeached by the house of representatives, and tried by the senate.

---

8. What their term of office? — 9. Who chooses the presiding officer of the house of representatives? What is he called? Who is the presiding officer of the senate? How often must they sit? — 10. What bills must originate in the house of representatives? Who bears the sword? Who the purse? Where is the executive power vested? What is requisite to make a person eligible? What power has the president? How are treaties made? — 11. Where is the judicial power vested? By whom are impeachments made? Who tries them?

---

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point out its place on the chronographer. The Americans were defeated at the battle of Long Island, August 27th, 1776. They defeat the Hessians at Trenton, December 27th, 1776, and the British at Princeton, January 3d, 1777. Point out the places of these events on the chronographer. Dr. Franklin was sent on a mission to France, and

Lafayette offered his services to Congress, in 1777. Locate <sup>P.T. III</sup> these events. Burgoyne was defeated at Saratoga, October <sup>P.D. II</sup> 7th, and surrendered to General Gates, October 17th, 1777. Point to the place of these events.

The winter of 1777-78, was the time when the American army suffered so terribly at Valley Forge. Point out the places of these dates. France made a treaty with the United States, in 1778. In June the same year occurred the massacre of Wyoming. Locate these events. The terrible battle at Savannah, and the naval victory of Paul Jones, occurred in 1779. Point out the place of this year.

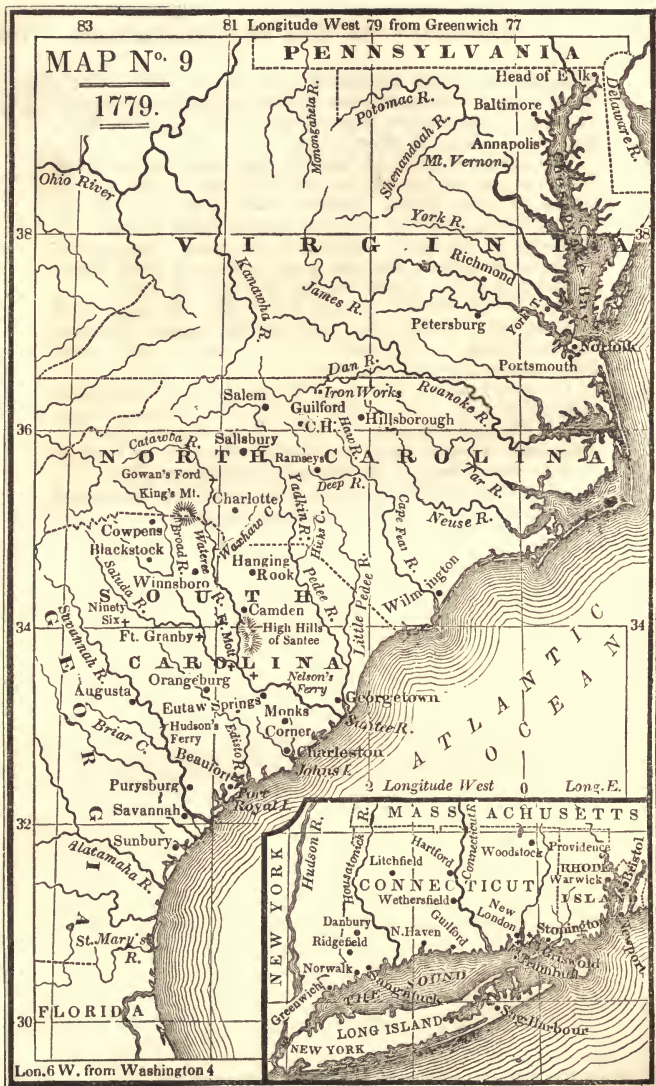
The year of Arnold's treason was 1780. He burns New London, 1781. Point to the places of these dates. Cornwallis surrenders at Yorktown, October 17th to 19th, 1781. Point out the place of this date.

The treaty of peace was signed Sept. 3d, and Washington resigned Dec. 23, 1783. Point out the place of these events. Shay's rebellion occurred in 1787. Point out the place of that year. At what epoch does this period terminate? Mention its date. Point to its place on the chronographer.

Let the teacher often promiscuously select other dates, and cause them to be located on the chronographer.

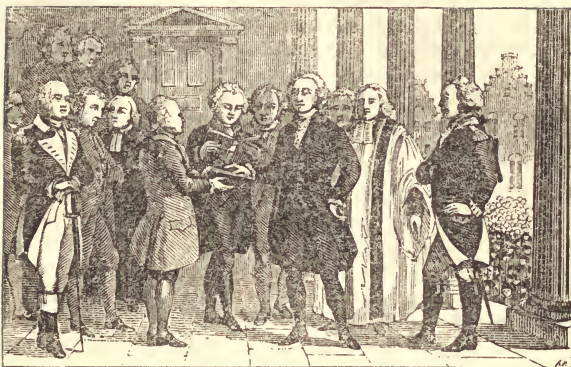
## MAP N<sup>o</sup>. 9

1779.



# PART IV.

FROM 1789 TO 1841.



Washington's Inauguration.

## PERIOD I.

FROM  
THE FINAL ADOPTION OF { 1789, } THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION,  
TO  
THE PURCHASE { 1803. } OF LOUISIANA.

### CHAPTER 1.

Organization of the new Government.—The Funding System.—  
Party lines strongly drawn.

1. WHEN Washington retired at the close of the war, he had fully intended to pass the residue of his days in domestic retirement. The first summons, which he received to quit his delightful retreat, was when the legislature of Virginia chose him first delegate to the convention, which framed the constitution. With reluctance he consented to the pleas of friendship, and the call of public duty. He was made president of the convention by a unanimous vote.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. I.  
CH. I.

1787.

Washington  
made  
president of  
the convention.

CHAPTER I.—1. What had been Washington's intention when he left the army? What was the first time he was induced to violate it? Of what body was he made president? How?

**P<sup>T</sup>. IV.** 2. The constitution being adopted, the universal  
**P<sup>R</sup>. D. I.** voice of the nation called him forth, to organize the  
**CH. I.** government. A special messenger from the president  
 of congress, brought him the official intelligence of  
 his election, and in two days he set out for New York,  
 where congress first convened.

Unani-  
mously  
elected  
president.

**1789.**

April 30.  
Is inau-  
gurated  
at N. Y.

3. The ceremony of his inauguration was witness-  
 ed, with inexpressible joy. He made an address to  
 congress, in which he offered his "fervent supplica-  
 tions to the Almighty Being, whose providential aid  
 can supply every human defect, that his benediction  
 would consecrate to the liberties and happiness of the  
 people of the United States, a government instituted by  
 themselves; and would enable every officer to execute  
 with success, the functions allotted to his charge."

Congress  
lay du-  
ties on  
mer-  
chandise  
and ton-  
nage.

The first  
secretar-  
ies, Jef-  
ferson,  
Hamilton  
and  
Knox.

4. Congress made it their first object to establish  
 a revenue, sufficient for the support of government,  
 and for the discharge of the debt, contracted during  
 the revolutionary war. For this purpose, they laid  
 duties on the importation of merchandise, and on the  
 tonnage of vessels. . . . The first appointed under the  
 constitution as the heads of departments, were, Thomas  
 Jefferson, secretary of state, Alexander Hamilton of  
 the treasury, and General Knox of the department of  
 war. The small navy was assigned to the care of the  
 latter.

Consti-  
tution  
amended

5. During this session it was proposed to amend the  
 constitution. Congress agreed upon twelve new arti-  
 cles, which were submitted to the respective state  
 legislatures; and being approved by three-fourths of  
 these bodies, they became a part of that instrument.

**1790.**

Hamil-  
ton's  
funding  
system.

6. Mr. Hamilton, early in the second session brought  
 forward his celebrated report, which was drawn up  
 with a masterly hand. He showed the importance of  
 public credit, and proposed, assuming or funding, not  
 only the public debt, amounting to fifty-four millions

2. By what vote was he elected president of the U. S.? Where  
 did Congress at this time meet? Did their messenger wait long  
 for Washington? — 3. Give some account of his inauguration? —  
 4. What did Congress make their first object? Who were  
 made heads of departments? — 5. What was done respecting  
 the constitution? — 6. Give an account of Mr. Hamilton's sys-  
 tem of funding the public debts?



of dollars, but also the state debts, estimated at twenty-five millions; and of making permanent provision for the payment of the interest, by imposing taxes on certain articles of luxury, and on spirits distilled within the United States.

P'T. IV.  
P'D. I.  
CH. I.

7. The debates on this report produced an irritation of feeling, which, in the event, shook the foundation of the government; and they may fairly be said, to be the origin of that violent party spirit, which, under the names of federalists and republicans, for thirty years arrayed one part of the American community against the other. Mr. Hamilton's plan was finally adopted; and at the same time, a law passed fixing the seat of government where it now is. The debt funded, amounted to a little more than seventy-five millions of dollars; upon a part of which, an interest of three per cent. was paid, and on the remainder, six per cent.

Heated  
debates  
and  
party  
animosi-  
ties.

8. Rhode Island had refused to send delegates to the convention, which formed the constitution; and neither that state, or North Carolina, had accepted it at the time of its adoption. North Carolina acceded to it in November, 1789; Rhode Island in May, 1790. ... An act was passed, accepting the cession of the claims of North Carolina to a district, west of that state; and a territorial government was established by congress, under the title of "the Territory of the United States, south of the Ohio."

N. C.  
and R. I.  
accede to  
the con-  
stitution.

9. Kentucky was separated from Virginia, and also erected into an independent government, receiving its name from its principal river. ... A national bank was, during this session, recommended by Mr. Hamilton, and passed through congress, although it met a violent opposition from the republican party. After deliberate investigation, the president was convinced of its constitutionality and utility, and gave it his signature.

A na-  
tional  
bank es-  
tablish-  
ed.

---

7. What effect did its introduction produce in congress? Was it adopted? What other law passed at the same time?—8. What two states at first refused to adopt the constitution? When did they agree to it? What territory was taken from N. C.?—9. What was done respecting a national bank?

P'T. IV. The bank was established at Philadelphia, with a capital of ten millions of dollars.

P'D. I.  
CH. II.

Feb. 18. Vermont admitted to the union. ... In 1791, the first census of the United States was completed. The number of inhabitants was 3,929,000, of whom, 695,000 were slaves. The revenue amounted to 4,771,000 dollars, the exports to 19,000,000, and the imports to about 20,000,000 ... In October, the second congress apportioned the number of representatives, according to the census. After much disagreement, they fixed the ratio at one for every thirty-three thousand inhabitants

Oct.  
Number of representatives, 1 to 33,000.

## CHAPTER II.

The Moravians.—The Indians of the North West.

Shock-  
ing dis-  
orders.

1767.  
A mis-  
sion on  
the Alle-  
ghany  
river.

1. AFTER Pontiac's treacheries, the Moravian converts, in danger of perishing from the indiscriminate fury of the whites, went in a body to Philadelphia, and were sheltered by the governor in a prison; yet, even there, some of them were murdered. Soon after this, Zeisberger led a party, who fixed, for a time, on the Alleghany river. The French war caused them to remove; and they next settled on the banks of the Ohio, near Beaver Creek. A still more inviting country being offered them by the chiefs of the Delawares, they removed to the banks of the Muskingum. Here they had several flourishing towns, among which were Leichtenau and Salem.

2. But the missionaries were endangered by the jealousy of the chiefs, which operated now, as in the time of Elliot. The most powerful man of the Dela-

10. In what year was Vermont admitted to the Union? What in 1790 was the number of inhabitants? The amount of revenue? Of exports? Of imports? What the ratio of apportionment.

CHAPTER II.—1. What happened to some of the Moravian converts in Philadelphia? What progress did the missionaries afterwards make?

wares, Capt. White-Eyes, a person of great and good qualities, was, however, convinced of the importance of civilization. He saw how much better off were the Europeans, and even the christian Indians, than were his own people. Christianity, he regarded as the principal cause of the great difference. The constancy and talents of this chief sustained the missionaries against alarming opposition, and brought the nation to favour them. "Let us," said one aged chief to another, "do a good work before we depart, and leave a testimony to our children." The chiefs solemnly determined in council, and promulgated the decree, that the Delawares, as a nation, would receive the word of God. Great prosperity followed. Zeisberger had made a spelling-book of the Delaware tongue, and was gathering the children into schools.

P.T. IV.

P.D. I.  
CH. II.

1774.

White-  
Eyes  
takes a  
noble  
stand.

3. The war of the revolution came on, and the missionaries and their converts, were, with their principles of peace, placed in situations of the utmost difficulty. At length, the unconverted Indians could be restrained no longer. They would fight, and were determined that the Moravian converts should take arms also. Because the missionaries hindered them, they forced them away. Hundreds of their converts followed them to a barren spot on the Sandusky river. Winter came on, and they suffered from hunger and cold.

1776.

Oct.  
Cruel  
hard-  
ships on  
the San-  
dusky.

4. A party of their Indian brethren and sisters, went back to the Muskingum, to gather the corn from their deserted fields. This party consisted of ninety-eight persons. They were at Lichtenau and Salem. An armed party of American marauders, possessed with the superstitious belief, that the Indians, like the Canaanites of old, were all to be destroyed by the chosen race, which, in their opinion, were themselves, hearing of this party, came upon them unawares; and, by fraud and religious pretences, disarmed and made them prisoners. They were then put to a cruel death; for

1782.

A party  
go back  
to the  
Muskin-  
gum

2. Relate circumstantially what happened among the Delawares? — 3. What changes did the war of the revolution cause among the Moravians and their converts? — 4. What plan was attempted by a party of 98 of the Indian converts?

P'T. IV. which these innocents prepared, by a night spent in  
 P'D. I. prayer and praise. Two lads, alone escaped the mas-  
 CH. II. sacre.

**1781.** 5. The missionaries were forcibly taken, and carried to Detroit. They gathered their faithful converts again, on the Huron River. After the peace, the savage tribes being still hostile, they went towards their flourishing settlements in Pennsylvania. They had baptized 720 of the Indians.

Har-  
mar's  
defeat.

6. After the treaty with Great Britain, that nation refused to deliver up Detroit and other posts in the western country; alleging that the Americans had not fulfilled certain stipulations of the treaty. These posts became the rallying points of the combined savage tribes, who under Michikiniqua, the chief of the Miamies, called "the Little Turtle," now ravaged the frontiers of the United States. Pacific arrangements were attempted by the president, but without effect. On their failure, Gen. Harmar was sent from Fort Washington on the site of Cincinnati, with a force amounting to 1,400 men. In an engagement near Chilicothe, he was defeated with loss.

**1792.** 7. Gen. St. Clair, in October of the following year, with 1,400 men, marched into the wilderness, near to the Miami villages. He and his officers were asleep, while at dead of night the savage chieftains assembled in council. At dawn, the terrified Americans were roused by the war-whoop. The carnage was indescribable. Not more than one-quarter of the Americans escaped, and their whole camp and artillery, fell into the hands of the savages.

Oct.  
St.  
Clair's  
defeat.

A mint.

8. Kentucky was admitted to the Union in 1792. A mint was also established by congress; and the division and value of the money, to be used throughout the country, was regulated by statute, and called "Federal money." . . . Gen. Washington was again elected

**1793.**  
Wash-  
ington's  
2d inau-  
guration.

---

4. What wicked transaction is here related? — 5. What further account is given of the Moravians? — 6. What did the British refuse to do after the peace? What did these forts become? What party was first defeated by the Indians? Where? — 7. Give an account of St. Clair's defeat? — 8. What was done in 1792?

president, and in March, 1793, was inaugurated. John P'T. IV.  
Adams was also re-elected vice-president.

9. The party-spirit, which had already agitated the P'D. I.  
whole Union, raged with increased violence. The CH. II.  
democratic or republican party, were charged by the 1793.  
federalists with abetting all the crimes of the French  
revolutionists, who had just beheaded their king; while  
the federal party were accused by the democratic, of  
being in favour of monarchical principles, and under  
the influence of Great Britain.

10. Information was received of the declaration of  
war by France, against Great Britain and Holland.  
Washington was an American, and he did not choose  
to involve his country in the contests of Europe. He April 22  
accordingly, with the unanimous advice of his cabinet, Wash-  
issued a proclamation of neutrality. This measure ington's  
contributed, in a great degree, to the prosperity of neu-  
America; whose proper maxim was, and is, "Friend- tality.  
ship with all, entangling alliances with none."

11. M. Genet, who was appointed by the French re- April.  
public, arrived in Charleston, S. C. The flattering Arrival  
reception he met with, induced him to take the of Genet.  
presumptuous measure of attempting to induce the Congress  
American people to embark in the cause of France, what- sustain  
ever might be the determination of their government. the exe-  
This turned many against him. The conduct of the cutive.  
administration towards M. Genet was approved by Feb. 1.  
congress. France, at the request of the president, 1794.  
annulled his powers, and he was succeeded by Mr. Fauchet  
Fauchet. arrives.

12. At Pittsburg a meeting of citizens was held, and Insur-  
an opposition to the law of congress, laying a duty on rection  
distilled spirits, agreed on. The marshal of the district, in Pa.  
was seized by armed men, and compelled to enter into Oct.  
an engagement to refrain from executing the duties of Gov.  
his office; and other public officers were maltreated. Lee sent  
against  
the in-  
surgents.

---

9. What was the state of parties? — 10. With what powers  
was France at war? What course did Washington take? What  
is the proper maxim of America? — 11. What was done by the  
French minister? What part did congress take? By whom was  
Genet succeeded? — 12. Give an account of the whiskey insur-  
rection in Pa.?



**P.T. IV.** The number of the insurgents was calculated at seven thousand. Washington, made requisitions on the governors of New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia, for 15,000 militia. These under command of Gov. Lee of Virginia, marched into the revolted district. Such salutary terror was inspired, that no farther opposition was attempted.

**P.D. I.  
CH. II.**

**1794.** 13. A war between the United States and England was, at this time apprehended. The Americans were accused of preventing the loyalists from regaining possession of their estates, and British subjects from recovering debts, made before the war. The Americans complained of the arrogant pretensions of England, in regard to navigating the sea; and also, that the military posts, of the western wilderness, were still retained, contrary to the treaty; and that the Indians were, by their garrisons, incited to make incursions upon the frontier settlements, and sheltered in the forts, as they returned from midnight burning and murder.

Mutual  
com-  
plaints  
of the  
British  
and  
Ameri-  
cans.

April.  
Mr. Jay  
sent to  
England.

14. Congress passed bills laying an embargo for thirty days—for erecting fortifications—for raising a provisional army, and for organising the militia. To avert, however, if possible, the calamity of another war, Mr. Jay was sent to England, to negotiate with the British government.

The  
Little  
Turtle's  
opinion  
of  
Wayne.

Wayne's  
victory.  
Aug. 20.

15. Gen. St. Clair was succeeded by Gen. Wayne, to whom the Indians gave the name of the "Black-Snake." Many had forsaken the alliance, and the Little Turtle believing that the Indians would be defeated, would have persuaded them to peace. "We shall not surprise them," said he, "for they have now a chief who never sleeps." But the council overruled his opinion. Wayne attacked, and completely routed the confederacy, near the mouth of the river Au Glaize. The British at the neighbouring fort who had incited the Indians, now refused to shelter them. By this means they lost all influence with them, and the savages made peace.

---

**13.** Why was a war with England apprehended? — **14.** What laws were passed by congress? Who was sent to England? For what? — **15.** Give an account of Gen. Wayne's operations at the west?

16. Mr. Jay, having negotiated a treaty with Great Britain, returned in the spring of 1795. His treaty provided that the posts, which the British had retained, should be given up to the Americans, and compensation made for illegal captures; and that the American government should hold £600,000, in trust for the subjects of Great Britain to whom American citizens were indebted. But it did not prohibit the right of searching merchant vessels, which was claimed by the British.

P'T. IV.

P'D. I.  
CH. II.

Nov. 19.

1794.

Jay's  
treaty  
with G.  
Britain.

17. While the senate were debating with closed doors, a member had given an incorrect copy to a printer. It was circulated with rapidity, and produced great irritation. The senate, after much debate accepted the treaty. The president received addresses from every part of the Union, praying him to withhold his signature; but Washington believing the conditions to be the best which, under existing circumstances, could be obtained, signed it in defiance of popular clamor. . . . Treaties were also made with the western Indians, with Algiers, and with Spain. By the latter, the Mississippi was made the western boundary, and a right to the navigation of the river and to the use of New Orleans as a place of deposit, was secured to the United States. . . . In 1796, Tennessee was admitted to the Union.

Passes  
the se-  
nate, and  
is signed  
by W.

1795.

18. The French government tried various means to flatter and cajole the Americans into aiding them in their European wars; but finding a steady system of neutrality maintained, they began depredating on the American commerce; their cruisers being encouraged in capturing the vessels of the United States.

France.

19. As the period for a new election of the president of the United States approached, Gen. Washington publicly signified his determination to retire to private life. He received addresses from every part

---

16. When did Jay's treaty arrive? What were its provisions? — 17. What happened while the treaty was before the senate? What was the consequence, and what was done in reference to the treaty? What other business was transacted at this time in congress? — 18. What was the conduct of the French? — 19. What determination had Washington made?

**P'T. IV.** of the country, which though expressing regret at the loss of his services, yet congratulated him on the astonishing increase of national wealth and prosperity, **P'D. I.**  
**CH. III.** during the period of his administration over a country, which was more indebted to him, than to any other human being, for its very existence. **1796.**

Wash-  
ington's  
farewell  
address.

20. On retiring Washington published a Farewell Address, in which he called on his countrymen to cherish an immovable attachment to the national union. He recommended the most implicit obedience to the acts of the established government, and reprobated all obstructions to the execution of the laws,—all combinations and associations, with the design to overawe the constituted authorities. Good faith and equal justice should be observed towards all. Honesty, no less in public, than in private affairs, is the best policy. Religion and morality are the pillars of human happiness. These great truths, with others, were taught us, as parting precepts, by our parental friend, whose fame, for wisdom, gathers brightness as time passes on.

### CHAPTER III.

America resents the indignities of France.—Adams's Administration.—Jefferson's.

**1797.**

Mar. 4.  
Adams  
presi-  
dent,  
Jefferson  
vice-pre-  
sident.

Insult  
from  
France.

1. THE party candidates for president, were Thomas Jefferson on the part of the republicans, and John Adams on that of the federalists. Mr. Adams was elected president, and Mr. Jefferson vice-president. . . Mr. Adams received intelligence of an open insult on the part of the French government, now in the hands of the directory. They had desired the American minister to quit France, and determined not to receive another, until the United States had complied with their demands.

20. What can you repeat of Washington's Farewell Address?

CHAPTER III.—1. Who were the candidates of the two parties for president? Who was made president? Who vice-president? In what year? What government treated our republic with insolence?

2. Mr. Adams, to show his desire for peace, notwithstanding this ill usage, appointed three envoys extraordinary to the French republic; but they, instead of being openly received, were privately beset with intrigues; the object of which, was to make them pay money, to bribe the persons in power. These shameful proposals were made in letters signed X. Y. and Z. . . Nothing seemed now to remain but war. An army was provided for by Congress, and Washington appointed to the command. Capt. Truxton of the American frigate *Constellation*, fought and captured the French frigate *L'Insurgente*.

P'T. IV.

P'D. I.  
CH. III.Pinkney,  
Marshall  
and  
Gerry

3. The French government at length became convinced, that, although the Americans might choose to quarrel among themselves, yet they would not suffer foreign interference; and they made overtures for a renewal of negotiations. Mr. Adams promptly met them, by appointing three envoys to Paris. They found the government in the hands of Napoleon Buonaparte. With him they amicably adjusted all disputes.

1800.

Buona-  
parte  
head of  
the con-  
sulate.Sept. 30.  
Treaty  
made.

4. Washington calmly and peacefully expired at Mount Vernon, in the sixty-eighth year of his age. His history is that of his country, during the period of his public services. What may be said of many of the worthies of the revolution, may be eminently said of him; in no instance has he rendered his country a more important service, than in leaving to her future sons, his great and good example.

1799.

Dec. 14.  
Death of  
Wash-  
ington.

5. Suitable buildings having been erected, the seat of government, agreeably to the law passed by congress in 1790, was transferred from Philadelphia to the city of Washington. A territory, ten miles square, in which it was to be permanently located, had been ceded to the general government, by the states of Virginia and Maryland; and received the name of "the

1800.

Nov.  
Seat of  
govern-  
ment  
trans-  
ferred to  
Wash-  
ington.

- 
2. Give some account of the X. Y. and Z. mission as it was called? What was done in reference to the expected war? —  
 3. Of what did the French government become convinced? Who was at the head of the French government, and what was done?  
 — 4. What interesting event is next related? — 5. What transfer was now made?

P.T. IV. District of Columbia." . . . Mississippi, and a part of  
 P.D. I. the northwest territory, called Indiana, were this year  
 CH. III. made territories with separate governments.

1800.

Sedition  
and alien  
laws.

6. The time had now arrived for electing a president. It was at this period, that the feuds and animosities of the federal and republican parties were at their greatest height. Mr. Adams had lost the people's favour by one of those changes of popular sentiment which public men often experience. He had sanctioned two acts which were regarded as hostile to the constitution; "the Alien Law," which authorised the president to order any alien, whom he should judge dangerous to the peace and liberty of the country to depart from the United States, on pain of imprisonment. and another, called the "Sedition Law," which imposed a heavy fine, and imprisonment for years, upon such as should "write, print, utter, publish, &c, any false, scandalous, and malicious writing against the government of the United States, or either house of congress of the United States, or the president, &c." Under the sedition law, several persons were actually imprisoned.

Jefferson  
and  
Burr.

7. By the constitution, as it then existed, each elector voted for two men, without designating which was to be president. He who was found to have the greatest number of votes, was to be president, and the second on the list, vice-president. The republican electors, who had a very considerable majority over the federal, gave their votes, to a man, for Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr; intending that Jefferson should be president. They had thus an equal number of votes; and the election must, according to the constitution, be decided by the house of representatives.

8. The federalists considered that they might yet defeat their opponents; and probably believing that they should find a grateful friend in Col. Burr, they determined, if possible, to raise him to the presidency

---

6. What two unpopular laws had been passed? — 7. How did each elector then vote for president and vice-president? How was the vote of the electors given? — 8. What did the federal party now think and do?



On counting the votes in the house, Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Burr had each an equal number. Thirty-five times the voting went round, and the hour had nearly come, when if a president had not been chosen, the government would have been destroyed. At length Jefferson had a majority of one State. . . . The constitution was afterwards amended, so that the same danger might never occur again. The conduct pursued by both parties in congress, on this occasion, manifests how little, party spirit cares for public good.

P.T. IV.

P.D. I.  
CH. III.

1801.

Are  
made  
president  
and vice-  
president.

9. A second census of the United States was completed; giving a population of 5,319,762, an increase of one million four hundred thousand in ten years. In the same time, the exports increased from nineteen to ninety-four millions, and the revenue, from 4,771,000 to 12,945,000 dollars. This rapid advance in the career of prosperity, is unparalleled in the history of nations.

Second  
census1800  
declared  
in

1801.

10. In 1802, Ohio was admitted as an independent state into the Union. The territory of this state was originally claimed by Virginia and Connecticut, and was ceded by them to the United States, at different times, after the year 1781. From this extensive and fertile tract of country, slavery was entirely excluded.

1802.

Ohio ad-  
mitted to  
the  
union.

11. In 1802, the port of New Orleans was closed against the United States. Spain having ceded Louisiana to the French, the Spanish intendant announced that the citizens of the United States could no longer be permitted to deposit their merchandise and effects in the port of New Orleans. The western states apprehended the ruin of their commerce; and great agitation was excited. The right of deposit was subsequently restored; but the alarm had shown, how important was the possession of the waters of the Mississippi to the western states.

Louisiana  
ceded by  
Spain to  
France.Alarm  
of the  
western  
states.

8. What singular position of affairs now presented itself? How did it terminate? What does this affair show with respect to party spirit? — 9. In what year was the second census taken? How many inhabitants? What increase of population in ten years? What of exports and revenue? — 10. What account can you give of Ohio? — 11. On what account were the western states alarmed and agitated? Was the right of deposit restored? What had this alarm shown.

P.T. IV.

P.D. I.  
CH. III.

1803

Louis-  
iana pur-  
chased  
of  
France.

12. Negotiations were therefore set on foot, by which the United States purchased of France, for the sum of fifteen millions of dollars, the whole territory of Louisiana. This acquisition nearly doubled the extent of the Republic, adding the vast western section of the basin of the Mississippi, and giving the United States a boundary on the Pacific Ocean.

12. What negotiations were set on foot? What purchase was made. For what consideration? What may be said of this acquisition?

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What epoch marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point out its place on the chronographer.

Washington was inaugurated president April 30th, 1789. Point out the place of this date. Mr. Hamilton's funding system in 1790 was the origin of the federal and republican parties. Point to the place of that year. The national bank was established in 1791, and the first census of the United States completed. Point out the place of this date.

The defeat of Gen. St. Clair occurred in 1792. Locate this event. Kentucky was admitted into the Union in 1792. Washington was inaugurated the second time, in 1793. Point out the places of these events. Gen. Wayne totally defeated the Indians, August 20th, 1794. Jay's treaty with Great Britain was signed by Washington the same year. Point out the place of the year. Washington published his Farewell Address in 1797. Point out the place of this date.

John Adams was inaugurated president and Thomas Jefferson vice-president, March 4, 1797. Point to this year. Washington died Dec. 14th, 1799. Point out the place of this date. In 1801, Thomas Jefferson was made president, and Aaron Burr vice-president. Point to the place of this date. At what event does this period terminate? What is its date? Point out its place on the chronographer.

Let the teacher now select other dates, as before.

*American Officers, mentioned in this work.*

Dearborn,	Dudley,
Gen. Hull,	CROGHAN,
M'Arthur,	PIKE,
Cass,	Chandler,
Findlay,	Winder,
MILLER,	JACKSON,
Brush,	FLOYD,
Van Horne,	RIPLEY,
Gen. Van Rens-	Bærstler,
selaer,	JOHNSON,
Col. VAN RENS-	Wilkinson,
SELAER,	Hampton,
SCOTT,	Boyd,
WOOL,	Izard,
Smyth,	M'Clure,
KING,	BROWN,
Hopkins,	HOLMES,
SHELBY,	TOWSON,
Russel,	PORTER,
Campbell,	STRICKER,
HARRISON,	SMITH,
Winchester,	STRONG.
Clay,	

*Naval Officers.*

HULL,	LAWRENCE,
PORTER,	ALLEN,
JONES,	BURROWS,
DECATUR,	BARNEY,
BAINBRIDGE,	DOWNES,
CHAUNCEY,	BLAKELY,
PERRY,	MACDONOUGH.

*British Officers.*

Sir George Prevost,  
BROCK,  
TECUMSEH,  
SHEAFFE,  
PROCTOR,  
ST. VINCENT,  
Drummond,  
RIALL,  
ROSS,  
Brooke,  
Nicholls,  
PACKENHAM,  
GIBBS,  
Kean.

—

*Naval Officers*

Dacres,  
Carden,  
BARCLAY,  
Warren,  
Cockburn,  
Beresford,  
BROKE,  
Hardy,  
Cochrane,  
DOWNIE,  
HILLYAR  
Tucker.

# MAP N<sup>o</sup> 10.

Principal Seats of  
the War of  
1812, 13, 14.





Decatur firing the Philadelphia.

## PERIOD II.

FROM  
THE PURCHASE { 1803, } OF LOUISIANA,  
TO  
THE CESSION { 1820. } OF FLORIDA.

### CHAPTER I.

War with Tripoli.—Troubles with England and France.

1. THE Barbary Powers were nations of professed pirates. They took and made slaves of American citizens, as they did those of other countries, and appropriated vessels and their cargoes. If any nation would pay them annual tribute, they would not take that nation's vessels. This was for several years done by the United States, as it had long been, by European nations. At length the American republic determined to resist, and declared war against Tripoli. This war is memorable, as it laid the foundation of the American naval character, and discipline. Commodore

P.T. IV  
P.D. II.  
CH. I.

1803.

Barbary  
powers  
piratical.

CHAPTER I.—1. What were the Barbary Powers? What did they with respect to the citizens and vessels of the European and American nations? In what case would they desist from their piracy? What did the U. S. do? Why is the Tripolitan war memorable?



P'T. IV. Preble, who commanded the American fleet, sent in  
 P'D. II. 1803 to the Mediterranean, was not only an able of-  
 CH. I. ficer himself, but he possessed the talent of moulding  
 others.

1804. 2. Lieut. Stephen Decatur, retook the frigate Phila-  
 delphia from under the guns of the Tripolitan battery;  
 set her on fire in the harbor, and escaped. This  
 frigate, commanded by Capt. Bainbridge, was one of  
 Feb. Preble's squadron, and had adventured too far into the  
 Deca- harbor of Tripoli, and ignorant of the navigation had  
 tur's ex- grounded. The officers and crew were made cap-  
 ploit. tives, and with other Americans, were treated with  
 every indignity. Their sufferings went to the hearts  
 of their fellow citizens; and, as an expedient to oblige  
 the bashaw of Tripoli to release them, the government  
 authorised Capt. William Eaton to unite with Hamet,  
 an expelled bashaw, to assist him to recover his for-  
 mer station.

1805. 3. Eaton was made general of Hamet's forces, amount-  
 ing to a few hundred Arabs. He marched from Egypt  
 Feb. to Derne, where the American fleet co-operated with  
 Eaton takes Derne. him. He assaulted and took Derne. The Tripolitans  
 sent an army, which were defeated in two engage-  
 ments. The bashaw then sued for peace; and Col.  
 June 3. Lear, the American consul, negotiated with him a  
 Peace treaty, by which the American prisoners were set at  
 with Tripoli. liberty, sixty thousand dollars ransom-money being  
 paid. Support was withdrawn from Hamet, but he re-  
 covered his wife and children.

4. In July, 1804, occurred the death of Gen. Alex-  
 ander Hamilton. He died in a duel, fought with  
 1804. Aaron Burr, vice-president of the United States. Burr  
 Hamil- was the challenger. Hamilton, not having the courage  
 ton killed in a duel with Burr. to brave the opinion which would call him coward,  
 met his antagonist against his sense of right, and with-  
 out desire or intention to injure him. By this lament-

- 
1. Who was the commander? What can you say of him?—
  2. What daring exploit was performed by Decatur? How came the Philadelphia stranded? Where were the captain and crew? What was William Eaton to do in this war?—3. Give an account of his movements? On what terms was peace concluded?—4. Give an account of the death of Hamilton, and its cause?

able weakness of mind, America lost one of her most gifted sons. . . Mr. Jefferson received his second presidential election; and such was his popularity, that out of 176 votes, he received 162. George Clinton of New York, was chosen vice-president.

P'T. IV.  
P'D. II.  
CH. I.  
1805.

5. Col. Burr was a dark and subtle man. Neither party had, any longer, confidence in him. He went to the west, and there set on foot some great scheme, which he was carrying on, when, becoming suspected of treasonable designs against the government, he was seized, and taken to Richmond for trial. It was supposed, that he intended to possess himself of the bank of New Orleans; and that he was raising an army, with which he meant, either to subdue Mexico, or some other of the Spanish provinces. Sufficient evidence of his guilt not appearing on trial, he was acquitted.

Burr's  
treason-  
able pro-  
ject.

6. Although a neutral policy had been steadily maintained, the American nation was now made to suffer in her commerce, by the measures which England took, on the one hand, to humble France, by keeping all neutrals from trading at her ports; and the counter measures assumed, on the other hand, by the emperor Napoleon, to keep all neutrals from the ports belonging to Great Britain.

1806.  
to  
1809.  
Am. com-  
merce  
injured.

7. The "decrees" made by France, and the "orders in council" made by Great Britain, for these purposes, were unjust, and contrary to the laws of nations. The United States were not in right obliged to abstain from trading to the French ports, because the sovereign of Great Britain commanded it; nor to abstain from trading to Great Britain, because it was so ordered by the French emperor. And when these two nations proceeded, which on both sides they did, to take, and condemn as prizes, American vessels for disobeying their unlawful decrees, they both committed acts of war upon our nation.

Eng. and  
Fr. or-  
ders and  
decrees.

8. The American government by its agents at the courts of Great Britain and France, remonstrated in

5. What further account is given of Col. Burr? — 6. How did America now suffer in her commerce? — 7. What may be said of the decrees and orders in council as regards the right of the case? What did both nations with regard to the U. S.?

**P.T. IV.** decided terms. As the shipping of the country was  
**P.D. II.** so much exposed to seizure, congress laid an embargo.  
**CH. I.** This also deprived the nations, which had injured the  
**1807.** American commerce, of the advantages of their trade.  
 An em- But the measure was much disliked by many of the  
 bargo. American people.

**Pretend-** 9. There were other causes of complaint against  
**ed right** the English. In the exercise of what they termed the  
**of search.** right of search for British native born subjects, their  
 naval officers entered and searched American vessels  
 on the high seas; and repeatedly took, not only natu-  
 ralized, but native American citizens. The Leopard,  
 a British ship of war, attacked and overpowered an  
 American frigate, the Chesapeake, but a few miles  
 from the coast, and took from her four men.

**Outrage** 10. The outrage upon the Chesapeake, which hap-  
**upon the** pened before the embargo was laid, was resented by the  
**Chesa-** whole nation. But the English government sent out  
**peake.** Mr. Rose, who made such explanations as satisfied the  
**1809.** federal party. . . In 1809, Mr. Madison was inaugurated  
**Madison** president, and Mr. George Clinton of New York was  
**presi-** re-elected vice-president. . . In the meantime the em-  
**dent.** bargo met with the most violent opposition throughout  
 the country. The government repealed it and substi-  
**Non-in-** tuted a law, prohibiting all intercourse with France  
**tercourse** or Great Britain; with a proviso, that should either  
**substi-** revoke her edicts, this non-intercourse law should  
**tuted.** cease to be enforced, as it regarded that nation.

**Mr. Er-** 11. In April, a treaty was concluded with Mr. Ers-  
**skine's** kine, the British minister; which engaged on the part  
**arrange-** of Great Britain, that the orders in council, so far as  
**ment dis-** they affected the United States, should be withdrawn.  
**owned** The British ministry refused their sanction, alledging  
**by the** that their minister, whom they recalled, had exceeded  
**ministry.** his powers. His successor, Mr. Jackson, insinuated

---

8. What course was taken by the Am. government?—9. What other cause of complaint was against England? What was done by a British armed ship?—10. What was the national feeling respecting this outrage? Who were made president and vice-president? In what year? What law was substituted for the embargo?—11. What arrangement was made by Mr. Erskine? What was done by the British ministry? What was Mr. Jackson's behaviour, and the consequence?

in a correspondence with the secretary of state, that the American government knew that Mr. Erskine was not authorized to make the arrangement. This accusation was denied by the secretary, but repeated by Mr. Jackson. The president then declined further intercourse.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. II.  
CH. I.

12. In 1810, France repealed her decrees, and the president issued a proclamation on the 2d of November, declaring, that all the restrictions imposed by the non-intercourse law, should cease, in relation to France and her dependencies.

1810.  
French  
decrees  
repealed.

13. The population of the United States, by the third census, taken in 1810, was 7,239,903. . . . An encounter took place off Cape Charles, between the American frigate *President*, commanded by Com. Rogers, and the British sloop of war, *Little Belt*, commanded by Capt. Bingham. The attack was commenced by the *Little Belt*, but she was soon disabled. This was a token that war was at hand.

1811.  
May 16.  
Attack  
on the  
Presi-  
dent.  
Br. loss,  
32.

14. The appearance of a hostile confederacy, had been discovered among the Indians on the western frontier. At its head, was the great chief Tecumseh, and his twin brother, Elskwatawa. Tecumseh, who was the master-spirit, took upon himself the departments of war and eloquence, while Elskwatawa was to invest himself with the sacred and mysterious character of "Prophet." Pretending to be favored with direct communications from the Great Spirit, he by tricks and austerities, gained belief. He then began a species of drill, the object of which seems to have been to discipline the Indians to obedience and union. He ordered them to kill their dogs, and these faithful friends were instantly sacrificed. They must not, he said, permit their fires to go out; and at once the fire of every wigwam was watched as by vestals.

Indians  
hostile.

Tecum-  
seh and  
Elskwa-  
tawa.

The In-  
dians led  
by their  
supersti-  
tion.

15. While the Prophet thus manifested, that priest-craft, in its worst form, may inhabit the desert as well

---

12. What was done by France? What by the president? — 13. What was the population? Of what year? What encounter took place? — 14. What two remarkable characters appeared among the Indians? Give an account of Tecumseh? Of Elskwatawa?

**P'T. IV.** as the city, Tecumseh was going from one Indian confederacy to another, and, by his eloquence, inflaming their minds against the whites. He did not, like Philip, believe it possible to exterminate the entire white population, but he thought the combined Indian power, might suffice to set them their bounds.

**P'D. II.**  
**CH. I.**

**Tecumseh's views.**

**Harrison at Tippecanoe.**  
**Am. k. & w. 180.**  
**Ind. 270.**

16. Gov. Harrison, of the Indiana territory, was directed to march against them with a military force. On the 7th of November, he met a number of the Prophet's messengers at Tippecanoe, and a suspension of hostilities was agreed upon until the next day. Harrison formed his men in order of battle; and they thus reposed upon their arms. Just before day, the faithless savages rushed upon them. But the war-whoop was not unexpected. The Americans stood, repelled the shock, and repulsed the assailants. Tecumseh was at a distance, not having expected, that the whites would strike the first blow.

**Am. losses.**

**Preparations for war.**

17. The French decrees being annulled, commerce had begun with France, and nine hundred American vessels, richly laden, had been captured by the British since the year 1803. The president recommended to congress, that the United States should be placed in an attitude of defense. Provision was accordingly made to increase the regular army to 35,000 men, and to enlarge the navy. The president was authorized to borrow eleven millions of dollars, and the duties on imported goods were doubled.

**1812.**

**Henry's disclosure.**

**1809.**

**Secret mission.**

18. Mr. Madison laid before congress documents, which proved that in 1809, the British government, by its agent, Sir James Craig, governor of Canada, had sent John Henry, as an emissary to the United States; to intrigue with the leading members of the federal party, and lead them, if possible, to form the eastern part of the union into a nation, or province, dependent on Great Britain. Henry proceeded through Vermont

---

15. What was made manifest by the Indian prophet? What was Tecumseh doing? What were his views? — 16. Who was sent against the Indians? Describe the battle of Tippecanoe? — 17. How many of the American vessels had the British taken? Since what year? What measures were taken to prepare for war? — 18. What disclosure was made by the President?



and New Hampshire to Boston; but he returned without effecting, in any degree his purpose.

P'T. IV.

P'D. II.  
CH. II.

1812.

## CHAPTER II.

War of 1812.—Condition of the country.—Hull's surrender.

1. ON the 18th of June, 1812, war with Great Britain was formally declared. In 1775, the Americans were comparatively a warlike people; they had now become enervated by a peace of nearly forty years. In 1808, the regular army consisted of only 3,000 men; but during that year, the government increased it to nine thousand. The act to raise an additional force was passed so short a time previous to the declaration of war, that not more than one-fourth of the number were enlisted at that time; and those were, of course, raw and undisciplined.

June 18.  
War de-  
clared.Military  
force of  
the U. S.  
inade-  
quate.

2. The state of the revenue in 1812, was extremely unfavorable to the prosecution of an expensive war. Derived almost solely from duties on merchandise imported, it was abundant in a state of commercial prosperity; but in time of war and trouble, the aggressions of foreign powers, while they produced an increase of public expenditure, almost destroyed the means of defraying it.

State of  
the re-  
venue.

3. The condition of the navy was better than that of the army. The situation of the United States, as a maritime and commercial nation, had kept it provided with seamen. The recent contest with Tripoli, had given to the officers and men, some experience in war. But the navy was small. Ten frigates, ten sloops, and one hundred and sixty-five gun boats, was all the public naval force, which America could oppose to the thousand ships of Great Britain. . . . Henry Dearborn, a

The na-  
vy in a  
better  
condition  
than the  
army.General  
Dear-  
born,  
com-  
mander-  
in-chief.

CHAPTER II.—1. At what time was war declared? What was the condition of the army? — 2. What was that of the revenue? — 3. What that of the navy? Who was made commander?

P'T. IV. surviving officer of the revolution, was appointed  
 P'D. II. major-general and commander-in-chief of the Ameri-  
 CH. II. can army.

**1812.** 4. The plan of the campaign was formed at Wash-  
 ington. It was intended to invade Canada, at Detroit  
 and Niagara, and that the armies from these places  
 should be joined, on the way, by the force stationed  
 at Plattsburg, and all proceed to Montreal. The army  
 destined for Detroit, was collected at Dayton, in Ohio,  
 some time before the declaration of war. The forces  
 consisted of three regiments of volunteers, command-  
 ed by Cols. M'Arthur, Cass, and Findlay, and 300 reg-  
 ulars under Col. Miller;—the whole under Gen.  
 Hull, who had been, for some time, governor of the  
 Michigan Territory.

June 30. 5. Gen. Hull, moving slowly through an unculti-  
 vated region, reached the rapids of the Maumee, and  
 on the first of July sent off his hospital stores, his  
 sick, and part of his baggage, in a vessel to go by  
 water to Detroit. This vessel, in which was his  
 trunk of private papers, containing accounts of the  
 army, and plans of movement, was taken by the Bri-  
 tish. Gen. Hull arrived at Detroit on the 5th, and on  
 the 12th invaded Canada. At Sandwich he issued a  
 bold and imposing proclamation, inviting the Canadians  
 to join him. The British force, which it was expect-  
 ed his army would attack, was at Fort Malden. He  
 waited near it for artillery from Detroit. A detachment  
 of the army took a bridge leading to the fort, but he  
 would not suffer them to retain it.

6. As the British had the command of the waters,  
 the road from Ohio, by which Hull expected a party  
 under Capt. Brush to bring provisions, was infested by  
 warriors whom their shipping landed on the American  
 side. Hull sent a detachment, under Van Horne, to  
 keep open the road. Tecumseh and his Indians lay  
 in ambush, and killed thirty of his men, when the re-  
 mainder fled to Detroit.

---

4. What was the plan of the campaign? Describe the army  
 of the north-west? — 5. Describe Hull's progress from Dayton  
 to the vicinity of Malden? — 6. What happened to the first party  
 sent by Hull to escort Capt. Brush?

7. On the 17th, the important fortress of Mackinaw was taken, by a party of British and Indians, the small garrison being allowed the honors of war. The victorious party were now bearing down upon Hull. Nor was this all, Gen. Dearborn was drawn by the British, on pretence of treating for peace, into an armistice, in which Hull's army was not included. This set free the whole British army of Canada to come against him, as nothing was to be feared from any other quarter.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. II.  
CH. II.

1812.

Circumstances which alarm Hull.

8. Gen. Hull took counsel of his fears, and against the entreaties of his officers, returned to Detroit. He sent immediately Col. Miller, with 600 men, to escort Capt. Brush. In the woods of Maguaga he routed, in a severe fight, Tecumseh and his Indians: and then returned to Detroit, Gen. Hull having learned that Capt. Brush had taken another route. . . . Fifty persons, mostly the garrison of Chicago, were slain by a party of savages, as they were attempting to pass from that place to Detroit.

Aug. 8.  
Battle of  
Maguaga.  
Am. loss  
80.

9. On the 13th, Brock, the most able of the British Generals, arrived at Malden, and took command. On the 14th, he moved the British forces to Sandwich, and the next day sent a summons to Hull to surrender; threatening him, that the Indians would be let loose upon Detroit, unless he did. On the morning of the 16th, Brock crossed to Spring Wells, and moved towards Detroit. Gen. Hull drew up his men in order of battle; then, while they were eager for the fight, ordered them to retire to the fort. The indignation of the army broke forth, and all subordination ceased. They crowded in, and without any order from the general, stacked their arms, some dashing them with violence upon the ground. Many of the soldiers wept, and even the women were angry at such apparent cowardice.

Aug. 15.  
Brock  
ap-  
proaches  
Detroit.

7. What circumstances alarmed Gen. Hull? — 8. What retrograde movement did he make? What second party send out? What battle was fought? What happened on the 15th of August? — 9. Who took command of the British army? Describe the movements of Brock? What was done by Hull? What was the conduct of the army, when bid to retire to the fort?

P'T. IV. 10. Hull, perceiving that he had no longer any au-  
 P'D. II. thority, and believing that the Indians were ready to  
 CH. II. fall upon the inhabitants, was anxious to put the place  
 1812. under the protection of the British. A white flag was  
 Hull sur- hung out upon the walls of the fort. Two British  
 renders officers rode up, and a capitulation was concluded by  
 his army. Hull with the most unbecoming haste. His officers  
 Am. loss, were not consulted, and every thing was left at the  
 prisoners 800. mercy of the British general. . . . Gen. Hull was soon  
 after exchanged, and brought to trial. He was sen-  
 tenced to death, for cowardice and unofficer-like con-  
 duct, but pardoned by the president, as he had, in his  
 youth, been a brave revolutionary officer.

## CHAPTER III.

### Naval successes.

1. THREE days after the disgraceful surrender of  
 Aug. 19. land, the capture of the British frigate *Guerriere*, under  
 Naval the command of Capt. Dacres, by the American frigate  
 victory. *Constitution*, commanded by Capt. Hull. Capt. Dacres  
 Br. loss, had challenged any American vessel of her class, and  
 k. 65, w. in various ways, manifested his contempt of "the  
 63. Am. Yankees." In thirty minutes after the first broadside  
 loss, k. of the *Constitution*, the *Guerriere* had her masts and  
 7, w. 7. rigging shot away, and her hulk so injured, that she  
 Sept. 7. was in danger of sinking. . . . Capt. Porter, of the United  
 States frigate *Essex*, captured, near the same place, the  
 British sloop of war *Alert*, after an action of only  
 eight minutes.

2. On the 13th of October, the army stationed at  
 Lewiston, under Gen. Van Rensselaer, mostly com-

10. What was then done? What was the manner of the sur-  
 render? What sentence was passed against Hull? Was it  
 executed?

CHAPTER III.—1. What important naval victory happened  
 about the time of Hull's surrender? What was the loss on both  
 sides? What other naval victory occurred?

posed of New York militia, made an unfortunate and unsuccessful attempt to invade Canada. A part of the army crossed, and a battle was fought at Queenstown. During the battle, Gen. Brock was killed, by a party headed by Capt. Wool. But Gen. Sheaffe coming up with 1,000 British and Indians, while the militia on the American shore refused to cross, the republican troops on the Canada side were obliged to surrender.

3. Gen. Smyth succeeded Gen. Van Rensselaer, and late in the season, made another abortive attempt to cross an army into Canada. Capt. King, with a party, had prepared the way, by gallantly storming a battery opposite Black Rock; but the army did not follow him, and he was made prisoner.

4. Ohio and Kentucky, had aroused at the call of Hull for assistance; and an army, on its march for Detroit, was in the southern part of Ohio, when the news met them, of the surrender of that post. This rather stimulated than repressed the ardor of the patriotic inhabitants of the west. Kentucky put on foot 7,000 volunteers, Ohio nearly half that number. Congress appointed Gen. Harrison to the command of these forces.

5. The Indians of the north-west had murdered twenty-one persons at the mouth of White river; and had committed other atrocities. For the defense of the Indiana and Illinois territories, a large number of mounted volunteers was collected, by Gov. Shelby of Kentucky. Under Gen. Hopkins, they attempted an expedition against the Kickapoo and Peoria towns; but being gentlemen volunteers, and feeling on an equality with their general, they, after several days march, put it to the vote of the army, whether they would proceed further; and a majority of the troops being against it, they turned about, and, to the grief of the general, went home. This affair brought the employment and paying of volunteers into disrepute.

P'T. IV.  
P'D. II.  
CH. III.

Oct. 13.  
Queenstown.  
Am. loss,  
k. 60, w.  
100. Prisoners  
700.

1812.

Volunteers  
of the west.

Hopkins,  
unsuccessful  
expedition  
against  
the Indian  
towns.

2. Describe the affair of Queenstown? — 3. What account can you give of Gen. Smyth's attempt? — 4. What troops had been raised in the west? Who appointed to the command? — 5. What had been done by the Indians? Describe the expedition against them, headed by Gen. Hopkins?



P<sup>r</sup>T. IV. 6. Gen. Hopkins, at the head of another party,—and  
 P<sup>r</sup>D. II. after him Cols. Russel and Campbell, made predatory  
 CH. III. incursions into the Indian towns. They put the savages  
 in fear, and protected the white inhabitants. . . . Capt.  
 Oct. 18. Jones, in the American sloop of war Wasp, captured,  
 Whole crew of Frolic after a bloody engagement, a British warlike vessel,  
 120, loss the Frolic. Two hours after the battle, a British seven-  
 100. ty-four took Capt. Jones and his prize. . . . Com. Decatur,  
 Oct. 25. in the frigate United States, defeated and made prize of  
 Br. loss 104. the British frigate Macedonian, Capt. Carden. . . . The  
 Am. 12. fortunate frigate Constitution, commanded by Com.  
 Dec. 29. Bainbridge, captured, off the coast of Brazil, the British  
 Br. loss, k. 60, frigate Java. Besides these public successes, the Ame-  
 w. 101. rican privateers took 250 British vessels, and 3,000  
 prisoners.

State of party feeling. 7. The warmth of party feeling had not abated. The  
 enemies of the administration declared, that the ill-  
 success of the war was owing to their inefficiency;  
 while its friends attributed the failure, to the interfe-  
 rence of the opposite party. Both were right in a de-  
 gree; as the government, unused to war, had doubt-  
 less failed of making judicious and seasonable provi-  
 sions. But all its difficulties were increased, by an  
 ungenerous, and almost treasonable opposition.

Question of state rights. 8. The most alarming opposition was not, however,  
 that arising from mere individual clamor. The states  
 of Massachusetts and Connecticut had refused their  
 militia, to the call of the general government. They  
 alleged that the state governments ought to determine  
 when the exigencies of the nation require the services  
 of their militia. They also decided, that it was un-  
 constitutional for the president to delegate his power  
 to any officer, not of the militia, and who was not  
 chosen by the respective states. It was probably  
 owing to the disapprobation, with which the great body  
 of the people viewed these opinions and measures of  
 the opposition, that the result of the election of pre-

Mr. Ma-  
dison's  
majority  
in-  
creased.

6. What officers made successful incursions? What naval  
 victory occurred Oct. 18th? What on the 25th of Oct.? — 7.  
 What was the state of party feeling? — 8. What alarming symp-  
 toms of rebellion occurred in New England? What effect had  
 the proceedings of the opposition on the election?

sident was not only favorable to Mr. Madison, but showed a diminution of the federal, and an increase of the republican party.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. II.  
CH. IV.

1813.

Congress  
make  
laws to  
carry on  
the war.

9. Congress passed acts authorizing the construction of four large ships of war, for the increase of the navy on the lakes, and for increasing the bounty given to recruits, and enlarging the regular army. The previous law authorizing the employment of volunteers, as they had been found insubordinate, was repealed. To provide for the revenue, they authorized a loan of sixteen millions of dollars; and gave power to the president to issue treasury notes to the amount of five millions. Mr. Madison received his second inauguration on the 4th of March, and Elbridge Gerry was at the same time made vice-president.

## CHAPTER IV.

### Campaign of 1813.—Massacre of Frenchtown.

1. THE head-quarters of Gen. Harrison were, at this time, at Franklinton, in Ohio. Gen. Winchester had been detached to proceed in advance of the main army. Hearing that a party of the British were stationed at Frenchtown, he attacked and dispersed them. But on the morning of the 22d, he was surprised and assaulted by the combined force of British and Indians, under the command of Col. Proctor. Gen. Winchester was taken; and being terrified with Proctor's threat of an Indian massacre, he presumed, though a prisoner, to send a command to the troops still fighting, to surrender; Proctor having promised them, in that case, protection. They laid down their arms, and the

Harrison  
divides  
his army

1813.

Jan. 22.  
Massa-  
cre of  
French-  
town.  
Am. loss,  
k. 500,  
pris. 500.  
Br. loss,  
k. 24, w.  
158.

9. What laws did congress make to carry on the war? Who was made president and vice-president?

CHAPTER IV.—1. Where was Gen. Harrison with the western army? Whom did he detach? What account can you give of the shocking scene at Frenchtown?

P'T. IV. scenes of Fort William Henry were re-acted. Proctor  
 P'D. II. abandoned them, now unarmed and defenseless, to the  
 CH. IV. savages. Five hundred were slain. They were mostly  
 1813. volunteers from respectable families in Kentucky.

2. Gen. Harrison removed his army to Fort Meigs. Proctor here besieged him with a combined force of British and Indians. Gen. Clay, with 1100 Kentuckians coming to his assistance, a plan was laid to attack the army of Proctor with the combined forces of Harrison and Clay. A party headed by Col. Dudley, fell into an ambuscade, and were slaughtered by Tecumseh and his Indians. But Proctor was defeated, and obliged to raise the siege.

May 5.  
 Fort  
 Meigs  
 Dudley's  
 defeat.

3. The Indians, as success failed, began to desert their allies. But Tecumseh was faithful. The Five Nations now declared war against the Canadas. . . . With 500 men, Proctor attacked Fort Stephenson on the Sandusky river. Major Croghan, a youth of twenty-one, defended the fort with 160 men, and repulsed Proctor with the loss of 150.

Aug. 1.  
 Ft. Ste-  
 phenson.

4. On the 22d of February, the British attacked Ogdensburg with 500 men. The Americans, inferior in numbers, retired and abandoned their artillery and stores to the British. Two schooners, two gunboats, together with the barracks, were committed to the flames. . . . On Lake Ontario, Commodore Chauncey, had by great exertions, made ready a flotilla, to aid in the operations of the coming campaign.

Feb. 22.  
 Br. take  
 Ogdens-  
 burg.

April.  
 A flotilla  
 on Lake  
 Ontario.

5. The first important service of the flotilla, was that of transporting the army of Gen. Dearborn, from Sackett's Harbor to York, the capital of Upper Canada. Gen. Pike, by whose advice the descent was made, defeated Gen. Sheaffe at the landing, in a severe contest. In the moment of victory, this excellent officer, with 100 Americans and 40 English, was killed by

April 27.  
 York.  
 Br. loss,  
 k. 90,  
 w. 200,  
 p. 800.

2. Give a further account of the military operations near Lake Erie? — 3. What was now done among the Indians? Give an account of the affair at Fort Stephenson? — 4. Of the invasion of Ogdensburg. Who commanded the American marine on Lake Ontario? What had he done? — 5. What was the first important service of the flotilla? Give an account of the battle at the landing. Of the subsequent disaster. Of the further movements of the Americans.

the blowing up of a magazine. The Americans took possession of the town. After three days they recrossed the lake to Sacket's Harbor, where they left their wounded.

P'T. IV.  
P'D. II.  
CH. IV.

1813.

6. On the 27th Gen. Dearborn re-embarked his army and proceeded to attack Fort George. After fighting for its defense, the British commander, Col. St. Vincent, spiked his guns, and abandoned the fort. The Americans took possession of Fort Erie, that having also been evacuated by the British. Col. St. Vincent had retired, with his army, to Burlington Heights, near the head of Lake Ontario. To pursue him, Gen. Dearborn detached Gens. Chandler and Winder. Col. St. Vincent, at dead of night, stole upon them and attacked the camp. In the confusion and carnage which ensued, Chandler and Winder were both made prisoners. The Americans, however, maintained their post, and forced the enemy to retire. . . Col. Bærstler being sent against a British force at the Beaver Dams, which proved much larger than his own, surrendered his detachment.

May 27.  
Fort  
George.  
Br. loss,  
k. & w.  
300.  
Am. 62.

Affair of  
Stony c.

Beaver  
Dams.  
Am. loss,  
pris. 570.

7. The American fleet, now formed on Lake Erie, was commanded by Com. Perry. It consisted of the Niagara and Lawrence, each of twenty-five guns, and several smaller vessels, carrying two guns each. The enemy's fleet, of equal force, was commanded by Com. Barclay, a veteran officer. Perry, at 12 o'clock, made an attack. The flag-ship became disabled. Perry embarked in an open boat, and amidst a shower of bullets, carried the ensign of command on board another, and once more bore down upon the enemy with the remainder of his fleet. At four o'clock, the whole British squadron, consisting of six vessels, carrying in all sixty-three guns, surrendered to the Americans.

Sept. 10.  
Perry's  
victory.

Sept. 23.  
Harrison  
takes  
possession of  
Malden  
and  
Detroit.

8. This success on lake Erie, opened a passage to the territory which had been surrendered by Hull; and Gen. Harrison lost no time in transferring the war

6. Give an account of the military movements at Fort Erie? Of the affair at Stony Creek? What was done at Beaver Dams? What loss in prisoners? — 7. Describe the battle on Lake Erie. — 8. What good effect immediately followed this victory?



P.T. IV. thither. On the 23d of September, he landed his  
 P.D. II. troops near Fort Malden, but Proctor, despite the  
 CH. IV. spirited remonstrance of Tecumseh, an abler man than  
 1813. himself, and now a general in the British army, had  
 evacuated Malden, burnt the fort and store-houses,  
 and retreated before his enemy. The Americans,  
 on the 29th, went in pursuit, entered, and repossessed  
 Detroit.

9. Proctor had retired to the Moravian village on  
 Oct. 5. the Thames, about eighty miles from that place. His  
 Battle army of 2,000, was more than half Indians. Harrison  
 of the overtook him on the 5th of October. The British  
 Thames. army, although inferior in numbers, had the advantage  
 British of choosing their ground. Gen. Harrison gained much  
 pris. 600. reputation for his arrangements, especially as he  
 Indians k. 120. changed them with judgment, as circumstances changed  
 Am. loss, on the field of battle. Col. Johnson, with his mounted  
 50. Kentuckians, was opposed to Tecumseh and his In-  
 dians. In the heat of the battle the chief fell, bravely  
 Death of fighting. His warriors fled. Proctor, dismayed, meanly  
 Tecum- deserted his army, and fled with two hundred dragoons.

10. The Indian confederacy, in which were still  
 3,000 warriors, had lost with Tecumseh their bond of  
 union; and the Ottawas, Chippewas, Miamis, and  
 Pottawattamies, now sent deputies to Gen. Harrison,  
 and made treaties of alliance.

11. In the early part of this year, the bays of Chesapeake and Delaware were declared by the British government to be in a state of blockade. To enforce this edict, fleets were sent over under Admirals Warren, Cockburn, and Beresford. Admiral Cockburn made his name odious by his disgraceful behaviour in the Chesapeake. He took possession of several small islands in the bay, and from these made descents upon the neighboring shores. Frenchtown, Havre de Grace, Fredericktown, Hampton and Georgetown, were successively the scenes of a warfare, of which savages

---

8. What movement was made by Proctor? By the Americans? — 9. What account can you give of the battle of the Thames? — 10. Did the death of Tecumseh produce consequences of importance? — 11. What happened in the vicinity of the Chesapeake.



would have been ashamed; and which did much to hurt the cause of the British, by incensing the Americans, more and more, against them.

P.T. IV.

P.D. II.  
CH. V.

## CHAPTER V.

Northern army.—Loss of the Chesapeake.—Creek War

1. ON Lake Ontario, Com. Chauncey, encountered a fleet of seven sail, bound for Kingston, with troops and provisions. Five of the vessels he captured. . . . The general plan of the American government was still to take Montreal. An army was at Sackett's Harbor, partly composed of the troops from Fort George, of which Gen. Wilkinson took the command. This army was embarked to proceed down the St. Lawrence; and was to be joined by the army from Plattsburg, commanded by Gen. Wade Hampton.

Oct. 5.  
Br. Fleet  
com-  
manded  
by Sir  
Jas. Yeo.

2. A detachment of this army landed under Gen. Boyd, and engaged a party of the British at Williamsburg, and was defeated. Gen. Wilkinson here was informed, that Gen. Hampton would not join him; and he went into winter-quarters at French Mills. . . . Gen. Hampton, in attempting to move towards Montreal, had found some opposition from the British troops; and he returned to Plattsburg for the winter. He was soon succeeded in command, by Gen. Izard.

Wil-  
liams-  
burg.  
Am. loss,  
339.  
Br. 180.

3. Sir George Prevost, no longer fearing an attack on Montreal, sent Generals St. Vincent and Drummond to recover the forts on the Niagara. Gen. M'Clure, the American commander at Fort George, having too small a force to maintain his post, withdrew his troops, but burnt as he retreated, the British

Newark,  
Buffalo,  
and  
Black  
Rock  
burned

CHAPTER V.—1. What was done by Com. Chauncey? What was still the plan of the Americans? What movements were made, and by whom?—2. What happened at Williamsburg? What was the loss? What further account can you give of Gen. Wilkinson? What of Gen. Hampton?—3. What was now done on the Niagara frontier?

P'T. IV. village of Newark. The American government dis-  
 P'D. II. owned the act; but the British retaliated, by burning  
 CH. V. the villages of Buffalo and Black Rock.

**1813.** 4. NAVAL AFFAIRS.—Another naval victory, the  
 sixth in succession, now did honour to the sea-service.  
 Br. loss Capt. Lawrence, in the *Hornet*, defeated on the 23d  
 40, Am 5. of Feb., the British sloop of war *Peacock*, after an  
 action of only fifteen minutes. . . . Lawrence was

Shannon promoted to the command of the frigate *Chesapeake*.  
 and She was lying in the harbor of Boston, ill-fitted for  
 Ches- sea. Her crew were in a state of dissatisfaction from  
 peake. not having had their pay. The British, mortified at  
 Am. loss, k. 70, w. 63. their naval defeats, had prepared the frigate *Shannon*,  
 Br. half with a picked crew of officers and seamen. Capt.  
 the num- Broke, the commander, sent a challenge to Lawrence,  
 ber.

June 1. which he injudiciously accepted. The frigates met.  
 In a few minutes every officer, and about half the men  
 of the *Chesapeake*, were killed or bleeding and disabled.  
 Lawrence mortally wounded, and delirious, continually  
 raved, "Don't give up the ship." The British boarded  
 her, and they, not the Americans, lowered her colours.

5. Another naval disaster followed. The United  
 States sloop of war *Argus*, commanded by Lieut. Allen,  
 Aug 14. was captured, in St. George's channel, by the British  
 Am. loss sloop of war *Pelican*; Allen, mortally wounded, died  
 40, Br. 8. in England. . . . The Americans were again successful in  
 Sept. 4. an encounter between the brig *Enterprize*, commanded  
 by Lieut. Burrows, and the British brig *Boxer*. Bur-  
 rows was mortally wounded.

Creeks stirred up by Tecumseh. 6. CREEK WAR.—The Creek Indians had become  
 in a degree civilized by the efforts of the government,  
 and those of benevolent individuals. Tecumseh went  
 among them, and by his feeling of the wrongs of his  
 race, infused by his eloquence into their minds, he  
 wrought them to a determination of war and vengeance.

Massa- cre at Ft. Mims. 273 slaugh- 7. Without declaring war, they committed such acts  
 of violence, that the white families were put in fear,  
 and fled to the forts for shelter. At noon day, Fort

---

4. Give an account of Capt. Lawrence's victory? Of his de-  
 feat and death?—5. In what other case were the Americans  
 unsuccessful? What victory was achieved?—6. What was the  
 state of the Creeks? How were their minds excited?

Mims was suddenly surrounded by the Creek warriors. P.T. IV.  
They mastered the garrison, set fire to the fort, and P.D. II.  
butchered helpless babes and women, as well as men CH. VI.  
in arms. Out of three hundred persons, but seven- 1813.  
teen escaped to tell the tale.

8. What, in such a case, could the American government do, but to defend its own population, by such means as alone have been found effectual, with this terrible foe? Gen. Jackson, probably the most efficient commander ever engaged in Indian warfare, went among them, at the head of 2,500 Tennesseans. Gen. Floyd, the governor of Georgia, headed about 1,000 Georgia militia. They laid waste the Indian villages; they fought with them bloody battles, at Talledega, at Autosse, and at Eccannachaca.

Jackson  
and  
Floyd  
make  
havoc of  
the  
Creeks

9. Finally, at the bend of the Tallapoosa, was fought the last fatal field of the Creeks; in which they lost 600 of their bravest warriors. Then, to save the residue of their wasted nation, they sued for peace; and a treaty was accordingly made with them. But while it remains with the Indian nations an allowed custom, to make war without declaring it, treaties with them, are of no permanent value.

Topoke-  
ka, the  
last bat-  
tle field.

## CHAPTER VI.

The Niagara Frontier.—Battles of Chippewa and Bridgewater.

1. VARIOUS proposals to treat for peace having been made since the commencement of the war, the American government sent Messrs. Adams, Gallatin, and Bayard, in the month of August, to Ghent, the place of meeting previously agreed on. They were there

Commis-  
sioners to  
treat for  
peace  
meet at  
Ghent.

7. Give an account of the massacre at Fort Mims? — 8. Who went against the Creeks? At what places were they defeated? 9. Where was the final battle? What then occurred?

CHAPTER VI.—1. What persons were sent to treat for peace on each side? To what place?

P.T. IV. met by Lord Gambier, Henry Golbourn, and William  
 P.D. II. Adams, commissioners on the part of Great Britain.  
 CH. VI. On that of America, Henry Clay, and Jonathan Russell,  
 were afterwards added to the delegation.

2. Congress met in extra session, and with the firm-  
 May 24. ness of the days of the revolution, taxed the people,  
 A bold regardless of the popular clamor, for the necessary  
 congress. expenditures of their government. They also author-  
 ized a loan. At the regular session, congress, desirous  
 of an efficient army, gave by law, 124 dollars to each  
 recruit.

3. CAMPAIGN OF 1814.—Gen. Wilkinson, having  
 1814. received orders from the secretary of war, detached  
 Feb. 21. Gen. Brown, with 2,000 troops, to the Niagara fron-  
 Affair of tier, and then retired to Plattsburg. The British had  
 La Colle. fortified themselves at La Colle Mill, near the river  
 Sorel. Gen. Wilkinson advanced, and made an attack.  
 A sortie from the building ended in his repulse. The  
 general was censured by the public; and tried by a  
 court martial, but nominally acquitted.

4. Capt. Holmes, who was sent from Detroit, fell in  
 Feb. 21. unexpectedly with 300 of the enemy. With but 180  
 Capt. men he fought them, stood his ground, and killed 69  
 Holmes. of their number.

5. After the fall of Napoleon, a formidable army of  
 14,000 of fourteen thousand, who had fought under the Duke  
 Wellington's of Wellington, were embarked at Bordeaux for Canada;  
 veteran and, at the same time, a strong naval force, with an  
 troops adequate number of troops, was directed against the  
 sent maritime frontier of the United States, to maintain a  
 over. strict blockade, and ravage the whole coast from Maine  
 to Georgia.

6. In June, Gen. Brown marched his army from  
 Gen. Sackett's Harbor to Buffalo, expecting to invade Ca-  
 Brown nada. Here were added to his army, Towson's artil-  
 takes lery, and a corps of volunteers, commanded by Gen.  
 Ft. Erie.

---

2. What was done by congress in their extra session? In the  
 regular session?—3. What was done by Gen. Wilkinson?  
 What happened at La Colle?—4. What was done by Captain  
 Holmes?—5. What threatening measures were now taken by  
 the British?—6. What movements were made by Gen. Brown?  
 What addition was made to his army?

Porter, making, in the whole, about 3,500 men. On the 2d and 3d of July, they crossed the Niagara, and invested Fort Erie, where the garrison, amounting to 100 men, surrendered without resistance. A British army, of the supposed invincibles, and commanded by Gen. Riall, occupied a position at the mouth of the Chippewa.

P<sup>r</sup>T. IV.  
P<sup>r</sup>D. II.  
CH. VI.

1814

7. The two armies met at the battle of Chippewa, in fair and open fight. The republican soldiers, headed by the able officers that had now come forward, defeated, with inferior numbers, the veterans who had fought with Wellington. Soon after the battle, Gen. Riall fell back to Fort George, where in a few days he was joined by Gen. Drummond, when his army amounted to 5,000 men.

July 5.  
Chippewa, Br.  
loss 518,  
Am. 328

8. Gen. Brown being encamped at Chippewa, ordered Gen. Scott, with a brigade, and Towson's artillery, to make a movement on the Queenstown road, to take off the attention of the British from his stores on the American side, which, he had heard, they threatened. Instead of this, Gen. Riall was moving towards the Americans with his whole force. Gen. Scott passed the grand cataract, and then became apprized of the enemy's presence and force. Transmitting an account to Gen. Brown, he instantly marched on, and fearlessly attacked.

1814.

Gen.  
Scott's  
move-  
ment and  
bold  
attack.

9. His detachment maintained the fight for more than an hour, against a force seven times their number: and it became dark before the main army of the Americans, under Gen. Brown, came up. Gen. Ripley then perceiving how fatal to Scott's brigade was a British battery of nine pieces of artillery, said to Col. Miller, "Will you take yonder battery?" "I'll try," said Miller; and at the head of the 21st regiment, he calmly marched up to the mouth of the blazing cannon, and took them.

Br. loss  
878.

Gens.  
Ripley  
and  
Drum-  
mond  
wounded

6. What was the position and strength of the British army?  
7. What account can you give of the battle of Chippewa?  
What was now the amount of the force under Gen. Riall?  
8. Describe the commencement of the remarkable battle of Bridgewater?—9. What was done by Scott's detachment?  
When joined by the main army? What was done by Ripley and Miller?





Miller's  
bravery.

British  
loss 878.  
Am. loss  
860, 11  
officers  
were k.  
56 w.

10. The eminence on which they were planted, was the key of the British position; and Gen. Ripley following with his regiment, it was kept, notwithstanding the enemy, by the uncertain light of the waning moon, charged with the bayonet, till they were four times repulsed. About midnight, they ceased to contend. The roar of the cataract alone was heard, as they retired, and left their position and artillery to the Americans. Gens. Brown and Scott were both wounded; and the command after the battle, devolved on Gen. Ripley. He found no means of removing the artillery from the field. The British learning this, immediately re-occupied the ground, and hence, in writing to their government, they claimed the victory.

11. The American army, now reduced to 1,600, re-

---

10. Was Miller's taking the battery important to the success of the Americans? What happened at midnight? What was the loss on both sides?

tired to Fort Erie, and there entrenched themselves. The enemy, to the number of 5,000, followed and besieged them. They made an attempt to take the fort by storm, but were repulsed by the Americans. Col. Drummond had partially succeeded, and was in the act of denying mercy to the conquered, who asked for quarter, when a barrel of powder beneath him became ignited, and he and they were blown together into the air.

P'T. IV.  
P'D. II.  
CH. VI.  
1814.  
Aug. 15.  
Br. loss  
at Erie  
about  
500.  
Am. 84.

12. Gen. Brown, observing that a portion of the British army were divided from the rest, ordered a sortie from the fort, which was one of the best conducted operations of the war. Gen. Porter here distinguished himself, as did many others. But the loss was heavy for the wasting army of the Americans, and the country became anxious for the fate of those whose valor had shown the foe, that when once inured to war, there are no better officers or soldiers, than those of the American Republic. Gen. Izard had, on this account, been sent from Plattsburg; and now, with 5,000 troops, he joined Gen. Brown. The British, after this, retired to their entrenchments behind Chippewa.

Sortie.  
Br. loss,  
killed,  
wounded  
and taken  
prisoners,  
1,000.  
Am. k.  
and w.  
300.

## CHAPTER VII.

Washington taken by the British.—Baltimore threatened.

1. THE British fleet in the Chesapeake was augmented by the arrival of Admiral Cochrane, who had been sent out with a large land force, commanded by Gen. Ross; in pursuance of the resolution which had been taken by the British government, "to destroy and

Aug. 17.  
Cochrane.  
Army  
under  
Ross.

11. What was the condition of the American army after the battle? What the strength of the British? What was done by each? What loss occurred? — 12. Describe the sortie from Fort Erie? What was the loss? What feeling had the country now respecting this army? What had the army shown? Who joined Gen. Brown? With what force?

CHAPTER VII.—1. What barbarous resolution had been taken by the British government?

P'T. IV. lay waste such towns and districts upon the coast, as  
 P'D. II. might be found assailable." It was on the 19th, that  
 CH. VII. Gen. Ross landed at Benedict with 5,000 infantry, and  
 Aug. 22. began his march to Washington, distant twenty-seven  
 Pig miles, keeping along the right bank of the Patuxent.  
 Point. At Pig Point, was stationed an American flotilla, com-  
 Barney's manded by Com. Barney. He blew up the boats, and  
 flotilla. retired with his men.

2. The enemy's approach to Washington was by  
 Aug. 24. the Bladensburg road. Here he was met by Gen.  
 Bladens- Stansbury, with the militia from Baltimore; by Com.  
 burg. Barney's brave marines, and finally, by the small army  
 Am. loss, under Gen. Winder, to which had been assigned the  
 80. defense of the capital. The British were victorious.  
 Br. 249.

3. Gen. Ross entered Washington at eight in the  
 Aug. 25. evening. His troops burnt, not only the capitol, which  
 Gen. was in an unfinished state, but its extensive library,  
 Ross en- records, and other collections; appertaining not to war,  
 ters the but to peace and civilization. The public offices and  
 capital. the president's house were wantonly sacrificed, to-  
 gether with many private dwellings. This barbarous  
 usage irritated, as it insulted the American nation, and  
 made the war popular with all parties.

4. Admiral Cochrane, having received on board his  
 fleet the elated conquerors, the combined land and  
 Sept. 11. sea forces moved on to the attack of Baltimore. As-  
 The Br. cending the Chesapeake, they appeared at the mouth  
 threaten of the Patapsco, fourteen miles from Baltimore. Gen.  
 Balti- Ross, with his army, amounting to about 5,000, de-  
 more. embarked at North Point, and commenced his march  
 towards the city.

5. Gen. Smith, commanded the defenders. He dis-  
 Sept. 12. patched 2,000 men, under Gen. Stricker, who advanced  
 Skir- to meet the enemy. A skirmish ensued, in which  
 mish. Gen. Ross was killed. Col. Brooke, having the in-  
 Death of structions of Gen. Ross, continued to move forward.  
 Ross. The Americans gave way, and Gen. Stricker retired to

---

1. What sea and land forces had been sent out? — 2. What opposition did Gen. Ross meet? What was the loss in the battle of Bladensburg? — 3. When did the British enter Washington? What did they destroy? — 4. Where did they next go? — 5. What steps were taken to defend Baltimore?

the heights, where Gen. Smith was stationed with the main army. P'T. IV.

6. Col. Brooke could not draw Gen. Smith from his entrenchments. The fleet had not been able to pass Fort McHenry. Brooke removed his troops in the night, and re-embarked at North Point, to the great joy of the inhabitants of Baltimore. P'D. II.  
CH. VII.  
Night of  
Sept. 14.  
The Br.  
with-  
draw.

7. The eastern portion of the coast of Maine, was taken into quiet possession by the British. The frigate, John Adams, had been placed in the Penobscot river, near Hampden, for preservation. On the approach of the British, the militia, who were there stationed as a guard, blew up the frigate and fled. July and  
August.  
Maine.

8. A British fleet under Com. Hardy appeared before Stonington. They landed and attacked at different points. So far were they from finding that Connecticut was attached to the British cause, that no where had their predatory excursions been met, by the militia, with more spirit. After bombarding the place for three days, Com. Hardy drew off his fleet. Aug. 9.  
British  
attack  
Stonington, but  
are re-  
pulsed

9. The British army in Canada was augmented by another body of those troops, who had served under Wellington. With such an army, fourteen thousand strong, Sir George Prevost invaded by the western bank of Lake Champlain. From Champlain, he proclaimed, that his arms would only be directed against the government, and those who supported it; while no injury should be done to the peaceful and unoffending inhabitants. Sept. 3.  
Sir G.  
Prevost  
invades  
at Cham-  
plain.  
His pro-  
clama-  
tion of-  
fends the  
people.

10. The fire of genuine patriotism rekindled in the breasts of the Americans, when they heard, that an invading enemy had dared to call on the people to separate themselves from their government. The inhabitants of the northern part of New York, and the hardy sons of the Green Mountains, without distinction of party, rose in arms, and hastened towards the scene of action. They  
rise to  
oppose  
the inva-  
ders.

---

6. Why did Col. Brooke withdraw? — 7. What happened in Maine? — 8. What in Connecticut? — 9. What reinforcement had Sir G. Prevost received? What was his force? How did he employ it? What proclamation make at Champlain? — 10. What effect did it produce?



**P.T. IV.** 11. Sir George Prevost advanced upon Plattsburg.  
**P.D. II.** His way was obstructed by the felling of trees, and by  
**CH. VII.** a party, who in a skirmish, killed or wounded 120 of  
 his men. But there was not a force at Plattsburg,  
**1814.** which, at that time, could have resisted so formidable  
 an army. Gen. Izard's departure had left Gen. Ma-  
 comb, his successor, not more than 2,000 regulars.  
 Volunteers were, however, hourly arriving.

Condi-  
 tion of  
 the Am.  
 force.

The na-  
 val force  
 on Lake  
 Cham-  
 plain.

12. Sir George waited, expecting that his navy would get the control of the waters of Lake Champlain. It was commanded by Com. Downie, and was composed of the *Confiance*, a frigate of thirty-nine guns, with several smaller vessels, mounting, in the whole, ninety-five guns, and having 1,000 men. The American squadron, under Com. Macdonough, which was anchored in the bay, mounted no more than eighty-six guns, and had only 820 men. It consisted of the *Saratoga* of twenty-six guns, three small vessels, and ten galleys.

Sept. 11.  
 Naval  
 battle on  
 Cham-  
 plain  
 Br. loss,  
 k. 84, w.  
 119, pris.  
 800.  
 Am. k.  
 52, w. 58.

13. Com. Downie chose his position and made the attack. The fleets engaged at nine in the morning. The eager crowds upon the shore, beheld the combat under circumstances of intense and various interest. The powerful army of Prevost, was formed in order of battle, to follow up the striking of the American flag, with an assault, which the Americans, who beheld the fight, had reason to believe must be successful. But it was the British, and not the American flag which was struck. Great was the joy of the inhabitants. Sir George Prevost retreated in such haste, that he left a quantity of stores and ammunition behind. He was pursued by the Vermont volunteers under Gen. Strong, who cut off a straggling party. The whole of the British fleet remained the prize of the Americans.

Com.  
 Porter  
 in the  
 Pacific.

14. Com. Porter, who sailed in the frigate *Essex*, had cruised in the Pacific Ocean. He had greatly

11. What resistance was made by the Americans? What force had Gen. Macomb? — 12. Why did Sir George suspend his attack? What naval force had the British on the Lake? What had the Americans? — 13. Describe the naval battle on Lake Champlain?



annoyed the enemy's commerce, having captured twelve armed whale ships, whose aggregate force amounted to 107 guns, and 302 men. One of these prizes was equipped,—named the Essex Junior, and given in command to Lieut. Downes.

P.T. IV.

P.D. II.  
CH. VII.

1814

15. To meet the Essex, the British admiralty had sent out Com. Hillyar, with the Phebe frigate, accompanied by Capt. Tucker, with the Cherub sloop of war. Com. Porter finding that this squadron was greatly his superior in force, remained in the harbor of Valparaiso. But at length the Phebe approached, when by a storm the Essex had been partially disabled. Porter, however, joined battle, and fought the most severe naval action of the whole war. He did not surrender until all his officers but one were disabled, and nearly three-quarters of his crew.

Com.  
Hillyar  
sent to  
meet  
him.The Es-  
sex cap-  
tured.  
Am. loss,  
227.

16. The sloop of war Frolic, was captured by a British frigate. The American sloop of war Peacock, fought and took the brig Epervier. The Wasp, in command of Capt. Blakeley, sailed from Portsmouth, New Hampshire. She fought the brig Rein-deer, and was conqueror after a desperate battle. Continuing her cruise, she next met, fought, and conquered the brig Avon. Three British vessels hove in sight and the Wasp left her prize. She afterwards captured fifteen merchant vessels. But the gallant ship was heard of no more; and she probably went down at sea.

April 21.

April 29.

Capt.  
War-  
rington  
takes a  
prize.The  
Wasp  
founders  
at sea.

17. The discontents of the opposition party, produced a convention, which met at Hartford. Delegates were appointed by the legislatures of three states, Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island. This assemblage, and the resolutions which they passed, were considered by the people generally, as tending to separate New England from the Union, at least in degree; and the convention was therefore very

Dec. 14.  
Conven-  
tion  
meet at  
Hartford

---

14. Where was Com. Porter? What had he done? — 15. Who was sent to meet him? What was the consequence? What was the American loss? — 16. What naval actions occurred in April and May? Give an account of the Wasp? — 17. On what occasion did a convention meet at Hartford? Was this an affair of individuals acting in their private capacity, or one in which state governments were implicated? Why was it unpopular?

P<sup>T</sup>. IV. unpopular. The committee by whom the resolutions,  
 P<sup>D</sup>. II. were to be transmitted, met the news of peace, on their  
 CH. VIII. way to Washington.

1814.

## CHAPTER VIII.

British invasion and defeat at New Orleans.

Pensacola used as a hostile post.

1. AFTER the treaty with the Creeks, Gen. Jackson had fixed his head-quarters at Mobile. Here he learned that three British ships had entered the harbour of Pensacola, and landed about 300 men, under Col. Nicholls, together with a large quantity of guns and ammunition, to arm the Indians; and that he had published a proclamation, endeavoring to incite the people to rise against the government.

La Fitte and the Barratarians.

2. There were a band of pirates, called the Barratarians, from their island of Barrataria. Col. Nicholls attempted to gain La Fitte, the daring chief of the band. He gave Nicholls to think that he would aid him, until he had learned from him, that the British were to make a powerful attempt upon New Orleans. La Fitte then went to Claiborne, the governor of Louisiana, and laid open the whole scheme. The pirates were promised pardon, if they would now come forward, in defense of their country. These conditions they gladly accepted; and rendered efficient service.

Nov. 7. Jackson takes Pensacola.

3. Gen. Jackson, seeing how the British were using a Spanish port, for hostile acts against the United States, went to Pensacola, and forcibly took possession of the place. The British destroyed the forts at the entrance of the harbor, and with their shipping, evacuated the bay.

4. There Gen. Jackson was informed, that Admiral

---

CHAPTER VIII.—1. Where was Gen. Jackson after the peace with the Creeks? What did he learn had happened at Pensacola? —2. Give an account of the Barratarians? —3. What course did Jackson take with respect to Pensacola?

Cochrane had been reinforced at Bermuda, and that thirteen ships of the line, with transports, and an army of ten thousand men, were advancing. Believing New Orleans to be their destination, he marched for that place, and reached it on the 1st of December.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. II  
CH. VIII.  
1814.

5. The inhabitants were already preparing for invasion, particularly Gov. Claiborne, and Edward Livingston. On Gen. Jackson's arrival, all agreeing to put him at the head of affairs, he spared no pains, nor forgot any possible resource to enable the Louisianians to meet the coming shock. He had a motley mass of persons under his direction; and a few days must decide the fate of New Orleans. To direct their energies, and to keep them from favoring the enemy, which he had reason to fear some were induced to do, he took the daring responsibility of proclaiming martial law.

Gen.  
Jackson  
placed at  
the head.

6. The enemy passed into Lake Borgne. They then mastered a flotilla, which, commanded by Capt. Jones, guarded the passes into Lake Pontchartrain. Gen. Kean, at the head of 3,000 British troops, landed at the head of Lake Borgne, and took post on the Mississippi, nine miles below New Orleans. The next day, late in the afternoon, Gen. Jackson attacked him; but the British troops stood their ground. The Americans retired to a strong position, which was fortified with great care and skill, and in a novel and effectual manner. Bags of cotton were used in making the breast work; the river was on one side of the army, and a thick wood on the other.

Dec. 13.

Dec. 22

Dec. 23.  
Whole  
Am. loss  
100, Br.  
224, w.  
un-  
known.

7. Sir Edward Packenham, the commander-in-chief of the British force, accompanied by Major Gen. Gibbs, arrived at the British encampment with the main army, and a large body of artillery. On the 28th, Sir Edward advanced with his army and artillery, and attacked

Dec. 15.

---

4. What did he hear, and what do? — 5. What course did the inhabitants of New Orleans take? What bold measures did Gen. Jackson pursue? — 6. Describe the course of the enemy? What occurred on the 23d of Dec.? What was the loss on both sides? What can you say of the position where Gen. Jackson entrenched his army? Of his manner of fortification? — 7. What happened on the 28th?

P'T. IV. the American camp. For seven hours he continued  
P'D. II. the assault, when he retired.

CH. IX. 8. On the first day of the new year, both armies  
1815. received reinforcements. That of the British now  
Jan. 1. amounted to 14,000, while all that Jackson had under  
his command were 6,000, and a part of these undisciplined.

Jan. 8. 9. On the 8th of January, the British made their  
Battle of grand assault on the American camp, and were entirely  
New defeated. They attacked three times with great spirit,  
Orleans. and were three times repulsed by the well-directed fire  
of the American marksmen. Sir Edward Packenham  
was killed, and the two generals next in command  
were wounded. The disparity of loss on this occa-  
sion is utterly astonishing. While that of the enemy  
Br. loss was 2,600, that of the Americans was but seven killed,  
2,600, was 2,600, that of the Americans was but seven killed,  
Am. loss, and six wounded. Completely disheartened, the Bri-  
k. 7, w. tish abandoned the expedition on the night of the 18th,  
6. leaving behind, their wounded and artillery.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

Peace with England.—Naval combats.—War with Algiers.

Feb. 17. 1. ON the 17th of February, while the Americans  
Peace were yet rejoicing for the victory at New Orleans, a  
pro- special messenger arrived from Europe, bringing a  
claimed. treaty of peace, which the commissioners had con-  
cluded in the month of December, at Ghent. This  
treaty, which was immediately ratified by the president  
and senate, stipulated that all places taken during the  
war should be restored, and the boundaries between  
the American and British dominions revised. . . . The  
motives for the impressment of seamen had ceased

---

8. What was the numerical force of each army? —9. De-  
scribe the remarkable battle of the 8th of January?

CHAPTER IX.—1. What news arrived on the 17th of February  
1815? At what time was the treaty concluded? What were  
some of its stipulations?

with the wars in Europe; but America had failed to compel England to relinquish what, by a perversion of language, she calls the "right of search."

P.T. IV.  
P'D. II.  
CH. IX.

2. On the 6th of April, a barbarous massacre was committed by the garrison at Dartmoor prison, in England, upon the defenceless Americans, who were there confined. The British government were not, however, implicated in the transaction.

1815.  
Dartmoor  
massacre.  
k. 63.

3. The United States declared war against Algiers. The Algerines had violated the treaty of 1795, and committed depredations upon the commerce of the Republic. A squadron, under Com. Decatur, captured in the Mediterranean, an Algerine frigate; and also a brig, carrying twenty-two guns. He then sailed for Algiers. The Dey, intimidated, signed a treaty of peace, which was highly honourable and advantageous to the Americans.

War  
with  
Algiers.  
Captures  
June 17  
and 19.

4. At the close of the war, the regular army of the United States was reduced to 10,000 men. For the better protection of the country, in case of another war, congress appropriated a large sum for fortifying the sea-coast and inland frontiers, and for the increase of the navy. . . . An act was passed by congress, to establish a national bank, with a capital of thirty-five millions of dollars. . . . In December, the Indiana territory was admitted into the Union as a state.

Army re-  
duced.

April.  
1816.  
A nation-  
al bank.

5. As early as the year 1790, manufactories for spinning cotton, and for manufacturing coarse cotton cloths, were attempted in the state of Rhode Island. They were at first on a small scale; but as the cloths found a ready market, their number and extent gradually increased. The embarrassments, to which commerce was subjected previous to the war, had increased the demand for American goods; and led the people to reflect upon the importance of rendering themselves independent of the manufactures of foreign nations.

Progress  
of manu-  
factories  
for cot-  
ton cloth

2. What massacre occurred? — 3. What war was declared? What squadron was sent out? What was done by Decatur? — 4. What was the number of the army? What was done to put the country in a state of defense? What act was passed in April, 1816? What state was admitted? — 5. Give some account of the progress, before the war, of manufacturing cotton cloth?



**P'T. IV.** 6. During the war, large capitals were vested in manufacturing establishments, from which the capitalists realized a handsome profit. But at its close, the English having made great improvements in labor-saving machines, and being able to sell their goods at a much lower rate than the American manufacturers could afford, the country was immediately filled by importations from England. The American manufactures being in their infancy, could not stand the shock, and many failed.

**P'D. II.**  
**CH. IX.**  
**1816.**

Manu-  
factures  
encou-  
raged by  
a new  
tariff

7. The manufacturers then petitioned government for protection, to enable them to withstand the competition; and in consequence of this petition, the committee on commerce and manufactures, in 1816, recommended that an additional duty should be laid on imported goods. A new tariff, or arrangement of duties, was accordingly formed, by which a small increase of duty was laid upon some fabrics, such as coarse cotton goods; but from the strength of the opposition, it was not sufficient to afford the desired protection.

Coloni-  
zation  
society  
first pro-  
posed.

**1817.**  
**Mar. 4.**

8. A society for colonizing free blacks was formed. The society purchased land in Africa, where they yearly removed considerable numbers of the free blacks from America. The colony thus formed is named Liberia. Hopes are entertained that it will become the nucleus of a nation of civilized Africans; and that much good will thus be done, in the way of checking the slave-trade, and enabling Africa to advance in civilization. . . . James Monroe was inaugurated president, and Daniel D. Tompkins, vice-president.

Indians  
cede  
lands in  
Ohio to  
the U. S.

9. A treaty was made with the chiefs of the Wyandot, Delaware, Shawanese, Seneca, Ottoway, Chipewewa, and Pottowattamie Indians. Each of these tribes ceded to the United States, all lands to which they had any title within the limits of Ohio. The In-

---

6. How did the manufacturers succeed during the war? How after the war? — 7. What did the manufacturers then desire the government to do? What was accordingly done? — 8. What society was formed? What is the African colony called? What hopes are entertained concerning it? Who were made president and vice-president? — 9. What treaty did the government make?

dians were, if they chose, to remain on the ceded lands, subject to the laws of the state and country. . . . The territory of Mississippi was this year admitted into the Union.

P.T. IV.

P.D. II.  
CH. X.

1817

## CHAPTER X.

### Internal Improvements.—Seminole War.

1. THE political feuds which had, since the revolution, occasioned so much animosity, were now gradually subsiding. A spirit of improvement was also spreading over the country. Facilities for travelling, and conveying merchandise and produce, were continually increasing. These improvements were, however, made by the state governments; among which, the wealthy state of New York, at whose head was the illustrious De Witt Clinton, took the lead. The great western canal, connecting Lake Erie with the waters of the Hudson; and the northern canal, bringing to the same river the waters of Lake Champlain, were fully completed.

Internal  
improvements.De Witt  
Clinton.The  
great canals of  
N. Y.

2. Congress, however, by the consent of the legislatures of Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Virginia, caused the great Cumberland road to be made; connecting, through the seat of government, the eastern with the western states, and passing over some of the highest mountains in the Union. Military roads were opened from Plattsburg to Sackett's Harbor, and from Detroit to the rapids of the Maumee. Military posts were established in the far West. One of these was at the mouth of the Yellow Stone River.

The  
Cumberland  
Road.

3 Outlaws from the Creek nation, and negroes, who had fled from their masters, had united with the Semi-

The Seminole  
war.

CHAPTER X.—1. What was at this time the condition of the country? By what authority were the improvements in roads, canals, &c., made? — 2. What is said of New York? What road was, however, made by congress? What military roads were made? What posts established?

**P.T. IV.** nole Indians of Florida, and massacres became so frequent, that the inhabitants were obliged to flee from their homes for security. They were incited by an Indian prophet, and by Arbuthnot and Ambrister, two English emissaries.

**P.D. II.**  
**CH. X.**  
**Dec.**  
**1817.**  
**Lieut.**  
**Scott and**  
**34 men**  
**killed.**  
**General**  
**Jackson**  
**makes a**  
**short**  
**cam-**  
**paign.**

4. A detachment of forty soldiers, near the river Apalachicola, were fired upon by a body of Indians, who lay in ambush. Lieut. Scott, who commanded, and all the party, except six, were killed. The offenders were demanded, but the chiefs refused to give them up. Gen. Jackson, with a body of Tennesseans, was ordered to the spot. He soon defeated and dispersed them. Persuaded that the Spaniards furnished the Indians with supplies, and were active in fomenting disturbances, he entered Florida, took possession of forts, St. Marks, and Pensacola, and made prisoners of Arbuthnot, Ambrister, and the prophet.

**Arbuth-**  
**not and**  
**Ambris-**  
**ter.**

5. A court-martial was ordered by Gen. Jackson, for the trial of Arbuthnot and Ambrister. They were found guilty of "exciting and stirring up the Creek Indians to war against the United States," and also, of supplying them the means to carry on the war. Gen. Jackson caused them both to be executed.

**1818.**  
**Officers**  
**provided**  
**for.**  
**The**  
**Chicka-**  
**saws**  
**cede**  
**lands**  
**to the**  
**U. S.**

6. The indigent officers and soldiers of the revolution had already been partially provided for. A more ample provision was now made, by which every officer, who had served nine months at any period of the revolutionary war, and whose annual income did not exceed one hundred dollars, received a pension of twenty dollars a month; and every needy private soldier who had served that length of time received eight.... This year the Chickasaws ceded to the government of the United States, all their lands west of the Tennessee river, in the states of Kentucky and Tennessee.

7. The condition of those tribes living within the territories of the United States, now attracted the at-

3. What was the cause of the Seminole war? By whom were the Indians incited? — 4. Relate the catastrophe of Lieut. Scott and his party? Who was sent against the Indians? What did he do? — 5. What did he order? What was done in reference to Arbuthnot and Ambrister? — 6. What measure of justice did congress adopt? What tribe ceded their lands to the United States?

tention of the government, and a humane policy dictated its measures. The sum of 10,000 dollars was annually appropriated for the purpose of establishing schools among them, and to promote, in other ways, their civilization. Missionaries supported by societies went among the Indians, and success, in many instances, crowned their efforts. . . . Alabama territory was this year admitted into the union of the states; and the territory of Arkansas, separated from Missouri territory.

P'T. IV.  
P'D. II.  
CH. X.

1819.

Alabama.

8. In December, 1818, De Witt Clinton, then governor of New York, recommended in his message to the legislature of that state, some special attention to the education of females. No reason could be shown, why they, being endued with the high attributes of mind in common with the other sex, should be denied the enjoyment and added means of usefulness, attendant on mental cultivation. The legislature, therefore, passed an act, in the course of the session, which was probably the first act of any legislature, making public provision for the education of young women. It provided that academies, for their instruction in the higher branches of learning, should be privileged to receive a share of the literature fund.

1818.

De Witt Clinton recommends attention to female education.

1819.

Feb. The legislature pass an act accordingly.

9. Several of the states, especially among those recently admitted, have made provision for the same object. Religious denominations and wealthy parents of daughters, have also favored it; and throughout the country, female schools have sprung up. Large and handsome edifices are erected; and adequate teachers, libraries and apparatus, are provided for the use of the students.

Large edifices, apparatus, &c. furnished.

10. On the 23d of February, 1819, a treaty was negotiated at Washington, between John Quincy Adams, secretary of state, and Don Onís, the Spanish minister; by which, Spain ceded to the United States,

Feb. 23. Correspondence between Mr. Adams and Don Onís.

7. What was done in respect to the Indian tribes? What state was admitted? What territory was made? — 8. What state patronized female education? Who recommended it? What act was passed? — 9. What has since been done in regard to female education? — 10. What treaty was negotiated? What territory was ceded?

P.T. IV. East and West Florida, and the adjacent islands. The  
 P.D. II. United States agreed on their part, to pay to their own  
 CH. X. citizens, what Spain owed them on account of unlaw-  
 1820. ful seizures of their vessels; to an amount not exceed-  
 Posses- ing five millions of dollars. The treaty was, there-  
 sion fore, ratified by the Spanish government in October,  
 given. 1820, and possession of the Floridas given the follow-  
 1821. ing year.

---

10. What was the American government to pay for it? When was the treaty ratified? When was possession given?

---

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What epoch marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point out its place on the chronographer.

In 1803 occurred war with Tripoli, and peace was made in 1805. Point out the places of these dates. An embargo was laid by congress, in 1807. Point out the place of this year. Mr. Madison was made president in 1809. The third census was taken in 1810. What are the places of these dates?

War was declared in 1812. Point out the place of that year. Gen. Hull surrendered in August, 1812. The *Guerriere* was captured by the *Constitution*, the same year. Point out its place. Perry gained the battle of Lake Erie, September 10th, 1813. Gen. Harrison gained the battle of the Thames, October 5th, 1813. Point out the place of these events. The British were defeated at Chippewa, July 5th, and at Bridgewater, July 25th, 1814, by Gen. Scott. Point out the place of these events.

Washington was taken by the British in 1814. The battle of Lake Champlain occurred, Sept. 11, the same year. Point out the year. The battle of New Orleans occurred January 8th, 1815. Peace was proclaimed, February 17th, 1815. Point out the place of this year. A new tariff was formed in 1816. Point out the place of this date. At what epoch does this period terminate? What is its date? Point to its place on the chronographer.









Osceola's Attack.

## PERIOD III.

FROM  
THE CESSION } 1820, } OF FLORIDA,  
TO  
THE DEATH } 1841. } OF HARRISON.

### CHAPTER I.

The Missouri Question.—The Tariff.—Gen. Lafayette's Visit.

1. A QUESTION was now debated in Congress, P.T. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. I. which agitated the whole country. It had reference to a subject, which, at this time, more threatens the stability of the Union, and consequently the existence of this nation, than any other. This is slavery. The question arose on a petition presented to congress from the territory of Missouri, praying for authority to form a state government, and to be admitted into the Union. 1820.  
The Missouri question. A bill was accordingly introduced for that purpose, but with an amendment, prohibiting slavery within the new state. In this form, it passed the house of representatives, but was arrested in the senate.

2. After much discussion, a compromise was agreed

---

CHAPTER I.—1. What question was at this period debated in congress? What was done in reference to it?

**P.T. IV.** on, and a bill passed for the admission of Missouri  
**P.D. III.** without any restriction, but with the inhibition of  
**CH. I.** slavery throughout the territories of the United States,  
 north of 36° 30' north latitude. Maine was also re-  
**1821.** ceived into the Union. . . Mr. Monroe, by a vote nearly  
 Missouri admitted unanimous, entered upon his second term of office.  
 without restriction. Mr. Tompkins was also continued in the vice-pre-  
 sidency. . . By the fourth census the number of inhabi-  
 Maine a separate state. tants in 1820 was found to be 9,625,734, of whom  
 1,531,436 were slaves.

**3.** President Monroe appointed Gen. Jackson go-  
 Jackson gov. of Florida. vernor of Florida in March, but it was not until Au-  
 Aug. 22. gust that the reluctant Spanish officers yielded up their  
 Enters on his duties. posts. . . The Alligator, a United States' schooner,  
 was sent against the pirates in the West Indian  
 seas, and recaptured five vessels belonging to Ameri-  
 cans. She also took one piratical schooner; but  
**1822.** Allen, the brave commander of the Alligator, was mor-  
 tally wounded in the engagement.

**1823.** **4.** By recommendation of the president the inde-  
 Republics of S. A. pendence of the South American Republics was ac-  
 knowledged, and ministers were appointed to Mexico,  
 Buenos Ayres, Columbia, and Chili. . . Articles were  
 entered into, by the United States and Great Britain,  
 Slave-trade prohibited. authorising the commissioned officers of each nation,  
 to capture and condemn the ships of the other, which  
 should be concerned in the slave trade.

**1824.** **5.** Notwithstanding the depression which succeeded  
 the war, the manufactures of cotton, had ultimately  
 proved successful. Domestic cottons almost supplied  
 the country, and considerable quantities were exported  
 to South America. Factories for printing calicoes had  
 been erected in a few places, and in some instances  
 the manufacture of lace had been attempted. The  
 manufacturers and their friends, still wished the govern-  
 ment to lay such a duty on imported cotton goods, as

The tariff question again agitated.

---

**2.** What compromise was made? What other state was ad-  
 mitted at the same time? What was the number of inhabitants  
 in 1820? — **3.** Who was made governor of Florida? What was  
 done in the West Indian seas? — **4.** What was done in reference  
 to the South American Republics? In regard to the slave-trade?  
 — **5.** What protection did the manufacturers still desire?

must make them so high in the market, that they could afford to undersell foreign goods of the kind. After much discussion, a bill for a new tariff passed. It afforded the desired protection to cotton goods; but the question was still agitated in favour of the manufactures of wool, iron, &c.

P.T. IV.

P.D. III.

CH. I.

1824.

6. General Lafayette\* arrived in New York, in consequence of a special invitation, which congress had given him, to become the guest of America. His feelings were intense at revisiting again, in prosperity, the country, which he had sought, and made his own in adversity. Esteemed, as he was, for his virtues, and consecrated by his sufferings and constancy, no good man of any country could view him, without an awe mingled with tenderness; but to Americans there was, besides—gratitude for his services, and an associated remembrance, of those worthies, with whom he had lived.

Aug. 15.

Lafayette arrives.

Deep feeling of all.

7. Thousands assembled to meet Lafayette at New York; who manifested their joy at beholding him, by shouts, acclamations, and tears. He rode, uncovered from the battery to the City Hall, receiving and returning the affectionate gratulations of the multitude. At the City Hall, he was welcomed by an address from the mayor. He then met with a few grey-headed veterans of the revolution, his old companions in arms; and though nearly half a century had passed since they parted, his faithful memory had kept their countenances and names.

His reception in N. Y.

8. He travelled first east; then south and west, visiting all the principal cities, and every state in the Union. His whole progress through the United States was one continued triumph, the most illustrious of

His tour a triumph

\* In the days of the revolution, The Marquis de la Fayette, was the style by which the hereditary nobleman was known. Subsequently he renounced all distinctions of this kind, and would receive no other title than that given by his military rank. His address was then General Lafayette.

5. Was a new tariff formed which met their wishes?—6. What is here said of Gen. Lafayette?—7. How was he received in New York?—8. What can you say of his travels and progress through the country?



P.T. IV. any in history. Instead of captives chained to a triumphal car, his was the affections of the people. His  
 P.D. III. glory was the prosperity and happiness of his adopted  
 CH. I. country. Nor was it merely honor, which the grateful republic gave to her former defender. Congress  
 1825. voted him the sum of two hundred thousand dollars,  
 January. and a township of land in Florida.

9. During Mr. Monroe's administration, America  
 1817 enjoyed profound peace. Sixty millions of her national  
 to debt was discharged. The Floridas were peace-  
 1825. ably acquired, and the western limits fixed at the Pacific ocean. The voice of party spirit had died away,  
 National prosperity and peace. and the period is still spoken of, as the "era of good feeling."

10. Mr. Monroe's second term of office having expired, four among the principal citizens were set up as  
 Four candidates for the presidency—John Quincy Adams, Andrew Jackson, Henry Clay, and William H. Crawford.  
 No choice by the college of electors. No choice being made by the electors, a president was to be chosen by the house of representatives, from the three candidates whose number of votes stood highest. These were Messrs Adams, Jackson, and Crawford. Mr. Adams was chosen.

11. On the 4th of July, 1826, died, John Adams  
 1826. and Thomas Jefferson. Their death occurring on the  
 July 4. same day, and that, the birth day of the nation, caused much public feeling. Another anniversary witnessed the death of Mr. Monroe.  
 1831. July 4.

12. A man by the name of William Morgan, who was preparing to publish a book, purporting to disclose the secrets of Free-masonry, was taken, on the  
 1826. 11th of September, under color of a criminal process, from Batavia, in Genesee county, New York, to Canandaigua, in Ontario county—examined and discharged; but on the same day he was arrested for debt, and confined in the county jail, by the persons who

---

8. Of the gratitude of our republic on this occasion?—9. What was now the condition of the country?—10. What was the course of the election?—11. What three ex-presidents died on the 4th of July? In what years?—12. What offence had William Morgan given the Masonic Societies? Give an account of Morgan's abduction?

brought the first charge against him. They discharged the debt themselves, and on his leaving the prison, in the evening, he was seized, and forced into a carriage, which was rapidly driven out of the village, and he was never seen by his friends again.

13. The Legislature of New York appointed a committee of investigation, who reported that William Morgan had been put to death. The years that have elapsed since his mysterious disappearance, have confirmed their decision. The persons who were suspected of being the principal actors in the tragedy, fled from their homes and took refuge under fictitious names, in distant places; and all are said to have been cut off from the land of the living, by disaster or violence. Morgan's abduction excited a strong prejudice against all Masonic societies; and a political party was formed, called Anti-masonic.

P'T. IV.  
P'D. III.  
CH. II.

1826.  
Commit-  
tee of in-  
vestiga-  
tion.

Anti-ma-  
sonic  
party.

## CHAPTER II.

Black Hawk's war.—The Cholera.—Nullification.

1. THE tariff act was again amended and additional duties were laid on wool and woollens, iron, hemp and its fabrics, lead, distilled spirits, silk stuffs, window-glass and cottons. The manufacturing states received the law with warm approbation, while the southern states regarded it as highly prejudicial to the interests of the cotton planter. . . . Gen. Jackson was inaugurated president, and John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, vice-president, of the United States.

The  
tariff.

1829.  
Mar. 4.  
Jack-  
son's in-  
augura-  
tion

2. Though the tariff bill found but few friends in the southern states, the citizens of most of them were in favor of seeking its repeal by constitutional mea-

13. What was done in consequence of Morgan's abduction?  
CHAPTER II.—1. What further was done in reference to the tariff? In what year was President Jackson's first inauguration? Who was made vice-president?

**P.T. IV.** sures. South Carolina was the head-quarters of the  
**P.D. III.** opposition, but even there was a powerful party, who  
**CH. II.** were styled the Friends of the Union. A small ma-  
**1832.** jority, however, now first called the "state rights"  
 party, and afterwards the "nullifiers," were preparing  
 themselves, by high excitement, for rash measures.

April.  
 Black  
 Hawk's  
 war.

3. The Winnebagoes, Sacs, and Foxes, inhabiting the upper Mississippi, recrossed that river under their chief, Black Hawk, and being well mounted and armed, they scattered rapidly their war parties over that defenseless country, breaking up settlements, killing whole families, and burning their dwellings. Gens. Atkinson and Scott, were charged with the defense of the frontier.

June 9.  
 Cholera  
 at  
 Quebec.

June 26.  
 At New  
 York.

Progress  
 of the  
 cholera  
 through  
 the  
 Union.

4. The Asiatic cholera made its appearance in Canada, on the 9th of June, among some newly arrived Irish emigrants. It proceeded rapidly along the valleys of the St. Lawrence, Champlain and Hudson, and on the 26th, several cases occurred in the city of New York. A great proportion of the inhabitants left the place in dismay, but notwithstanding the reduction of numbers, the ravages of the disease were appalling. It spread with great rapidity throughout the states of New York and Michigan, and along the valleys of the Ohio and Mississippi, to the Gulph of Mexico. From New York it went south through the Atlantic states, as far as North Carolina. It apparently followed the great routes of travel, both on the land and water.

July.  
 Gen.  
 Scott  
 and  
 the  
 troops  
 for the  
 Indian  
 war.

5. Gen. Scott, hastening to the seat of the war, embarked a considerable force in steamboats, at Buffalo. The season was hot, the boats were crowded, and the cholera broke out among the troops. Language cannot depict the distress that ensued, both before and after their landing. Many died; many deserted, from dread of the disease, and perished in the woods; either from cholera or starvation. . . . Gen. Atkinson came up with Black Hawk's army, near the mouth of the upper

---

2. What party now arose in South Carolina? — 3. Give some account of Black Hawk's war? — 4. At what time did the Asiatic cholera make its appearance, and where? What course did it pursue? — 5. By what cause was Gen. Scott detained with his troops? What was done by Gen. Atkinson?

Iowa, and routed and dispersed them. Black Hawk, P'T. IV.  
his son, and several warriors of note, were made pri- P'D. III.  
soners. CH. II.

6 The state rights party, in South Carolina, held a convention at Columbia, from whence they issued an ordinance in the name of the people, in which they declared that congress, in laying protective duties, had exceeded its just powers; and that the several acts alluded to, should, from that time, be utterly *null and void*; and that it should be the duty of the legislature and the courts of justice of South Carolina, to adopt measures to arrest their operation, from and after the first of February, 1833.

1832.  
Nov. 19  
Nullifi-  
cation  
ordi-  
nance.

7. The friends of the Union in South Carolina, also held a convention at Columbia. They published a solemn protest against the ordinance. Meetings were held, and similar resolutions passed, in almost every part of the United States. . . . When the legislature of South Carolina convened, Gov. Hamilton, in his message, expressed his approval of the ordinance. He recommended that the militia should be re-organized;—that the executive should be authorized to accept of the services of 12,000 volunteers;—and that provision should be made for procuring heavy ordnance, and other munitions of war.

Nov. 24  
The  
Union-  
ists meet  
and pro-  
test.

Nov. 27.  
State au-  
thorities  
approve.

8. On the 10th of December, President Jackson published a proclamation, in which he said, "I consider, then, the power to annul a law of the United States, assumed by one state, incompatible with the existence of the Union,—contradicted expressly by the constitution,—unauthorized by its spirit,—inconsistent with every principle on which it was founded, and destructive of the great object for which it was formed."

Oct. 10.  
President  
Jack-  
son's  
procla-  
mation.

9. In conclusion, the president plainly said, that the laws of the United States *must be executed*, that he

6. What convention was held? What was declared in the celebrated ordinance?—7. What did the friends of the Union in S. C.? What did the governor?—8. When did the President issue a proclamation? What view did he take of the question of annulling the laws?—9. What did he say in regard to the laws being executed?

P.T. IV. had no discretionary power on the subject; that those  
 P.D. III. who said they might *peaceably* prevent their execu-  
 CH. II. tion, deceived them; that nothing but a forcible oppo-  
 1832. sition could prevent their execution, and that *such op-*  
 Shows position *must be repelled*; for "disunion by armed  
 the nul- force," he said, "is treason." Finally, he appealed to  
 lifiers their the patriotism of South Carolina, to retrace her steps;  
 error, and, to the country, to rally in defense of the Union.  
 and their danger.

10. This proclamation of Gen. Jackson was popular throughout the country generally, with all ranks and parties. It was not, however, immediately followed by submission on the part of South Carolina; but preparations for war went on, both on the side of the general government, and that of the opposing state.

1833. 11. Mr. Clay introduced into the senate his plan of compromise. The bill reduced the duties on certain  
 Feb. 12. articles, and limited the operation of the tariff, to the  
 Mr. 30th of September, 1842. Mr. Clay's compromise  
 Clay's bill was signed by the president, and became a law on  
 compromise. the 3d of March. It gave general content to the citi-  
 Tariff zens of the United States, with whom nothing, politi-  
 bill. cally speaking, is so dear as the Union. It is, in fact,  
 the life of the nation... Gen. Jackson, having been  
 Mar. 4. re-elected president, and Martin Van Buren chosen  
 Jackson vice-president, they were, on the 4th of March, inau-  
 and Van gurated.  
 Buren.

---

10. Was this proclamation popular? Did S. C. immediately submit? — 11. What was introduced into congress? How was it received? What may be said of the Union? At what time was Gen. Jackson's second inauguration? Who was made vice-president?



## CHAPTER III.

The aboriginal tribes of the Mississippi go to the far west.—The Florida war.

1. GEN. JACKSON, in his message, proposed that an ample district west of the Mississippi, and without the limits of any state or territory, should be set apart and guaranteed to the remaining Indian tribes; each to have distinct jurisdiction over the part designated for its use, and free from any control of the United States, other than might be necessary to preserve peace on the frontier. Congress approved the plan; and passed laws, authorizing the president to carry it out.

P'T. IV  
P'D. III.  
CH. III.

1830.

Jackson proposes the removal of the Indians.

2. With the Chickasaws and Choctaws, treaties were made by which they exchanged lands, and quietly emigrated to the country fixed on, which was the territory west of Arkansas. The United States paid the expense of their removal, and supplied them with food for the first year. . . . When Georgia ceded to the United States, April 2. 1802, all that tract of country lying south of Tennessee, and west of the Chatahoochee river, the government paid in hand to that state \$1,250,000, and further agreed, "at their own expense, to extinguish, for the use of Georgia, as early as the same could be *peaceably* obtained upon reasonable terms, the Indian title to the lands lying within the limits of that state."

1831.

2 & 3.

The Chickasaws and Choctaws remove

1802.

Georgia cedes Alabama.

3. The Cherokees, in the meantime, exercised a sort of independent dominion, within their reservations; by which a retreat was furnished for runaway slaves, and fugitives from justice—a set of vagabonds ever ready for violence. This condition of their state was viewed by the people of Georgia as intolerable; and the legislature proceeded to extend its laws and jurisprudence

Cherokees an independent state.

CHAPTER III.—1. What did Gen. Jackson propose with regard to the remaining Indian tribes? What did congress? — 2. What tribes peaceably emigrated? What contract was made between the general government and Georgia? — 3. In what situation were the Georgians placed? What did their legislature?

**P'T. IV.** over the whole Indian territory. The Indians offend  
**P'D. III.** ed, appealed to the general government for redress  
**CH. III.** The well known policy of President Jackson was to  
**1831.** remove them; and the Georgians, thus encouraged,  
 Mission- sought to make their position untenable. They put in  
 aries in prison two missionaries, whom they suspected of dis-  
 prison. suading the Indians against the removal. The pre-  
 sident would do nothing to check these irregular pro-  
 ceedings.

**4.** A treaty was at length obtained by the agents of  
 the general government, from a few of the chiefs, by  
 which the removal of the tribe was to take place. The  
 fairness of this treaty was denied; and the Indians were  
 averse to leaving their pleasant land, and the graves of  
 their fathers. But their removal was at length effect-  
 ed without blood-shed. The power of the United  
 States was, they knew, sufficient to effect it; and they  
**1838.** therefore believed, that resistance would be in vain.  
 Some of the most intelligent of the opposing chiefs  
 have since become convinced, that the removal will  
 be for the ultimate advantage of the Indians.

**1823.** **5.** The greatest difficulty was, however, found with  
 the Seminoles inhabiting East Florida. A treaty was  
 made at Fort Moultrie, with their chiefs, by which they  
 reinquished a large portion of their lands, but reserved  
 a part for the residence of their people. A further treaty  
 was made at Payne's Landing, in Florida, by which  
 they gave up all their reservations, and conditionally  
 agreed to remove. Subsequently, some of their chiefs  
 made this agreement absolute; but the transaction was  
 regarded by the Seminoles generally, as unfair and  
 treacherous.

**1834.** **6.** President Jackson, in 1834, sent Gen. Wiley  
 Thompson to Florida to prepare for the emigration.  
 He soon found that most of the Indians were unwilling  
 to leave their homes. On holding a conference with

---

**3.** What did the Indians? What did Gen. Jackson? What  
 was done in reference to the missionaries? — **4.** What treaty  
 was obtained? And what was at length effected? — **5.** Where  
 was the greatest difficulty found? What treaties were made  
 with the Seminoles? At what times? — **6.** Who was sent as  
 government agent, and what were his first measures?

them, Osceola, their favourite chief, a man great in Indian talents, took a tone that displeased him. He put him in irons, and confined him for a day to prison. Osceola seemed penitent, signed the treaty to remove, and was released. But he dissembled, and concerted with the Indians a deep and cruel revenge.

7. The government ordered troops from the southern posts to repair to Fort Brooke, at Tampa Bay. The command was given to Gen. Clinch, who was at Camp King. Major Dade, with 117 men, marched from Fort Brooke to join him. About eighty miles of the toilsome journey had been accomplished, when, on the morning of the 28th, Major Dade rode in front of his troops, and cheered them with the intelligence that their march was nearly at an end. A volley was fired at the moment, from hundreds of unseen muskets. The speaker, and those he addressed, fell dead. Thirty alone remained, when the Indians drew off. They improved the respite afforded them, to construct a breastwork of trees, which they felled. While they were thus engaged, where was Osceola? It is supposed that he went the twenty miles from Dade's battle-field, to Camp King, to perform a work there.

8. On that day, Gen. Wiley Thompson, with a convivial party, was dining at a house within sight of the garrison. As they sat at table, a discharge from a hundred muskets was poured through the doors and windows. Gen. Thompson fell dead, pierced by fifteen bullets. Of the others, some were killed at the first fire; others, attempting to escape, were murdered without the house. Osceola, at the head of the Indians, had rushed in, and himself scalped the man, who had once placed fetters upon the limbs of the Seminole chief. The Indians then retreated, unmolested by the garrison.

9. In the afternoon, Osceola and his mounted party, returned triumphant from the massacre at Camp King, and attacked, with whoop and yell, the inclosure of the

P'T. IV.  
P'D. III.  
CH. III.

Osceola.

1835.

Dec. 23.  
Dade's  
march.

Dec. 28,  
Dade's  
battle  
field.

Massa-  
cre at  
Camp  
King

Death of  
Gen.  
Thomp-  
son and  
others.

The last  
scene of  
the tra-  
gedy

---

7. Who was appointed to the command? Where was he? Who marched to join him, and with what force? What befel the party?—8. What was done next by the savages?

P<sup>T</sup>. IV. thirty survivors. One by one, bravely fighting, the  
 P<sup>D</sup>. III. officers and soldiers fell. The narrator, Ransom  
 CH. III. Clarke, who was wounded, escaped death by feigning it,  
 1835. and then, almost by miracle, working his way through  
 the woods. He eventually died of his wounds; and  
 thus every one of Dade's army was killed on that  
 fatal field.

Dec. 31. 10. Gen. Clinch collected a force, and marched from  
 Clinch's Fort Drane to the Withlacoochee. But he followed a  
 battle of guide who was in league with the Seminoles. When  
 the the army had in part crossed the Withlacoochee, Osceola  
 Withla- and his warriors rose from concealment, and attacked  
 coochee. the Americans. They charged, and drove the Indians,  
 Am. loss but met a considerable loss; and returned without ef-  
 k. 40, w. fecting their object.  
 60.

11. Emboldened by success, the Seminoles appear-  
 ed in the neighborhood of almost every settlement in  
 Florida. Houses were burned, crops destroyed, ne-  
 groes carried off, and families murdered in every direc-  
 1836. tion. Gen. Scott, now invested with the chief com-  
 Feb. 7. mand, arrived at St. Augustine. The savages having  
 Gen. followed Gen. Clinch, his position at Fort Drane was  
 Scott ar- critical. Gen. Scott sent troops to his relief, and was  
 rives. preparing a plan of offensive operations. Gen. Gaines  
 Feb. 11. landed at Tampa Bay, four days after Scott arrived at  
 Gen. St. Augustine. He brought a force from New Orleans,  
 Gaines brings about 1,000  
 men from N. O. and considered it as his right to command in the  
 peninsula.

12. Gaines marched his troops to Fort Drane; and  
 taking from there, four days provisions, he set out for  
 Feb. 20. the Withlacoochee, to seek the Seminoles. Having  
 Gen. reached that river, the Indians attacked him, and a  
 Gaines's battle ensued. The Americans kept the ground, though  
 battle of the not without considerable loss. The Indians then be-  
 Withla- sieged them in camp. Gen. Clinch approached with  
 coochee. an army. Osceola contrived to amuse Gen. Gaines

---

9. What was the fate of the thirty survivors?—10. Give  
 an account of Gen. Clinch's battle of the Withlacoochee?—

11. What was the conduct of the Indians? Who arrived at St.  
 Augustine? What did he do? What was done by Gen.  
 Gaines?—12. Where did he march? Describe Gen. Gaines'  
 battle of the Withlacoochee? What happened after the battle?

with a parley, until the Indian women and children <sup>P'T. IV.</sup> were removed to the south. There, among the everglades and hammocks, the American troops vainly <sup>P'D. III.</sup> sought the tribe through bogs and fens,—in danger <sup>CH. III</sup> from serpents, and other venomous reptiles,—tortured by poisonous insects, and often the victims of the climate.

13. Gen. Jesup soon arrived to take the command; Gen. Scott, having been ordered to the country of the Creeks. Osceola, under protection of a flag with about seventy of his warriors, came to the American camp. Gen. Jesup believed him to be treacherous, and caused him, with his escort, to be forcibly detained, and subsequently placed in a prison at Fort Moultrie, S. C., where, a few months after, he died of a complaint in the throat.

**1837.**Oct. 21.  
Seizure  
of  
Osceola.**1838.**Jan.  
His  
death.

14. Gen. Jesup, at first supposed that the war would soon be brought to a close, but finding himself mistaken, he directed Col. Taylor to act offensively. This officer set out with a thousand resolute men, who marched four days through wet swampy grounds. On the fifth, the Indians, whom they sought, attacked them at the entrance of the Kissimmee river, into lake Okee-Chobee. The troops engaged them with coolness. The brunt of the battle fell at first on the sixth regiment. Col. Thompson their commander, mortally wounded; died, encouraging his men. The Indians were routed and dispersed, and a hundred gave themselves up to be carried to the west.

**1837**  
Dec. 20.Dec. 25.  
Battle of  
Okee-  
Chobee.

15. Colonel, now General Worth, has the honor of having brought this contest to a close. In the whole history of the United States, no war is related, which, on the whole, is comparable with the Florida war, for danger and difficulty; and no military services are recorded which required, when all things were considered, such Spartan self-devotion.

**1842**

16. Early in May, the Creeks began hostilities—

---

12. To what evils have the army been subjected to in searching for these Indians? — 13. What change of officers occurred? What happened with respect to Osceola? — 14. What were the circumstances connected with the battle of Okee-Chobee? — 15. Who brought the Florida war to a close? What may be said of this war?



P'T. IV. setting fire to houses, and murdering families. They,  
 P'D. III. attacked a steamboat which was ascending the Chata-  
 CH. IV. hoochee, eight miles below Columbus,—killed her  
 1836. pilot, wounded several others, and burned the boat.  
 Another steamboat was fired at the wharf of Roanoke,  
 and the passengers were consumed in the flames. The  
 May 30. barbarians then set fire to the town, and destroyed it.  
 They are over- The governor of Georgia raised troops, took the field  
 powered in person, and Gen. Scott arrived on the 30th of May.  
 Their combined efforts quelled the Creeks, and peace  
 was restored early in the summer.

## CHAPTER IV.

The Bank Question.—The Revulsion.—Van Buren's Administration.—Harrison's Election and Death.

1831. 1. MR. RIVES, at Paris, negotiated with the minister  
 Mr. of Louis Philippe, king of the French, a treaty by which  
 Rives' that nation agreed to give 25,000,000 francs to in-  
 treaty. demnify the United States for spoliation on American  
 commerce, made under the operation of the decrees of  
 Napoleon. The French, however, had neglected to  
 pay the money. Gen. Jackson took such prompt  
 1836. measures and so decided a tone, that in 1836 the de-  
 mand was liquidated agreeably to the treaty. . . . In Sep-  
 1837. tember, 1835, Wisconsin was made a territory, and  
 January. Arkansas, a state. Michigan was, in 1837, admitted  
 Michi- to the Union, making the twenty-sixth state; the ori-  
 gan a ginal number, thirteen, being now exactly doubled.  
 state.  
 1837. 2. Extravagance and luxury had prevailed, and na-  
 tional adversity followed. The opponents of Gen. Jack-  
 son attributed the revulsion to circumstances connected

16. Give an account of the atrocious acts of the Creeks? How were they brought to terms?

CHAPTER IV.—1. What treaty was negotiated by Mr. Rives? When was the money paid? What territory and states were organized? What can you say concerning the number of states at this time? — 2. What had prevailed? What followed?

with the overthrow of the national bank, caused by his hostility. In 1832, the directors of the bank applied for a renewal of its charter. After much debate, congress passed, by a considerable majority, a bill granting their petition. This bill, Gen. Jackson defeated by the presidential veto... The funds of the government had been deposited in the national bank. In 1833, the president caused them to be withdrawn. The public treasure, was by act of congress, placed in certain selected state banks, known at the time as the "pet banks." These were encouraged to discount freely, as it might accommodate the people.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. IV.

1832.  
The  
veto.

1833.  
The  
with-  
drawal.

1835.  
The "pet  
banks."

3. Mr. Jackson was succeeded by Martin Van Buren, who, during the last four years, had, as vice-president, presided with great ability in the senate. Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, was made vice-president.

1837  
Mar. 4.  
Van Bu-  
ren and  
Johnson.

4. After the public money went into the state banks, facilities too great before, were increased, whereby men might, by pledging their credit, possess themselves of money. The good old roads of honest industry were abandoned, while fortunes were made in an hour by speculation. This unnatural state of things had its crisis in 1837.

1835  
to  
1837.

Mania of  
land  
specula-  
tion.

5. Before this crisis, every one was making money. Afterwards all were losing. Many had contracted large debts; when some began to fail, others, who had depended on them, were obliged to fail also; and so the disaster went on increasing its circle, until the whole community felt it, in a greater or less degree.

The re-  
vulsion  
causes  
great  
distress.

6. The banks now stopped specie payments. Those where the public funds were deposited, shared the common fate, and the questions now arose, how was the government to meet its current expenses, and what next should be done with the public purse? To de-

Mr. Van  
Buren  
convenes  
a special  
session.  
Sept. 4.

2. How is this change in public prosperity accounted for by the opponents of Gen. Jackson? What happened in 1835? Where had the national funds been deposited? Who caused them to be withdrawn? Where were they then placed? — 3. Who was made president? In what year? — 4. What was the state of pecuniary affairs from 1835 to '37? — 5. How was it before the crisis? How after? — 6. How was it with the banks? What was done by the president? — 6. When did congress meet?

P.T. IV. cide these questions, Mr. Van Buren issued his pro  
 P.D. III. clamation, convening congress.

CH. IV. 7. In his message, the president recommended a  
 1837. mode of keeping the public money, called the "sub-  
 "Sub- treasury" scheme; which was rejected by congress  
 treasury bill." Treasury notes were ordered to be issued, and other  
 measures taken, to supply the wants of the govern-  
 ment, but the majority contended, that, as to the dis-  
 tresses of the people, the case did not call for the  
 interference of government; but for a reformation in  
 the individual extravagance which had prevailed, and  
 a return to the neglected ways of industry.

Treasu-  
 ry notes.

1835. 8. Among the causes of pecuniary distress, was a  
 Dec. 16. dreadful fire, with which, in 1835, the city of New  
 529 York had been visited. The mercantile houses, on  
 buildings burned. whom, with the insurance offices, there fell a loss of  
 Its effect, as a busi- seventeen millions of dollars, did not generally fail at  
 ness ca- the time; for they were, with commendable humanity,  
 lamity felt in sustained by the others. But the property was gone;  
 1837. and though in a measure equalized at the time, at  
 1838. length the deficit affected all. . . . On the 13th of Au-  
 Aug. 13. gust, the banks resumed specie payments.

Can-  
 adians re-  
 volt.

9. A party had been gradually formed in Canada  
 who were opposed to the British government, and  
 who loudly demanded independence. Many Ameri-  
 cans on the northern frontier, regarding their cause as  
 that of liberty and human rights, assumed the name of  
 patriots, and formed secret associations, for the pur-  
 pose of aiding the insurgents across the line.

Affair of  
 Navy  
 Island.

10. In prosecuting this illegal interference in the con-  
 cerns of a foreign power, a party of adventurers took  
 possession of Navy Island, in the Niagara river, two  
 miles above the falls, and lying within the jurisdiction  
 of Upper Canada. The president of the United

---

7. What did Mr. Van Buren recommend in his message?  
 What was his scheme called? Did it succeed? What did  
 Congress order? Why did they not attempt some relief to the  
 people?—8. Give an account of the great fire in New York.  
 When did the banks resume specie payments?—9. Give an  
 account of Canadian affairs as connected with American.—10.  
 What was done at Navy Island?

States, and the governor of New York both issued P<sup>T</sup>. IV. proclamations, enjoining a strict neutrality. P<sup>T</sup>. III.

11. A small steamboat, called the *Caroline*, was CH. IV. 1837 however, hired to ply for unlawful purposes, between Navy Island and Schlosser. At evening, a detachment of 150 armed men from the Canada side, in five boats, with muffled oars, proceeded to Schlosser, drove Dec. 20. the men who were on board the *Caroline* ashore, cut her loose from her fastenings to the wharf, and setting the boat on fire, let her float over the falls. A man by the name of Durfee was killed, and great excitement prevailed for a time. Affair of the Caroline

12. The census of 1840, gave as the number of inhabitants in the United States, 17,068,666.—The presidency was, by a large majority, bestowed upon William Henry Harrison, whose social and public virtues 1841. The census. had been rendered conspicuous by the various official Inauguration of Harrison and stations of a long and useful life. John Tyler, of Virginia, was made vice-president. Tyler

13. From the capitol, Gen. Harrison went to the presidential mansion. Thousands flocked around him with congratulations and proffers of service, whose sincerity he was not prone to doubt, for he was himself sincere. The sunshine of public favor thus fell April 4. Death of Harrison. too brightly on a head white with the frosts of age. He expired just a month from the day of his inauguration. Mr. Tyler by the constitution became president. Tyler succeeds, he appoints a public fast. He issued an able and patriotic address, and appointed a day of public fasting.

---

10. What proclamations were issued?—11. What were the circumstances of the burning of the *Caroline*?—12. What number of inhabitants were there in 1840? How did the presidential election terminate?—13. How long did President Harrison live to enjoy his new dignity? Who was his successor?

## CHAPTER V.

Mr. Tyler's administration.—Mobs.—Disturbances in Rhode Island.—Anti-Rentism.—Mormonism, &c.

## P'T IV.

## P'D III.

## CHAP. V.

1841.

National Bank. Opinions of the Whigs.

Opinions of the Democratic party.

May 31. Congress convene.

1. THE Whig party were opposed to Mr. Van Buren's Independent Treasury, and in favor of a National Bank, as a place of deposit for the public revenue. They said it would be more convenient and economical to the government,—that it would facilitate business, and promote prosperity; and that the attempt to bring back a specie circulation was a dangerous experiment upon the currency. The Democratic party, on the other hand, maintained that any connection of government with banks, or with the business affairs of individuals, was foreign to its purposes, and a fruitful source of bribery and corruption. They believed that the government should keep its own money, operating not with paper currency, but with specie.

2. The majority of the voters adopted the views of the Whigs; and chose Messrs. Harrison and Tyler, with an expectation that they would favor a National Bank. General Harrison, aware of this, issued, March 17th, his proclamation, calling an extra session of Congress to convene on the 31st of May, to consider "sundry weighty and important matters, chiefly growing out of the revenue and finances of the country." When this Congress met, Mr. Tyler was president.

3. Congress repealed the Sub-Treasury law on the 6th of August. Three days earlier, the House of Representatives had passed an act, establishing a Na-

---

CHAPTER V.—1. What were the opinions of the Whig party in regard to a National Bank? What on the other hand was maintained by the Democratic party?—2. What views were adopted by the majority of the voters? How manifested? What was done by Gen. Harrison? What change occurred before the meeting of Congress?—3. What was done by Congress with regard to the Sub-Treasury? With regard to a National Bank? How were their acts met by Mr. Tyler?



tional Bank. Mr. Tyler, to the deep chagrin of the party which elected him, defeated the measure by the presidential veto. The mortified Whigs got up another scheme for a bank, and passed it through Congress under the name of a "Fiscal Corporation of the United States." A second time Mr. Tyler defeated them by his veto. The able cabinet selected by Harrison had all remained in office up to the period of this second veto; when all resigned, except Mr. Webster, the secretary of state. His country needed him in the office, and remaining, he found occasion to render her essential service.

P<sup>R</sup>T IV.P<sup>R</sup>D III.

CHAP. V.

1841.

Aug. 16.

Tyler's

first veto.

Sept. 9.

His

second.

Cabinet

all resign

except

Mr.

Webster.

4. In the unwarrantable stretch of credit which had existed, states over-zealous for internal improvement, had participated; and when the revulsion came, some of these found themselves unable, without direct taxation, (to which the rulers dared not promptly resort,) to meet their engagements; and the holders of their bonds, many of whom were foreigners, could not obtain the interest when due. These states were said to have repudiated their bonds, and this *repudiation* for a time cast disgrace upon the whole nation. With returning prosperity, however, these states resume payment.

Repudia-  
tion.

5. A disagreement between the United States and England had long existed in regard to the North-Eastern boundary. Much excitement prevailed between the inhabitants of Maine and New Brunswick, —regions adjoining the disputed line,—and measures were taken on each side, which threatened war. Lord Ashburton was sent from England as a special envoy to settle this dispute; and Mr. Webster, with great diplomatic ability, arranged with him the terms of a treaty, by which the important question of the North-Eastern boundary is finally and amicably settled.

Ashbur-  
ton Tre-  
aty, (rati-  
fied by  
the Uni-  
ted States  
Senate,  
Aug. 20.)(in Eng-  
land Oct.  
14.)

1844.

May 6.

Riot in

Philadel-  
phia.

6. Serious riots occurred in the spring of 1844 in Philadelphia. They grew out of a jealousy on the

---

3. What occurred immediately after his second veto?—4. Give an account of what was called repudiation.—5. On what subject was there a disagreement between the United States and Great Britain? How was it settled?

**P'T IV.** part of native American Protestants, that the foreign  
**P'D III.** Roman Catholic population intended to gain the con-  
**CHAP. V.** trol of the common schools, and change the established  
**34 build-** order of instruction, especially in regard to the use of  
**ings** the Scriptures. Thirty dwelling-houses, a convent,  
**burned.** and three churches were burned. Fourteen persons  
**killed 14,** were killed and forty wounded. These disgraceful  
**wounded** scenes were renewed on the 7th of June. The gover-  
**40.** nor called out 5,000 of the military. At this time  
**June 7.** 50 persons were either killed or wounded.  
**Second**  
**riot.**  
**Killed**  
**and**  
**wounded**  
**50.**

7. Rhode Island now became the theatre of an attempt to set aside existing authorities. The "suffrage party," by whom it was made, did not, however, regard the matter in this light. They formed, though  
**1843.** by illegal assemblies, what they considered a constitu-  
**April 18.** tion for the state; and then proceeded to elect under  
**Dorr's** it a governor (Mr. Dorr) and members for a legislature.  
**attempt.** Their opponents, called the "law and order" party, acting under existing authorities, elected state officers, Mr. King being made governor.

8. On the 18th of May, Dorr went with an armed force, and took the state arsenal. No lives were lost, as his directions to fire on those who opposed his progress were not obeyed. Gov. King meantime put himself at the head of the military. Several persons were arrested, and Dorr fled. He afterwards appeared at Chepachet with some two or three hundred men;  
**June 25.** but a superior government force being sent, they dis-  
**Dorr at** persed. Dorr afterwards returned, was tried, con-  
**Chepa-** victed of treason, and sentenced to the state's prison.  
**chet.**  
**1844.** Meantime a new constitution was by legal measures  
**Dorr sent** adopted. In 1845, Dorr was released from prison;  
**to the** but he was not restored to his civil rights, on account  
**state's** of his refusal to take the oath of allegiance to the new  
**prison.** constitution.

9. An alarming tendency to anarchy has been ex-

---

6. Give an account of the riots in Philadelphia, remembering to state the times.—7. What occurred in Rhode Island? —8. Give an account of the illegal proceedings of Mr. Dorr, and his punishment. How and when was it remitted?—9. How and in what respect was a tendency to anarchy manifested?

perienced in the anti-rent disturbances in the state of New York. Under the Dutch government, certain settlers had received patents of considerable portions of land ; of which that of Van Rensselaer was the most extensive,—comprehending the greater part of Albany and Rensselaer counties. These lands were divided into small farms, and leased in perpetuity, on low rents, to be paid in a certain quantity of wheat, a certain number of fowls, &c. In process of time, the tenants began to consider these legal conditions as anti-republican,—a relic of feudal tyranny.

PT IV.  
P'D III.  
CHAP. V.

Anti-rent  
disturb-  
ances.

(Rensse-  
laerwyck  
48 m.  
long 23  
broad.)

10. In the summer of 1844, the anti-rent disturbances broke out with great violence in the eastern towns of Rensselaer, and on the Livingston manor, in Columbia county. Extensive associations were formed by the anti-renters to resist the laws. They kept armed and mounted bands, disguised as Indians, scouring the country ; and the traveller as he met them, issuing from some dark wood, with their hideous masks and gaudy calicoes, was required, on penalty of insult, to say, “ Down with the rent.”

1844.  
Anti-  
renters  
disguised  
as In-  
dians.

11. These lawless rangers forcibly entered houses, took men from their homes, tarred and feathered, or otherwise maltreated them. In Rensselaer county, at noonday, a man was killed where about 50 “ Indians” were present,—some of whom were afterwards arraigned, when they swore that they knew nothing of the murder. Sometimes 1,000 of these disguised anarchists were assembled in one body. Similar disturbances occurred in Delaware county. At length Steele, a deputy-sheriff, was murdered in the execution of his official duty.

(Smith  
killed in  
Grafton.)

Steele  
killed in  
Dela-  
ware.

12. Meanwhile SILAS WRIGHT was chosen governor of the state. Much does his country owe him for the wisdom and firmness of the measures by which public order was restored. On the 27th of August he pro-

---

9. Give an account of the Dutch patents, with the conditions of rent. How in process of time had the tenants come to regard these conditions?—10 and 11. What happened in the summer of 1844?—12. What is here said of Silas Wright? What was done in regard to Sheriffs?

**P.T. IV.** claimed the county of Delaware in a state of insurrec-  
**P'D III.** tion. Resolute men were made sheriffs, and com-  
**CHAP. V.** petent military aid afforded them. Leading anti-  
renters were taken, brought to trial, and imprisoned.

**1846.** The murderers of Steele were condemned to death,—  
Governor Wright's but their punishment was commuted to that of per-  
measures. petual confinement. Gov. Young, the successor of Mr.

**1847.** Wright, released from the state's prison the whole  
(Anti- number, eighteen, who had been committed for anti-  
rent out- rent offences. There has been a fresh outbreak of  
rage on these troubles in Columbia county.  
Peter Shel- don.)

**1845.** 13. In congress, March 3d, 1845, an act was passed  
March 3, admitting two states into the Union,—*Iowa*, its west-  
Iowa and Florida, ern boundary the river Des Moines,—and *Florida*,  
Florida. comprising the east and west parts, as defined by the  
treaty of cession.

**1805.** 14. One of the most extraordinary impostures of  
Dec. 23, the age is that called "Mormonism." The leader,  
Jo. Smith born in Sharon, (1805, Dec. 23, Jo. Smith born in Sharon, Vt.)  
Vt.) New England origin. Under pretence of special  
revelation, he produced the stereotype plates of the  
"Book of Mormon," by which he persuaded numbers,  
that he was the inspired founder of a new religion,  
which was to give to Mormons the same pre-eminence  
over all other people, as the Jews had over the Gen-  
tiles. His laws are not fully understood, but there is  
little room to doubt, that they give his followers  
liberty to commit every crime; especially that they  
degrade and demoralize women.

**1838.** 15. Yet numbers of both sexes were found to join  
Oct. 6, and aid this delusion—throwing their property into  
Mormons at Far common stock. On their arrival at the Far West in  
West. Missouri, the Mormons numbered 5,000, of whom 700  
were armed men. They were charged with various

---

**12.** What was done in regard to the leading anti-renters?  
the murderers of Steele? Were they suffered to remain in  
prison?—**13.** At what time were two states admitted into the  
Union, and what states?—**14.** Give some account of Mormon-  
ism, and its originator.—**15.** Give a further account of the  
progress of Mormonism, to the building of the temple—to the de-  
parture of the Mormons to California

crimes, among others an attempt to assassinate Gov. P'T IV. Boggs; and they were finally expelled the state by a P'D III. military force commanded by Gen. Atkinson. They CHAP. VI. then purchased a large tract of land in Illinois, on the eastern bank of the Mississippi. There, on a beautiful slope, they built Nauvoo, and erected a pompous temple. But murders, robberies, and other secret crimes became frequent in their neighborhood. The surrounding people were enraged. The Mormon prophet and his brother were seized by the state officers, and confined in jail at Carthage. A hundred armed men in disguise, broke in and murdered them. The Mor- Jo. Smith killed. mons then sold their possessions at Nauvoo, and in 1846 migrated to California.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### Texas.—Mexico.—Causes of Annexation and the Mexican War.

1. ON account of the discovery of La Salle, the French claimed Texas to the Rio Grande, as forming a part of Louisiana. The Spaniards of Mexico remonstrated, and sent thither an armed force, but the French had already dispersed. *The first effectual settlement in Texas was that of San Antonio de Bexar, made by the Spaniards in 1692.* But the Mexican authorities seemed not so desirous to occupy this country, as to keep it a desolate waste, that thus an impassable barrier might be maintained between them and their Anglo-American neighbors. This desire to avoid contact by means of an intervening desert, was so strongly felt by the Mexicans, even in 1847, as to

1685.  
La Salle  
discov-  
ers  
Texas.

1692.  
Bexar  
founded.

---

CHAPTER VI.—1. On what account did the French claim Texas? How was this claim met by the Spaniards? When was the first effectual settlement made in Texas? How did the Mexicans manifest aversion to Anglo-Americans, at an early day, and again recently?



P'T IV. break off negotiations for peace, when General Scott  
 P'D III. was at the gates of their capital with a victorious  
 CHAP. VI. army. The aversion to the Anglo-Americans thus  
 manifested, the Mexicans at first derived from their  
 mother country; and it may be marked as *the first*  
*and predisposing cause of the late Mexican war.*

1810. 2. After Ferdinand VII., king of Spain, had, in  
 Mexico 1810, fallen with the Spanish nation, under the power  
 revolts. of Napoleon, the Mexicans revolted. But the people  
 were not united;—and after the bloody war of eight  
 1818. years, called *the first revolution*, the royalists prevail-  
 Royalists prevail. ed. *The second revolution* was begun in 1821,  
 by the Mexican general ITURBIDE. Under him they  
 1821—24. threw off the Spanish yoke. But he made himself a  
 Iturbide. monarch. The people wished for a republic; and  
 (He is shot at Padillo.) they deposed Iturbide, banished,—and on his return  
 condemned and executed him. In 1824, a *federal*  
 1824. constitution was formed under the auspices of a new  
 Federal leader, SANTA ANNA; by which Mexico, like our re-  
 constitution of public, was divided into states, with each, a legislature,  
 Mexico. and over the whole a general government.

3. In 1803, the United States, in purchasing Louis-  
 1819. iana of France, obtained with it the disputed claim to  
 Texas; but in 1819, they ceded it by treaty to Spain  
 Texas as a part of Mexico, Florida being then granted by  
 ceded to Spain. that power to the United States. Two years there-  
 1821. after STEPHEN F. AUSTIN led a colony from the  
 Anglo-Ameri- United States to Texas, and made a settlement be-  
 can Tex- tween the rivers Brazos and Colorado. The Spanish  
 as found- authorities in Mexico, desirous of defence against the  
 ed. destructive incursions of the fierce and hostile Co-  
 manches, had, contrary to their ordinary policy, made

---

1. Of what may this aversion be regarded as the first cause?—2. When did the Mexicans revolt against the Spanish government? Give some account of the first revolution—of the second—of Iturbide. What was done in 1824?—3. When had the United States a claim to Texas? How obtained, and how and when was it relinquished? When and by whom led, was the first American colony of Texas? Where established? What motives had the Mexicans in admitting these settlers, and what conditions did they require of them?

laws favoring American immigration ; yet only *under* <sup>P'D IV.</sup>  
*the condition that the immigrants should adopt the* <sup>P'D III.</sup>  
*Catholic religion, and send their children to Spanish* <sup>CHAP. VI</sup>  
*schools.*

4. Austin's enterprise being joined by others, who like himself, sought to better their fortunes, his colony soon flourished to such an extent, that it attracted the attention of the Mexican clergy. They found that the law, which required the settlers to make oath that they were Catholics, and would establish Spanish schools, had been disregarded by them ; and they felt the utmost alarm, and of course a desire that those whom they regarded as foreign heretics, should either submit to their national laws, and embrace their national religion, or be rooted out. *Here were sown the seeds of future war :* for these supposed heretics were the brothers of American citizens, and, though expatriated, they were children-born of the republic.

Mexican  
clergy  
alarmed.

5. Texas, under the constitution of 1824, was united in one state with the neighboring province of Coahuila. The Spanish Mexicans of this province outvoted and pursued an oppressive policy against the Texans. Stephen F. Austin was sent by them to the city of Mexico to petition against these grievances, and for the privilege of forming Texas into a separate state. The Mexican congress treated him with neglect. He wrote a letter to the Texans advising them at all events to proceed in forming a separate state government. The party in Texas opposed to Austin, sent back his letter to the Mexican authorities,—who made him prisoner as he was returning, sent him back to Mexico, and threw him into a dungeon.

(In 1833  
there  
were  
about  
10,000  
Americans  
in  
Texas.)

Austin  
taken  
prisoner  
(at Saltillo.)

6. Meanwhile, Santa Anna subverted the constitu-

4. How did the Mexican clergy find that these conditions had been met on the part of the settlers? How did the clergy regard them, and what appears to have been their desire respecting them? To what would such feelings naturally lead? —5. With what Mexican province was Texas united, and how treated? For what was Austin sent to Mexico? How was he there treated, and what course did he pursue? Why was Austin thrown into a dungeon?

**P'T IV.** tion of 1824, and in the name of liberty, made him-  
**P'D III.** self the military tyrant of the Mexicans. He sent  
**CHAP. VI.** General Cos into Texas, to place the civil rulers there  
 in subjection to the military. Meantime Austin re-  
 turned, and was placed at the head of a central com-  
 mittee of safety. Appeals were made through the  
 press to the Texan people, and arrangements set on  
 foot to raise men and money. Adventurers from the  
 American states came to their aid. The object of  
 the Texans at this time, was to join a Mexican party  
 now in arms against the military usurpation of Santa  
 Anna, and thus to maintain the constitution of 1824.

Texan  
 Revolu-  
 tion be-  
 gins.

Oct. 2.  
 Battle of  
 Gonza-  
 lez. Mex-  
 ican  
 force  
 1000,  
 Texan  
 500.

Mexican  
 loss 100.  
 Texan  
 killed.

7. Mexican forces had been sent to Gonzalez to de-  
 mand a field-piece. The Texans attacked and drove  
 them from the ground with loss.—Santa Anna had  
 now caused the fortresses of Goliad, and the Alamo,  
 or citadel of Bexar, to be strongly fortified; the latter  
 being the headquarters of General Cos. The Texans  
 on the 8th of October, took Goliad with valuable  
 munitions. On the 28th, they obtained a victory near  
 Bexar.—Texan delegates, November 22d, met in con-  
 vention at St. Felipe, and established a provisional  
 government. On the 11th of December, their forces,  
 under General Burleson took, after a bloody siege and  
 a violent struggle, the strong fortress of the *Alamo*  
 and the city of Bexar; General Cos and his army  
 were made prisoners, and not a Mexican in arms re-  
 mained. But Santa Anna, ever active and alert, was  
 gathering his forces; and in February, 1836, was ap-  
 proaching with 8,000 men.

1836. 8. Unhappily, divisions now prevailed in the Texan  
 counsels, while the small and insufficient garrison of  
 the Alamo was attacked by this powerful army, head-  
 ed by a man who added to the smoothness of the  
 tiger, his fierceness and cruelty. Travis, who com-  
 manded the Alamo, was killed.

March 6.  
 Massacre  
 of the  
 Alamo.  
 k. 150.

---

6. What in the mean time was the course of Santa Anna  
 with respect to the constitution of 1824, and with regard to the  
 Texans? What measures indicating resistance were taken by  
 the Texans? What was now their object?—7. Where was  
 the first blood shed? Give some account of the battle of Gon-  
 zalez. What was done by the Texans under Burleson?

manded, had only 150 men. They fought all one <sup>P'T IV.</sup> bloody night, until he fell with all the garrison but <sup>P'D III.</sup> seven;—and they were slain, while crying for quarter! <sup>CHAP. VI.</sup>

9. Meantime, a Texan convention had assembled at Washington, on the Brazos, which, on the 2d of March, DECLARED INDEPENDENCE. They had desired, said the delegates, to unite with their Mexican brethren in support of the constitution of 1824, but in vain. Now appealing to the world for the necessities of their condition, they declared themselves an INDEPENDENT REPUBLIC, and committed their cause to the SUPREME ARBITER OF NATIONS.

March 2.  
Texans  
declare  
independ-  
ence.

10. Colonel Fanning commanded at Goliad. He had besought the Texan authorities to reinforce him; and he had been directed by them to abandon his post, and save his garrison by retreat.\* The Mexicans, by their superior force, overpowered him. He surrendered on condition that he and his men should be treated as prisoners of war. Santa Anna ordered their execution; and four hundred unarmed and unresisting men, unsuspecting of harm, were drawn out. One of the fated soldiers exclaimed, "They are going to shoot us; let us turn and not be shot in the back." In another instant the fire was given, and the prisoners fell dead. Fanning was shot the next day;—and his body denied a burial. These men were American-born. Fanning had been an officer in the army of the United States. American hate and sympathy kindled as the shocking massacre was told. *Annexation followed in time, and the Mexican war.*

1836.  
March 27.  
Massacre  
at Goliad.  
k. 400.

11. On the 21st of April, the main Texan army, under GENERAL HOUSTON, met the Mexicans who

\* Of this fact, the writer was recently informed by General, now Senator Houston.—Fanning had marched out of the fortress, met, and contended with the Mexicans, was taken and carried back, so that the massacre was at Goliad

8. Give some account of the massacre of the Alamo.—9. Of the Texans' declaration of Independence.—10. Of the massacre of Goliad. Who were the men massacred at Goliad, and with what feelings was their slaughter heard of in America? What followed?—11. Give some account of the battle of San Jacinto.

P'T IV. were double their number, near the San Jacinto.

P'D III. Furiously the Texans rushed to battle with the cry,

CHAP. VI. "Remember the Alamo." They fought at less than half-rifle distance, and in less than half an hour,

April 21.  
SAN JA-  
CINTO.  
Mexican  
force  
1,600,  
Tex. 783.  
Mexican  
loss, 630  
k., 203 w.  
Tex. loss,  
8 k., 17 w.  
wholly routed the Mexicans, killing and wounding a number greater than the whole Texan force. Among the prisoners taken after the battle, was Santa Anna himself. As supreme ruler of Mexico, he, by a treaty, acknowledged their independence, and allowed their western boundary to be the Rio Grande. This treaty was after his return disavowed by Mexico, and by Santa Anna himself, it being made while he was a prisoner.

12. Although the United States, England, and other powers acknowledged the independence of Texas, yet Mexico, through all her changes of rulers ever claimed the country; and occasionally sent troops to renew the war by predatory excursions.—  
1837.  
March 3.  
United  
States  
recognise  
Texan  
independ-  
ence.  
The Texans in 1841, sent under McLEOD a party of 300, who were mostly Americans, to take possession of Santa Fé, the capital of New Mexico, that city lying on the eastern side of the Rio Grande. These were made prisoners by the Mexicans, and treated with great cruelty.

13. General Woll, sent by Santa Anna to invade Texas, took Bexar. A Texan army, having driven him back, were full of zeal to carry the war into Mexico. A party of 300 crossed the Rio Grande, and proceeding to Mier, they attacked it; and although opposed by five times their force, they fought their way into the heart of the place, killed and wounded double their whole number, when, although they had lost only 35 men, they capitulated.\* These prisoners were treated with great severity.

\* They were, says General Green, in his Journal of the Expedition, betrayed into the surrender by Fisher, their leader, who had lost his mind by a gunshot wound. Green says this party of 300, killed and wounded 800 of the Mexicans at Mier.

- 
11. What treaty did Santa Anna make with the Texans?  
—12. Who acknowledged the Texan independence, and who did not? Give some account of the attempt to take Santa Fé.  
—13. The attempt of the Texans on Mier.



14. Texas early made application to be received P'T IV.  
into the American Union. General Jackson objected, P'D III.  
—and afterwards Mr. Van Buren,—on the ground of CHAP. VI.  
existing peaceful relations with Mexico, and the un-  
settled boundary of Texas. Mr. Tyler brought for-  
ward the proposition. It was lost in congress. But  
the mass of the American people were in favor of  
Annexation. The Whig candidates for president and  
vice-president were Henry Clay and Theodore Fre-  
linghuysen, who were opposed to immediate annexa-  
tion; and the Democratic, were James K. Polk and  
George M. Dallas, who were pledged in its favor.  
The latter were elected; and on the 4th of March,  
1845, they were duly inaugurated.

1844.  
Elected  
as presi-  
dent, J.  
K. Polk,  
of Tenn.  
Vice-P.,  
G. M.  
Dallas,  
of Pa.

1845.  
March 4.  
Inaugu-  
rated.

15. On the 28th of February, after the election,  
and before the inauguration, congress passed the *joint*  
*resolution* to annex Texas. Additional new states, not  
exceeding four, may be formed from this territory  
*with* slavery, if south of lat.  $36\frac{1}{2}$ , but if north, *with-*  
*out*.—The Mexican minister at Washington, Senor  
Almonte, who had before announced that Mexico  
would declare war if Texas were annexed, now gave  
notice, that since America had consummated “the  
most unjust act recorded in history,” negotiations were  
at an end.

1845.  
Feb. 23.  
Joint  
Resolu-  
tion an-  
nexing  
Texas.

(March  
1.  
It re-  
ceives  
the Presi-  
dent's  
signa-  
ture.)

16. Mexico had been to the Americans an unjust  
and injurious neighbor. Such had been the unre-  
dressed wrongs of person and property, to which  
American citizens had been subjected in Mexico, that  
had she not been a weaker nation and a sister re-

---

14. Give a history of the Annexation of Texas, to the close  
of the presidential election. How is it manifested by this ac-  
count that the people were in favor of annexation? Are presi-  
dents of the United States elected the same year in which they  
are inaugurated—Mr. Polk for example?—15. When did  
congress pass the joint resolution to annex Texas? What con-  
dition was there respecting new states? What had previously  
been announced as the determination of Mexico in case the  
United States annexed Texas? What announcement was now  
made by the Mexican minister?—16. What had been the  
course of Mexico towards American citizens? What hindered  
war during Jackson's administration?

P'T IV. public, war would have resulted during Jackson's ad-  
 P'D III. ministration. Mr. Van Buren recommended measures  
 CHAP. VI. leading to war;—when the Mexicans resorted to ne-  
 1839. gotiation. In 1839 a treaty was made, by which  
 Mexican they agreed to pay large indemnities to American  
 treaty. sufferers. This treaty was modified in 1843, but its  
 1843. stipulations, the Mexican government had mostly failed  
 It is mod- to observe.  
 ified.

17. The assent of Texas, by which she became a  
 1845. part of the American Union, was expressed in the  
 Annexa- ordinance of July 5, 1845. Two days thereafter, a  
 tion com- request was dispatched to President Polk to send an  
 pleted. armed force to protect Texas against the threatened  
 invasion of Mexico. The administration judiciously  
 (Com- chose, as commander of the forces to be sent, Col.  
 mander ZACHARY TAYLOR. On the 30th of July he was or-  
 at Okee dered by the war department to move as near to the  
 Chobee. Rio Grande as prudence would dictate. Thereupon he  
 Soon made a marched, and took post at Corpus Christi. A Mexi-  
 Brig- can force, in the mean time, had collected on the west-  
 adier.) ern bank of the Rio Grande.

18. Although regular pacific negotiations were  
 1845. closed, yet the American executive made overtures  
 Mr. Polk makes overtures for peace. for peace through Mr. Black, the American consul at  
 Mexico. General HERRERA, one of the wisest patriots  
 of Mexico, was now at the head of her affairs. He  
 was disposed to peace, and he gave private assurances  
 that he would receive a special commissioner to treat  
 respecting Texas; but the American government, he  
 said, must first withdraw a fleet, with which they  
 menaced Vera Cruz. This was done.

19. The ancient aversion of the Mexicans had been,  
 by the annexation, wrought into jealousy and fierce

---

16. What was done during Mr. Van Buren's administration  
 respecting a treaty?—17. When did Texas by her own ordi-  
 nance actually become a part of the American Union? What  
 was done two days thereafter? Who was chosen to command  
 the military defenders of Texas? What orders did he receive,  
 and what do?—18. Who was at the head of affairs in Mexico?  
 What was done by Mr. Polk (the American Executive) in re-  
 gard to peace?—19. How did the aversion of the Mexicans  
 now manifest itself?

revenge; and he who most vilified the Americans, <sup>P'T IV.</sup> and the loudest blustered for war, was most the <sup>P'D III.</sup> popular favorite; and such was PAREDES, by whose <sup>CHAP. VI.</sup> party, Herrera was denounced as a traitor for suspected intercourse with the foes of the nation. He was still struggling for his place, when Mr. Slidell, sent by Mr. Polk, arrived in Mexico, and demanded to be received. Herrera rejected his mission on the ground that the American government had sent him as an envoy to settle the whole difference between the two nations, and not as a commissioner to consider merely the Texan question. He had brought the American account-book; when it had been proposed by the Mexicans to settle such items only, as appeared upon their own. Herrera, even with this rejection, was not found violent enough to please the Mexicans, and they displaced him, and elevated Paredes. <sup>Dec. 20. Mr. Slidell rejected.</sup> <sup>Dec. 29. (Revolution in Mexico.</sup>

20. On the 16th of January, 1845, the United States senate ratified a treaty with China, which had been there negotiated between Mr. Cushing, the American Envoy Extraordinary, and the Commissioner of the Chinese Emperor.

21. OREGON.—England and America both claimed the extensive portion of this country, north of the Columbia river, to the Russian settlements.—Columbia river and its vicinity belongs to the Americans by right of the discovery made in 1792, by Captain Grey of Boston, and by the explorations of Lewis and Clark, in the employ of the American government, made in the years 1804–5.—John Jacob Astor of New York, founded Astoria, at the mouth of the Columbia, in 1811. The first house on its waters, was, however, established on Lewis river, by the Missouri Fur Company, in 1808.

22. The difficulty with England became so serious

---

19. How was Mr. Slidell received? Who was raised to honor in Mexico?—20. Give an account of the Chinese treaty.—21. What part of Oregon was in dispute, and with whom? On what was the American claim to the Columbia river and its valley founded? What were the first settlements in Oregon?

1846.

(Jan. 2. Paredes made president.

1845

Jan. 16. Chinese treaty.

1792.

(Captain Grey, sailing in the Columbia, gives to the river the name of his ship.)

**BATTLE GROUNDS**

GULF OF MEXICO

Saltillo, Monterrey, Buena Vista, Agua Nueva, Encarnacion, Salado, Venado, Tula, Victoria, San Luis Potosi, Santa Rita's Head Qrs., San Felipe, Dolores, Salamanca, Queretaro, Tlaxcala, Perote, Castle, Jalapa, Cerro Gordo, National Bridge, Vera Cruz, Alvarado, Popocatepec, Orizaba Vol.

Rio Grande del Norte, Resaca de la Palma, Palo Alto, Corpus Christi, Point Isabel, Frijoles Santiago, Matamoros, China, Linares, Villagrande, St. Richie Kill'd, Rio, Santander, Tampico, Cape Horn, El de Labor, Tusan, Tusan R., Piedras, Tula, Toluca, Chalco, Cuernavaca, Valladolid, Mexico, Tlascala, Choluta, La Puebla, Volcans, Oaxaca, Vera Cruz, Castillo de San Mateo.

26 24 22 18 20 22 24

Longitude West from Washington 18

[illegible][illegible][illegible]

as to threaten war. It was, however, compromised by a treaty negotiated at Washington between Mr. Packenham, the British Minister, and Mr. Buchanan, the American Secretary, — which makes the northern boundary of Oregon, the line of lat. 49 deg.; but gives to the British the whole of Vancouver's Island, and a right to the joint navigation of the Columbia river.

P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. VII.  
1816.  
June 18.  
Treaty of Wash-  
ington.

## CHAPTER VII.

### Mexican War.—Army of Occupation.

1. GEN. TAYLOR was ordered by the secretary of war, Jan. 13, 1846, to take post at the mouth of the Rio Grande. The effect of the order was to precipitate the collision of arms, and to give to the Mexicans, the advantage of the cry of invasion. Gen. Taylor moved from Corpus Christi on the 8th of March. On the 18th he met a party of mounted Mexican marauders called *rancheros*, who warned him that he had passed the limits of Texas. On the 25th, the army reached Point Isabel. The Mexican authorities in leaving this place had set it on fire; but Taylor with exertion saved most of the buildings. From the nature of the coast he must make this place the depot for his stores. Leaving them here, with 450 men under Major Munroe, he advanced, and took post at the mouth of the Rio Grande opposite to Matamoras. Here batteries were soon erected by the Mexicans, pointing at his camp. This he intrenched, and immediately commenced a fort, whose guns threatened the heart of the

Effect of  
sending  
Gen. Tay-  
lor to the  
Rio  
Grande.

March 23.  
Gen.  
Taylor  
encamps  
opposite  
Matamo-  
ras.

**22.** How was the difficulty with England settled?

CHAPTER VII.—1. What order did Gen. Taylor receive? What was its effect? Give an account of Gen. Taylor's march from the mouth of the Nueces to that of the Rio Grande. What was here done by the Mexicans and the Americans?



**P.T. IV.** city. Yet Gen. Taylor was strictly courteous to all.  
**P.D. III.** He had come, in peace, he said, to protect Texas, not  
**CH. VII.** to invade Mexico; but if attacked, he should know  
**1846.** how to defend himself.

(April 10.  
 Col. Cross  
 rode out  
 from the  
 camp  
 alone,  
 and was  
 killed by  
 Mexican  
 ranche-  
 ros.)

2. This attack he had hourly reason to expect. Paredes had put in requisition the best troops of Mexico, headed by her ablest generals, and they were gathering towards the Rio Grande. On both sides of the river, all was warlike action;—here, mounting or relieving guards,—and there, planting artillery. Gen. Arista now arrived, and took the command at Matamoras. The Mexican government made a formal declaration of war on the 23d of May.—On the 24th Capt. Thornton with sixty-three dragoons was sent by Gen. Taylor a few miles up the river to reconnoitre. They fell into an ambushade, and finding themselves surrounded by a far superior force, they attempted to retreat, cutting their way; but they were obliged to surrender, with the loss of 16 killed and wounded.

April 24.  
 Hostili-  
 ties com-  
 mence by  
 Thorn-  
 ton's cap-  
 ture. Am.  
 loss, k.  
 and w. 16.

3. The American congress and people were astonished and agitated, when Gen. Taylor's account of this first bloodshed was received. Their army was surrounded, and in danger, from the soldiers who had committed the massacres of Goliad and the Alamo! A kind of monomania pervaded the nation. The President announced to congress that the Mexicans had "invaded our territory, and shed the blood of our citizens upon our own soil." Congress responded, that "war existed by the act of Mexico," and in two days passed a law authorizing 50,000 volunteers to be raised for twelve months; and appropriating towards the carrying on of the war, ten millions of dollars. Thus were the means at once provided.

Astonish-  
 ment and  
 anxiety.

May 11.  
 Presi-  
 dent's ex-  
 tra mes-  
 sage.

May 13.  
 Act of  
 congress  
 to raise  
 men and  
 money.

4. Declared war being upon the hands of the Ex-

---

1. What was Gen. Taylor's course of conduct?—2. What was now the aspect of things in regard to war? How did hostilities actually commence? When did the Mexicans declare war?—3. How was news of the breaking out of the war received in America? and what was done by the President and by Congress?

ecutive, the plan for its prosecution and results appears to have been,—to take for indemnity and as a permanent acquisition, that part of the Mexican territory lying between the old United States and the Pacific; and so to carry the war into the more vital and richer parts of Mexico, that the people would be willing to receive peace, and some needful funds, though at the sacrifice of this territory, and the relinquishment of Texas to the Rio Grande.

5. The American Executive, aided by the head of the war department, and by General Scott, now sketched out, in two days' time, a plan of a campaign, exceeding, in the vastness of the spaces, over which it swept by sea and land, any thing of the kind known in history. Vessels were to pass round Cape Horn to the coast of California, to aid those already there in conquering that country. An "Army of the West" was to be assembled at Fort Leavenworth to take New Mexico, and then proceed westward to the Pacific, to co-operate with the fleet. An "Army of the Centre," to be collected from different and distant parts of the Union, was to rendezvous at San Antonio de Bexar, and thence to invade Coahuila and Chihuahua.\* These armies were mostly to be created from the raw material. The existing regular force of the United States, officers and men, did not exceed nine thousand.

6. Gen. Taylor, whose force was called the "Army of Occupation," now received intelligence by Capt. Walker that a large Mexican force in his rear, was interposed between him and his stores at Point Isabel. Walker had there been stationed by Major Munroe to keep open the communication; and he had fought fifteen minutes with his one company of Texan rangers, (armed with revolving pistols,) with 1500 Mexican cavalry,—killed thirty and escaped; and subsequently

\* Pronounced Che-waw-waw.

4. What was the general plan of the American Executive?  
5. What were the military operations now sketched out for the army and navy?—6. What intelligence was now received by Gen. Taylor? Give an account of the first battle of the war in which Mexican blood was shed.

P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. VII  
1846.  
Plan of  
the Exec.  
utive.

May 15  
and 16.

Vast plan  
of a  
cam-  
paign.

April 28.  
Walker's  
battle.

P'T IV. he had found his way with six men through the Mex  
ican army to bring this information.

P'D III.  
CH. VII.

7. Taylor did not hesitate. Leaving his camp at  
1846. Matamoras with a garrison in command of the trusty  
May 1. veteran Major Brown, he marched with the main  
at Point army, and reached Point Isabel unmolested. The  
Isabel. Mexicans at Matamoras attacked the camp with their

May 3 to  
9.

Cannon-  
ade of  
Fort  
Brown.

7th,  
Taylor  
leaves Pt.  
Isabel.

batteries, and Major Brown opened his guns upon the  
city. The firing was anxiously heard by Taylor, and  
a messenger for aid reached him from Major Brown.  
The garrison at Point Isabel being reinforced by 500  
men, supplied by Commodore Conner from the navy,  
Gen. Taylor announced to the war department, "I  
shall march this day with the main body of the army,  
to open a communication with Major Brown, and  
throw forward supplies of ordnance and provision.  
If the enemy opposes my march, in whatever force, I  
shall fight him."

May 8.  
PALO  
ALTO.  
Mex.  
force  
3,000.  
Am.  
2,300.  
—

Mex. loss,  
k. & w.  
400.

Am. k. &  
w. 40.

8. The same evening he marched. The next day  
at noon he came in full sight of the Mexican army,  
drawn up in order of battle, and extending a mile  
across his way. Taylor halted his men,—bade them  
refresh themselves at the pools—then formed his line.  
The Mexicans, although with choice of the ground,  
and more than double numbers, were forced, after five  
hours, to yield to the Americans, the victory of PALO  
ALTO. Major Ringgold was here mortally wounded.

May 9.  
Resaca  
de la  
Palma.  
Mex.  
force  
about  
6,000.  
Am.  
2,222.  
—

Mex. loss  
600.

Am. k. &  
w. mor-  
tally 44.

9. At two o'clock the next day the army resumed  
its march. Having advanced about three miles, the  
Mexicans were discovered, skilfully posted, with artil-  
lery, at *Resaca de la Palma*. At four o'clock the  
Americans came up. The field was fiercely contested.  
It was here, that Capt. May, with his dragoons rode  
up to a Mexican battery, cut down the men, and took

---

7. What was now done by Gen. Taylor? What cannonade  
was heard by him at Point Isabel? What determination did he  
announce?—8. Give an account of the battle of Palo Alto,  
the numbers engaged, loss, &c.; see side-note. (*When here-  
after the direction is, give an account of a battle, let the side-  
notes be studied as well as the text.*)—9. Give an account of  
the battle of Resaca de la Palma.

Gen. La Vega as he was applying a match to one of the guns. The Mexicans were wholly routed. Their camp—its stores, equipage, and Gen. Arista's private papers, fell into the hands of the Americans. On arriving at the camp, Taylor and his victorious army carried joy to the wearied combatants. But the valued commander of the fort had been killed. Gen. Taylor named the place where he fought and fell, Fort Brown.

10. Great were the rejoicings and illuminations in the United States for the victories of the Rio Grande. The Mexican army now deserted Matamoras, and the civil authorities suffered the Americans to take quiet possession. Everywhere the young men of America were now ready, nay, in haste, to go forth to defend their brethren, fight the Mexicans, and push for the "Halls of the Montezumas." Gen. Taylor was embarrassed and delayed by the ill-provided numbers who came.—The towns on the lower Rio Grande were taken and occupied by the Americans. Camargo, made the depot of provisions and stores, was garrisoned with 2,000 men under Gen. Patterson.

11. The army being now 6,000 strong, its first division, under Gen. Worth, marched for the interior on the 20th of August. Gen. Taylor with the rear column soon followed. On the 5th of September, the several divisions were concentrated at Marin. Moving on, they encamped, on the 9th, at Walnut Springs, three miles from Monterey. Here, on the south and west towered the high peaks of the Sierra Madre,—while before them stood the walls of Monterey, bristling with cannon, and surrounded by fortresses;—and around them an unknown region—an invaded country, with thousands of embittered foes. Most of their troops were untried volunteers. But they had officers edu-

P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. VII

1846.  
May 18  
Taylor  
occupies  
Matamoras.

June and  
July,  
Taylor  
delayed  
by the  
press of  
unfurnished  
volunteers.

Sept. 5.  
The army  
at  
Marin.  
9th, at  
Walnut  
Springs.

9. What had occurred at the camp? What occurred at Matamoras?—10. What effect in the U. S. had the victories of the Rio Grande? What effect on Taylor's movements had the too great accession of ill-provided numbers?—11. Give an account of the movements of the army until reaching Walnut Springs. What now was its position?

**P'T IV.** cated either directly or indirectly at West Point, who,  
**P'D III.** in all the complicated acquirements belonging to mili-  
**CH. VII.** tary science, had no superiors. Especially had they  
 a commander, cool and deliberate,—judicious to plan,  
 and energetic to act.

12. He looked upon the mountains, and perceived  
 towards the southwest, that they were cleft by the  
 small stream of the San Juan, along which, was the  
 road from Saltillo to Monterey. He thought if a new  
 way could be made by which the Saltillo road should  
**1846.** be reached, the enemy's line of supplies would be cut,  
 and probably less formidable defences intervene. The  
 skill of the American engineers, under Capt. Mansfield,  
 found out such a way; and Gen. Worth being selected  
 for the important service, led a column of 650 men  
 on the 20th and 21st, by a difficult detour round to  
 the Saltillo road. But they did not gain this advan-  
 tage without loss. On the morning of the 21st they  
 successfully fought a battle, in which Col. Hay and  
 his Texan rangers were distinguished.

13. The Saltillo road being gained, the first obsta-  
 cles now to be overcome in approaching the city, were  
 two batteries on a hill. Up to these, in face of their  
 fire, the soldiers marched. They were taken, and  
 their guns turned on the third and principal battery,  
 —a fortified, unfinished stone building, called the  
 Bishop's Palace, situated on the steep hill Independ-  
 ence. Night came on, and the weary and hungry  
 soldiers had to bide the pelting of a storm. At three  
 a party headed by Col. Childs, and conducted by  
 engineers Saunders and Meade, mounted the hill. A  
 vigorous sortie from the fort was repelled. The  
 Americans entered it with the flying Mexicans, and it  
 was theirs. After having taken this battery, and  
 turned it against the city, the war-worn troops, now  
 three days from the camp, their numbers thinned by  
 death, stood close upon the rear of Monterey.

---

**12.** What plan was formed for approaching Monterey in  
 rear? Who led the detachment? What happened on the  
 morning of the 21st?—**13.** Give an account of the movements  
 of Worth's party until it reached the rear of Monterey.



14. Meantime, Taylor had sought to direct the at-<sup>P T IV.</sup>  
tention of the enemy from this, his real point of <sup>P D III.</sup>  
attack, by making a feigned one in front. But so <sup>CH. VII.</sup>  
fiercely was this movement conducted by Gen. Butler,  
Capt. Backus, and others, that the city was entered, **1846.**  
though with great sacrifice of life; for every street <sup>Sept. 23.</sup>  
was barricaded, and guns were pointed from the <sup>Attack</sup>  
walls of every house. The second day, a part of the <sup>on Mon-</sup>  
defences were abandoned by the garrison, the Ameri- <sup>terey in</sup>  
cans getting within the houses, and breaking through <sup>front.</sup>  
the walls. Gen. Quitman, who headed this party,  
advanced to the Plaza. On the morning of the 23d,  
the defences of the opposite side were assaulted and  
carried by the division of Gen. Worth.

15. Gen. Taylor now passed over to Worth's quar-  
ters, where he received the Mexican commander, Gen.  
Ampudia. He came with a flag to propose capitula-  
tion and an armistice, on the ground that peace might  
shortly be expected,—Paredes being displaced, and  
Gen. Santa Anna now in power. General Taylor  
knew† that in consequence of President Polk's hope of  
that wily Mexican's favorable disposition, he had given  
an order to the fleet, which Com. Conner obeying,  
Santa Anna had passed unmolested on his return from  
Cuba.

† "San  
ta An-  
na's  
Pass,"  
dated  
May 15,  
1844.

16. Gen. Taylor had not men sufficient to guard the  
Mexican soldiers, if he kept them as prisoners; and  
his own unsupplied army needed all the provisions to  
be found in Monterey. Without the parade of com-  
passion, he had its reality, and he wished to spare, **1846.**  
especially "non-combatants." With the advice of his <sup>Sept. 23.</sup>  
officers, he therefore agreed to an armistice of eight <sup>The ar-</sup>  
weeks, on condition of the approval of the American <sup>mistice.</sup>  
government. This, on correspondence, was withheld; <sup>Its rejec-</sup>  
and the war after six weeks was renewed. <sup>tion by</sup>  
<sup>Mr. Polk.</sup>

**14.** Give an account of the operations of Generals Butler, Quitman, &c., in front. When did Worth's division enter the city?—**15.** On what ground did Gen. Ampudia propose an armistice? What did Taylor know of Mr. Polk's course in regard to Santa Anna?—**16.** What farther do you learn concerning the armistice of Monterey?

# PLAN OF THE BATTLE OF BUENA VISTA

*Morning 23<sup>d</sup> Feb. 1847.*



Mexican    Infantry, Cavalry, Artillery, moving to the attack.  
United States    Infantry, Cavalry, Artillery, receiving the attack.

## CHAPTER VIII.

Army of the Centre.—Gen. Wool's march.—Battle of Buena Vista.

1. To GEN. WOOL the administration wisely confided the principal share in mustering and preparing for the service the volunteers. His orders, dated May 29th, he received at Troy;—left immediately for Washington,—from thence moved through the states of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Kentucky, Tennessee, and Mississippi;—meeting the enlisted volunteers at designated places of rendezvous, and inspecting and admitting them, if suitable men, into the army. These distances were accomplished, and twelve and a half regiments, (two of cavalry,) making about 12,000 men, were inspected, mustered into the service, and sent towards their destined places, by the 16th of July.

P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. VIII.  
1846.  
May 19.  
Gen.  
Wool's  
orders.

July 16.  
In six  
weeks  
3,000  
miles tra-  
versed,  
and  
12,000  
men must-  
ered.

2. About 9,000 of these recruits, went to the Rio Grande to reinforce the army of Gen. Taylor. Those to form the "Army of the Centre" were by different routes to rendezvous at Bexar;—some going the far circuit of Little Rock, in Arkansas, and some by the Gulf through La Vaca. At Bexar began that drill and strict discipline of the volunteers which made Gen. Wool's corps, whether resting or moving, a camp of instruction; and which, together with his great care that every article necessary to health and efficiency should always be prepared and ready, gave to it the praise of being "a model army."

Aug. 1.  
Gen. W.  
at La  
Vaca (on  
Matagor-  
da Bay.)

Gen.  
Wool's  
discipline  
(unpopu-  
lar with  
his men  
at the  
time.)

3. Gen. Wool's destination was Chihuahua. His force, amounting to 500 regulars and 2,440 volun-

---

CHAPTER VIII.—1. Give an account of Gen. Wool's movements in mustering the volunteers.—2. How many of these went to Gen. Taylor? Where were those for the Army of the Centre to rendezvous, and by what routes? What gave to Gen. Wool's corps the credit of being a "model army?"—3. Describe the army's march.

P'T IV. teers, crossed the Rio Grande at Presidio, on a flying  
 P'D III. bridge prepared for the purpose. From this fertile  
 CH. VIII. spot they marched westward 26 miles, to Nava, over  
 a dead level,—without finding a drop of water or a  
 1846. human habitation. The troops, in crossing the Sierras  
 Gen. of San José and Santa Rosa, encountered steep rocky  
 Wool leaves of ascents and deep mountain gorges; and often, before  
 Bexar— their 300 heavy-laden wagons could pass, roads must  
 crosses the R. G. be repaired or made. Sometimes, as the army ap-  
 at Pre- sidio. peared, the ignorant people of the country, taken by  
 surprise, believed that the robber-bands of Mexico  
 were upon them. The shrieking women would run  
 from their houses, and embrace the crosses by the  
 wayside,—probably where some friend had been killed,  
 whose fate they expected to share.

4. But, by the better-informed, Gen. Wool's approach  
 was hailed with joy. He protected the quiet and the  
 weak against the lawless and the strong; and as he  
 Oct. 31. Gen. passed on through San Fernando and Santa Rosa, to  
 Wool at Mon- Monclova, his advance was heralded as that of a  
 clova. friend. He there peacefully unfurled the American  
 flag over the government-house of the province. At  
 (Troops under drill during the armistice; they are always encamped without the cities and villages.)  
 Monclova, Gen. Taylor communicated to him the cap-  
 ture and armistice of Monterey. Here also he learned  
 that the projected route to Chihuahua was impractica-  
 ble. Both he and Gen. Taylor believed that it would  
 be unwise thus to withdraw his force from the seat of  
 war; since the conquest of New Leon and Coahuila,  
 already achieved, gave to the Americans the command  
 of Chihuahua.

5. On the 25th of November, Gen. Wool marched  
 upon Parras,—Gen. Taylor advising him to establish  
 a post in that fertile region, and collect provisions, of  
 Nov. 28. to Dec. 5. which his army were in need, and which the country  
 March from about Monterey could not supply. At Parras, Gen.  
 Mon- Wool was received with all the courtesy due to a dis-  
 clova to Parras. tinguished guest. The strictness of his discipline was

---

4. To whom did Gen. Wool afford protection? How was  
 his advance regarded by the well-informed Mexicans? What  
 did he learn at Monclova?—5. Why did he march to Parras?  
 What was the effect of his discipline?

not only improving his army, but, by imparting the new feeling of security to a people, so long the victims of anarchy, he was winning their affections, and giving them desires for a better government. Stores came in abundantly, and the necessities of the two armies were fully supplied.

6. In the mean time Gen. Taylor had proceeded to Victoria, the capital of Tamaulipas, expecting to co-operate with Gen. Patterson and a naval force in the reduction of Tampico. But that place had surrendered to Commodore Conner on the 14th of November. Gen. Butler was left in command at Monterey. Saltillo, the capital of Coahuila, of which the Americans had taken peaceable possession on the 17th, was garrisoned, and commanded by Gen. Worth.

1846.  
Nov. 14.  
Tampico  
taken.  
17th,  
Saltillo.

7. The changeful Mexicans having now displaced Paredes, and given full power to Santa Anna, he had concentrated a force of 22,000 at San Luis Potosi. Gen. Worth, 60 miles in advance of Monterey, and 200 from Taylor at Victoria, now received the startling intelligence, that this army was immediately to be brought down upon him;—he having but 900 men. He sent a rapid express, entreating Wool to hasten to his aid with his whole force. In two hours Gen. Wool was in motion with his entire column, and his long train of wagons. Only fourteen of his soldiers were unable, on account of ill-health, to move. Such was the gratitude of the protected people, that the ladies of Parras came forward and voluntarily took these sick soldiers to their houses. In four days the army marched 120 miles, to Agua Nueva, twenty-one miles in advance of Saltillo.

Dec. 17.  
An ex-  
press  
from  
Gen.  
Worth,—  
Gen.  
Wool  
leaves  
Parras;  
his rapid  
move-  
ment.

8. Gen. Taylor, while at Victoria, learned that the city of Mexico was to be approached by Vera Cruz;

---

6. Give an account of the arrangements detailed in paragraph 6th.—7. What do you now learn of Santa Anna? What alarmed Gen. Worth, and what express did he send? What was done by Gen. Wool? What remarkable proof of gratitude did he receive from the ladies of Parras? What position was taken by Gen. Wool?—8. What disagreeable intelligence was received by Taylor?



**P'T IV.** and that Gen. Scott, appointed to conduct this invasion, would, as his senior, supersede him in the **P'D III.** Mexican command. It was from Taylor's army that **CH. VIII.** Scott's force was to be drawn. Gen. Scott therefore ordered from Gen. Taylor most of his efficient troops, leaving him,—till more could be sent by government, "to stand on the defensive." Taylor, whatever might have been his feelings, promptly obeyed the order; and dispatched to Vera Cruz the greater part of his regular troops, and volunteers. This order reached the forces of Gen. Wool also. But with the remains of their force, these two generals met, and bore back the shock, of the most formidable army which Mexico had ever sent to the field.

Scott supersedes Taylor.

Generals Taylor and Wool are stripped of their forces.

9. Gen. Taylor now learned that Santa Anna, by decided demonstrations, was threatening him. Leaving a small garrison at Monterey, he advanced south with about 300 men to the camp of Wool at Agua Nueva. Their whole force, officers and men, was 4,690, and Santa Anna was approaching with more than four times that number, besides 3,000 regular cavalry under Gen. Minon, and 1,000 under Gen. Urra, sent in advance, to turn the American position, destroy their stores, and cut off their retreat.

**1847.** Santa Anna approaches. Great inequality of force.

10. The army remained encamped at Agua Nueva until the afternoon of the 21st of February. Santa Anna was approaching. The camp at Agua Nueva was then broken up, and Santa Anna, believing that his foes were flying in dismay, eagerly pursued, till he was drawn to the mountain-gorge of Angostura, previously chosen by the American generals, as the place for the battle. Gen. Wool was left by Taylor the active commander at Buena Vista; while he, anxious for his stores menaced by Minon, went to Saltillo.

Santa Anna deceived, is drawn to a bad position.

11. On the morning of the 22d, Gen. Wool drew

---

**8.** What was his conduct? Was Gen. Wool affected by the government order? What did the two generals effect with the remainder of their force?—**9.** What was now the position and force of the Mexican and American armies?—**10.** What occurred on the afternoon of the 21st of February?—**11.** What on the morning of the 22d?

up the army for battle. The gorge was the key of the position. Here was placed Capt. Washington's battery. P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. VIII. THIS WAS THE BIRTHDAY OF THE GREAT WASHINGTON, and the battle-cry was to be, "The memory of Washington!" From their positions the troops looked out through the gorge to the south, and beheld, issuing from clouds of dust, the long array of the Mexican host,—glittering with burnished arms, and gorgeous with many-colored draperies. As they come nearer, their delicious music charms for a moment even the stern ear of war! But the shouts of the Americans rise louder,—as Gen. Taylor, whom they regard as invincible, appears upon the field. 1847.  
Feb. 22.  
BUENA  
VISTA.  
Mexican  
army ap-  
pears.

12. About noon the Mexicans pushed forward a party to the heights on the east, or American left. At three o'clock began the battle. Volunteer riflemen, under Col. Marshall, met the advanced Mexicans. They made no impression upon the American lines, while they suffered loss. Night came. The Americans remained under arms.—Two hours after midnight the Mexicans commenced the second day's attack. 3 o'clock  
P. M.  
battle  
begins.  
Mexican  
loss, k.  
and w.  
more  
than 300.  
Am. w.  
4, k. 0.

13. No language can depict the perilous condition of the comparatively few Americans who fought, and finally won the long and bloody battle of Buena Vista. Some of the volunteers fled in the early part of the day, and in endeavoring to rally them, Capt. Lincoln, aid to Gen. Wool, lost his valuable life. Once the Mexicans had turned the American left, and in that quarter were gaining the field, when they were met and repelled by Col. Jefferson Davis, with the unerring rifles of the Mississippi volunteers. Repeatedly the battle had been lost, but for the flying-artillery, which changed rapidly from point to point as it was needed. Twice Lieut. O'Brien checked masses of the enemy with his small battery, remaining in their way so long that he could only save himself, leaving part of his Col. Da-  
vis and  
the Mis-  
sissippi-  
ans.  
O'Brien.  
Wash-  
ington.

---

**12.** What were the military operations of the afternoon of that day?—**13.** Relate some of the earlier incidents of the battle of Buena Vista.

P'T IV. guns. Washington, though repeatedly attacked, constantly maintained his position.

CH. VIII. 14. Once Mexican cavalry found their way to the rear of the Americans, and attacked their camp; but they were repelled. Col. Yell here lost his life. Then came a moment, in which several thousand Mexicans were in danger, when Santa Anna relieved them, and changed his batteries for a final assault, by the vile trick of sending a flag, as if for surrender. This last assault was furiously made on the American centre, commanded by Taylor in person. For a few moments the volunteers were in danger of being overwhelmed by numbers. Colonels Hardin, Clay, and McKee, were killed. The batteries of Bragg and Sherman arrived, and by almost superhuman exertion, they saved the day.

15. Santa Anna was obliged to draw back his much diminished forces. The second night came on. Officers and men were on the alert, and horses in harness. The field was strewn with the lifeless victims of war. The American surgeons and their assistants administered to the wounded, whether friend or foe; and Mexican women were there, to soothe the dying, or wail the dead.

Feb. 23-4. 16. The Americans were prepared to renew the contest. Outposts had made astonishing marches, and had reached the camp. Gen. Marshall, with his mounted Kentuckians, and Capt. Prentiss with his artillery, had travelled from the Pass of Rinconada, —35 miles of bad road,—in one day.—With the earliest dawn of the morning Gen. Wool, abroad to reconnoitre, discovered that the enemy were in full retreat. Hastening with the news to the tent of Taylor, they embraced and wept,—while the glad shouts of victory, rang over the battle-field.

17. Santa Anna had promised his army, before the battle, the lives and property of their foes, and he

---

14. Of the later.—15. What was the position of things when night came on?—16. What preparation had the Americans made to renew the contest? What was discovered at dawn of day?

had sent, besides regular troops, hordes of rancheros, to fill the mountain passes, so that not an American should escape with his life. By a body of these troops a wagon-train was attacked at Ramas and 45 wagoners killed. On the day of the battle, Gen. Minon, with 1800 cavalry, was driven from Saltillo by Capt. Webster and those under his command. Cols. Morgan and Irvin, defeated a party at Agua Frio on the 26th of February; and Major Giddings was victorious at Ceralvo on the 7th of March.

18. The victory of Buena Vista, without which the guerilla warfare would have borne a different aspect, left the Americans after these affairs in quiet possession of the northern provinces of Mexico proper. Active operations being here at an end, Gen. Taylor, after a few months, returned to receive high honors from his country;—and Gen. Wool was left at Monterey to govern and protect the conquered region.

P'TIV.  
P'D III.  
CH. VIII.  
1847.  
Santa Anna's  
prepara-  
tions to  
cut off  
the whole  
Am. ar-  
my.  
Feb. 26.  
Agua  
Frio.  
Mex. loss  
k. & w.  
60.  
Am. 6.  
March 7.  
Ceralvo.  
Mex.  
force  
1,600.  
Am. 260.  
—  
Mex. loss,  
k. & w.  
45.  
Am. 17.

## CHAPTER IX.

Army of the West.—Conquest of New Mexico and California.

1. A FLEET was already on the coast of California, when the war commenced. Commodore Sloat, the commander, was advised by the navy department, that war with Mexico might occur, in which case he was, without further notice, to employ his fleet for hostile purposes. Having been led to believe that war existed, Com. Sloat took Monterey on the 7th of July, 1846. On the 9th, Francisco, north of Monte-

1846  
July 7.  
Montere-  
y, in  
Californ-  
ia, ta-  
ken by  
Com.  
Sloat.

17. What had Santa Anna promised and prepared to do? What occurred at Ramas? At Saltillo? At Aqua Frio? At Ceralvo?—18. What is here said of Gen. Taylor? Of Gen. Wool?

CHAPTER IX.—1. Of what was Com. Sloat advised? What places in California were taken on the 7th and 9th of July, 1846?

PTIV. rey, was taken by a part of the squadron, acting under  
P'D III. the orders of Com. Montgomery. On the 15th, ar-  
CH. IX. rived a frigate under Com. Stockton. On the 17th,  
1846. Com. Sloat dispatched a party to the mission of St.  
15th, John, to recover cannon and other munitions which  
Arrival the enemy had there deposited.  
of Com. Stockton at Monterey.

June and 2. At this place the American flag had already  
July. been planted by Col. Fremont,—who, with 63 men,  
Fremont and the had been sent out in 1845 by the government with  
the American the ostensible object of making peaceful explorations.  
Californians Fremont being threatened with destruction by De  
drive out the Span- Castro, the Spanish commandant, went and aroused the  
ish govern- American settlers in the neighborhood of Sonoma,  
ment. and on the river Sacramento. They added to his  
(Their force, and he swept out the Mexican authorities from  
flag was hence the interior of California. The American Californians,  
called the Bear July 5th, declared their independence, and placed Fre-  
Revolu- mont at the head of their government. A few days  
tion.) after, news came that war existed between the United  
States and Mexico; when the Californian colors were  
joyfully pulled down, and the American hoisted.

August. 3. Afterwards, De Castro, who had been driven  
Mexican from the seat of government, *Ciudad de los Angeles*,  
revolt at or the City of the Angels, returned with a Mexican  
Los Angeles. force, and attempted at that place to make head  
against the Americans. Com. Stockton united his  
marines with Fremont's troops, routed the Mexicans,  
and re-established the American authority. After  
some weeks, the people aided by Mexicans, again re-  
volted. Fremont went north and increased his Cali-  
fornian battalion to 428, with which in December and  
January he assisted in the final conquest of California.

4. ARMY OF THE WEST.—Immediately after the  
(Army of the opening of the war, orders were issued by the Exec-  
West—utive for organizing an “Army of the West,” to be  
1st reg. commanded by Gen. Kearny;—for the object of ta-  
856. king,—and placing under American laws, New Mexico  
Inf. 145, Lt. Art. 250, Drag. 407, 16 pieces  
of ord.)

2. Give some account of Col. Fremont and his military op-  
erations in California.—3. What happened at *Ciudad de los*  
*Angeles*?—4. What was the object of the Army of the West?



and California. This army began, June 5th, to appear at the rendezvous, which was Fort Leavenworth. Here the volunteers chose their own officers. The men elected by them had entered their ranks as privates. Doniphan was chosen colonel of the first Missouri regiment. All were for twenty days instructed by such of their officers as had been West-Point students; and thus the military arts and sciences infused into this celebrated school, by COL. SYLVANUS THAYER and his associates and successors, were rapidly transfused into the capable volunteers of the West.

5. Gen. Kearny, having sent forward his baggage, and taken in convoy the annual train of merchants' wagons, now numbering 414, (going to trade at Santa Fé and Chihuahua,) set out with his army on the last of June. They moved southwesterly across the river Platte,—the branches of the Kansas,—along the Arkansas to Bent's Fort; thence south and southwesterly to Santa Fé.

June 26-29.  
Army march.  
30th, Reach the Kansas.  
July 12, the Arkansas.

6. A great portion of the region moved over was prairie;—one wide, wild, unmeasured level, or gently undulating field;—sometimes green, as far as the eye could reach, with tall, rank grass,—and sometimes gay with unnumbered flowers,—perhaps blushing, far round with the varieties of the prairie rose,—or tinged orange with the wild lily; and sometimes showing the pale green and delicate white and red of the moccasin flower, the "belle of the prairie." Along the Arkansas the troops found great herds of buffalo; and cheerily joined the hunt, and enjoyed the feast.

Prairie scene

7. But they had many hardships. The ground was often so soft and spongy, that the wagons sunk; and the strength of the men must be added to that of the horses to drag them forth. Again chasms must be filled, and torrents bridged; and sometimes the vol-

From June to Aug. 19.

---

4. What occurred with respect to election of officers and discipline, and where?—5. What is said of a wagon-train which Gen. Kearny was to convoy? What course was taken by the army in their march to Santa Fé?—6. Describe the prairie scenery, and the chief pleasure of the army?—7. What disagreeable scenes had they to encounter?

**P'T IV.** unteers must lie down at night in places infested with  
**P'D III.** serpents, horned frogs, lizards, and musquitoes. Often  
**CH. IX.** they made long marches without water, and some-  
**1846.** times with scarcely any food.

**Aug. 18.** 8. Gen. Kearny peacefully entered the city of Santa  
**Gen.** Fé, containing 6,000 inhabitants. He occupied the  
**Kearny** governor's palace, and planted above it, August 18th,  
**enters** the standard eagle of Republican America. Thus had  
**Santa Fé.** the army in fifty days accomplished this desert march  
of 900 miles. The day after his entrance, Gen. Kear-  
**He estab-** ny proclaimed himself governor of New Mexico.  
**lishes** "You are now," said he, "American citizens;—you  
**civil gov-** no longer owe allegiance to the Mexican government."  
**ernment.** The principal men then took the oath required; swear-  
ing allegiance to the laws and government of the  
United States. These measures gave rise to much  
discussion in the American capitol when they became  
known; the question being, whether the administra-  
tion had or had not transcended its constitutional  
powers, in thus annexing, without any action of con-  
gress, a territory to the American Union.

**His do-**  
**ings**  
**question-**  
**ed in con**  
**gress.**

9. Gen. Kearny having now taken possession of  
New Mexico, and organized a government,—of which  
he made Charles Bent the chief executive,—it next  
became his duty to proceed to California. He ap-  
pointed Col. Doniphan to succeed him in the province;  
with orders, however, that on the arrival of volunteers  
under Col. Price, Doniphan should leave him in com-  
mand, proceed with his regiment and some additional  
forces to Chihuahua, and there report to Gen. Wool.

**Sept. 25.**  
**Kearny**  
**leaves**  
**Santa Fé.**

10. Proceeding down the Rio Grande, Kearny was  
met by an express from Col. Fremont,—by which he  
learned that California was already conquered. Se-  
lecting 100 men as his escort, he ordered the return  
of his main force to Santa Fé. Crossing the Rio  
Grande in latitude 33°, he reached the river Gila,

**Kearny's**  
**march.**

**8.** What were some of the circumstances of Gen. Kearny's  
taking Santa Fé and establishing government?—**9.** What was  
Gen. Kearny next to do? Whom did he leave to succeed him?  
What orders did he give?—**10.** What information met Gen.  
Kearny and what was his course of action?

at the copper mines, on the 20th of October; and following its course, he arrived at its mouth on the 22d of November, in lat. 32°. From this point he kept along, or near the Colorado, forty miles;—thence westerly sixty miles, through an arid desert.

P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. IX.  
1846  
Nov. 22.  
Kearny  
at the  
mouth of  
the Gila.

11. On the 2d of December, Gen. Kearny reached Wamas village, the frontier settlement of California. He was met on the 5th by Capt. Gillespie, sent to him with thirty-six men, by Com. Stockton, acting governor of California. A corps of the enemy were near. The next morning the general mounted his little party on the jaded beasts, which they had ridden from Santa Fé, 1050 miles, and at day-dawn went forth to *San Pascal*,—where he engaged 160 mounted Californians. The Americans were victorious;—but these more northern troops sold victory at a dearer rate, than the southern Mexicans. Kearny was twice wounded. Captains Johnson and Moore and Lieut. Hammond were killed;—indeed, more than half the officers were either killed or wounded, with 19 of the men. When the surgeon appeared, the commander directed, “first dress the wounds of the soldiers;” and then fell,—fainting with exhaustion. Happily his wounds were not dangerous. He reached San Diego on the 12th of December.

Dec. 6.  
Battle of  
SAN  
PASCAL.  
Mex.  
force 160.

12. On the 29th of that month, by Com. Stockton's request, Gen. Kearny took the command of 500 marines with the land forces; and marched to the vicinity of Ciudad los Angeles, to quell the revolt of the inhabitants,—met and defeated them at *San Gabriel*, on the 8th of January. Gen. Kearny, according to his orders and military rank, assumed the full command, and took the style of governor of California. Com. Shu-  
brick, then commanding the navy, co-operated with him; and quiet and order were re-established. Col. Mason succeeded Gen. Kearny, who, accompanied by Col. Fremont and others, took his way homeward across

1847.  
Jan. 8  
and 9.  
Battle of  
SAN GA-  
BRIEL.  
Am. loss  
about 20.  
Mex. loss  
about 70  
or 80.

May 31.  
Kearny  
leaves  
Califor-  
nia.

10. Describe the route of Gen. Kearny.—11. Give an account of the battle of San Pascal.—12. Of the battle of San Gabriel. Of Gen. Kearny's further movements and departure.

P'T IV. the Rocky Mountains, by the South Pass. On the  
 P'D III. 22d of August, the party were at Fort Leavenworth;  
 CH. X. whence Gen. Kearny repaired to Washington,—hav-  
 1847. ing twice crossed the continent in little more than a  
 August year.  
 22. At  
 Fort  
 Leaven-  
 worth.

## CHAPTER X.

Doniphan's Expedition to Chihuahua.—Revolt in New Mexico.

1. THREE days after Gen. Kearny's departure from  
 1846. Santa Fé, Col. Price arrived with his recruits. Col.  
 Sept. 28. Doniphan was awaiting this event to commence his  
 Colonel march upon Chihuahua. But on the 11th of Octo-  
 Price ar- ber he received an order from Kearny, dated "near  
 rives at Santa  
 Fé.  
 Oct. 11. Doni-  
 phan or-  
 dered  
 against  
 the Na-  
 vajo-  
 es.

1846. Santa Fé, Col. Price arrived with his recruits. Col. Doniphan was awaiting this event to commence his march upon Chihuahua. But on the 11th of October he received an order from Kearny, dated "near La Joya," to march with his regiment against the Navajo Indians,—their chiefs not having come to Santa Fé to hold a peace-council with those of other Indian nations, as they had been invited, and as they had promised to do;—but instead of this, they had made war on "the inhabitants of New Mexico, under the protection of the United States."

2. Winter was approaching, and the abodes of the powerful Navajoes, the "mountain-lords" of unknown regions, extended far to the west. The more thoroughly to scour their country, Col. Doniphan divided his regiment into three parties,—one under Major Gilpin, to take a northern route; one under Col. Jackson, a southern, while Doniphan himself was to take a central range. All were to meet at Ojo Oso, or the Bear Springs,—bringing in the chiefs, there to hold a council.

Nov. 11. (Major  
 Gilpin  
 marches  
 about 750  
 miles  
 among  
 the  
 Indians.)

---

CHAPTER X.—1. What order from Gen. Kearny hindered Col. Doniphan from proceeding to Chihuahua? What was alleged against the Navajo Indians?—2. What division of his force was made by Doniphan, and for what object were the parties sent?

3. The three parties set forward; and after incredible hardships, thrilling adventures among strange savages,—in crossing the heights and chasms of unexplored mountains where one false step would precipitate man and horse into unfathomed abysses—after losing several lives of their men by frost, poorly clad as they were among snows and mountain-storms,—they finally accomplished their object; and at Bear Springs, on the 22d of November, a treaty was made in form; and the three parties, Americans, New Mexicans, and Navajoes, were, by its conditions, to live in perpetual peace.

P'T IV.

P'D III.  
CH. X.

1846.

Nov. 21.  
(Present  
at Bear  
Springs  
189  
Ameri-  
cans, 500  
Nava-  
joes.Nov. 22.  
Treaty  
made.

4. Col. Doniphan made Valverde the place of rendezvous for the troops who were to accompany him to Chihuahua. In the middle of December he moved his army from this place in three divisions, with his baggage-wagons, and merchant-trains in convoy. He now crossed a dreary desert of ninety miles, called the "Journey of the Dead," where there was neither water, food, nor fuel. At Doñanna the army found refreshment. Proceeding in the direction of El Paso—at Bracito, on the Del Norte, they encountered a Mexican force, commanded by Gen. Ponce de Leon. He dispatched an officer with a *black flag*, demanding of the American commander to appear before him. On refusal, he said in haughty defiance, "We neither ask quarter, nor give it." The Mexicans advanced, firing three rounds. The Missourians, falling on their faces, were supposed to be dead, but suddenly rising, they delivered a fire so fatal that the foe fled in confusion, leaving about 200 killed and wounded.

Dec. 14-  
19.  
Doni-  
phan's  
army  
move  
from  
Val-  
verde.Dec. 22.  
At Du-  
ñanna 60  
m. from  
El Paso.Dec. 25.  
BRACI-  
TO, Mex.  
force  
1,200.  
Mex. loss  
k. about  
50. w.  
150. Am.  
force en-  
gaged  
500, w.  
7, k. 0.

5. In the delightful valley of El Paso del Norte, the troops were fully recruited. Their march from El Paso was forth into unknown hostile regions. And now they had learned that Gen. Wool was not at Chi-

---

3. Give some account of their adventures, with the length of Major Gilpin's march. (see side note.) Did Doniphan effect his object?—4. What was the starting-point of his march to Chihuahua? Describe the march to Doñanna. The battle of Bracito.—5. Give some account of the march from El Paso to Laguna de los Patos.



P'T IV. huahua. But fearlessly they pressed on. They en-  
 P'D III. countered as they went from the Del Norte a desert  
 CH. X. of sixty-five miles in extent, in which the whole army

1847. animals, and some men gave out, and lay down to die.  
 (El Paso noted for delicious wines.) Many officers and soldiers threw all aside, and were  
 running with their last strength to reach a lake ten  
 miles distant. But that Providence which so often  
 saved our armies during this war, relieved their suffer-  
 ings by a shower so copious, that the torrent-streams  
 came dashing from the rocks, to refresh and save  
 them. Having at length reached the lake, (Laguna  
 de los Patos,) they remained to recruit, one day only,  
 and on the 18th resumed their march.

Feb. 8.  
 Army  
 leave  
 El Paso.  
 16th.  
 Great  
 distress  
 from  
 thirst.

6. Col. Doniphan, as he approached Chihuahua,  
 learned that an army of 4,000 men had been raised to  
 oppose him by Don Angel Trias, governor of the  
 province. He met this formidable force strongly  
 posted, and fortified with heavy ordnance, at the  
*Pass of Sacramento*, eighteen miles from the capital;  
 and his little army of about a thousand brave men here  
 defeated quadruple numbers of their enemies,—fight-  
 ing on ground of their own selection.

Feb. 28.  
 SACRA-  
 MENTO.  
 M. force  
 4,120.  
 Am. 924.  
 M. loss.  
 k. 300.  
 w. 300.  
 Am. loss,  
 k. 1, w.  
 18.

7. Having completely routed the army, the city  
 and province of Chihuahua were at the mercy of the  
 conqueror. Captains Reid and Weightman, both dis-  
 tinguished in the battle, were sent the following day  
 to take military possession of the capital. Col. Doni-  
 phan having collected the trophies of his victory, en-  
 tered the succeeding day, March 2d, with the main  
 army; and planted the colors of his country over a  
 city containing 40,000 inhabitants, and having in its  
 vicinity some of the richest mines in Mexico. In this  
 salubrious climate, his soldiers enjoyed six weeks of  
 the opening spring; then marched by Parras to Sal-  
 tillo, where at length they met Gen. Wool. Their  
 term of service expired on the last of May. By Ca-

March 2.  
 Doni-  
 phan en-  
 ters Chi-  
 huahua.

May 22.  
 At Sal-  
 tillo.

---

6. Give some account of the battle of Sacramento.—7. Of the entrance of Col. Doniphan into Chihuahua. Of his army's return.

margo and the Rio Grande, they arrived at New Or. P'T IV.  
leaves on the 15th of June; having marched 5,000 P'D III.  
miles since they left the Mississippi. CH X.

8. In the mean time the New Mexicans had secretly conspired against the American authority. On the 1847  
19th of January, at *Fernando de Taos*, were cruelly Jan. 19.  
murdered Gov. Charles Bent, Sheriff Lee, and four Massacre  
other persons. Massacres occurred at other places. of Gov.  
Col. Price, the military commander of Santa Fé, re- Bent and  
ceived the startling intelligence on the 20th; when he 18 others.  
learned that a force, hourly increasing, approached Victories  
him. On the 23d he marched with 350 men,—met of Col.  
the foe on the 24th, near the small town of *Canada*, Price.  
attacked and defeated him; and again on the 29th, at Jan. 24.  
the mountain-gorge called the *Pass of Embudo*. CANADA.

9. The Americans next had a march over the Taos Jan 28.  
mountain, through snows two feet in depth, with a de- EMBUDO.  
gree of cold so intense, that many had their limbs M. force  
frozen. At Puebla de Taos they met the enemy, about  
stormed his fortifications, and drove him from his po- 1,500;  
sition. The valuable lives of Capt. Burguin and other Am. 479.  
officers, were here lost. Fifteen Mexicans were exe-  
cuted as conspirators. Peace was now restored, but  
a fear of secret conspiracy remained.

Feb. 5.  
PUEBLA  
DE TAOS.  
M. loss.  
k. 200,  
w. 60

## CHAPTER XI.

Scott's Invasion.—Vera Cruz.—Cerro Gordo.

1. SINCE Mexico refused to treat for peace, the American Executive determined to strike at her capital through Vera Cruz. Gen. Scott, the first officer in the American army, was properly selected to conduct

---

8. What occurred in New Mexico on the 19th of June 1847? What were the two first victories of Col. Price?—9. What the third and most important? How many were executed? Was confidence restored as well as peace?

**P'T IV.** this perilous enterprise. He was, on the 18th of No-  
**P'D III.** vember, notified by Secretary Marcy of his appoint-  
**CH. XI.** ment, and directed to draw his force chiefly from  
**1846.** Gen. Taylor. Santa Anna was lying with 22,000  
 Nov. 18, men at San Luis Potosi. It would have seemed  
 Scott's orders. probable that he would have turned towards Vera  
 Cruz, and uniting with forces in that vicinity, oppose,  
 as he might have done, with an army of more than  
**1847.** 30,000, the landing of Gen. Scott;—rather than to  
 Feb. 22 march against Gen. Taylor. But (as Scott learned  
 Nov. 23. of after landing) Santa Anna chose the latter, and was  
 Battle of Buena defeated at Buena Vista.

2. The rendezvous of the several corps, which  
 were to compose the invading army, was the island  
 of Lobos, 125 miles from Vera Cruz. Necessary de-  
 lays, however, occurred; and it was not until the 7th  
**March 7.** of March, that Gen. Scott embarked with his troops  
 Scott em- on board the transporting squadron, which was com-  
 barks his manded by Com. Conner. Reaching Vera Cruz on  
 army. the 9th, he, with admirable order, debarked his whole  
 army on the west side of the island of Sacrificios.  
**9th,—** Having vainly summoned the garrison to surrender,  
**lands at** Scott, with the aid of his able engineers, of whom  
**Sacrifi-** Col. Totten was chief, planted his batteries; and com-  
**cios.** menced, on the night of the 18th, a tremendous bom-  
**18th, be-** bardment of the city. The fleet lent its aid, although  
 gins the exposed to the fire of the castle.  
 cannon-  
 ade.

3. On the night of the 27th, Vera Cruz, with the  
 strong castle of San Juan d'Ulloa,—the principal com-  
 mercial port and the strongest fortress in Mexico, were  
**March** surrendered, with 5,000 prisoners, (dismissed on pa-  
**26-7.** role,) and 500 pieces of artillery. Two meritorious  
**The city** American officers, Captains Alburtis and Vinton, with  
 surren- ten privates, were killed. Capt. Swift, one of the  
 ders. brightest ornaments of the service, who had organized

---

CHAPTER XI.—1. Of what was Gen. Scott notified, and  
 what directed to do? What is here stated concerning Santa  
 Anna's position and movements?—2. Give some account of the  
 embarkation and landing of Scott's army. Of the attack on  
 Vera Cruz.—3. Of the surrender. Of the loss of officers and  
 men.

a company of sappers and miners,—too eager in duty for his impaired health, fainted at the head of his corps, from over-exertion; and died in the hospital. The discipline of Gen. Scott's army was strict, and no invasion of private rights was permitted.

P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. XI.  
(Captain Hunter, with valor, but disrespect to his superior, took Alvarado.)

4. Com. Perry succeeded Conner in command of the Gulf squadron. Alvarado on the south was captured, and Tuspan on the north. The American government about this time adopted the policy of drawing a revenue from the conquered;—lest by too much lenity, in paying for all needed supplies, the war should become a pecuniary advantage to the Mexicans, and thus peace be deferred. American revenue officers were appointed, and impost duties collected in the captured ports.

5. On the 8th of April, Gen. Scott, leaving a garrison in Vera Cruz, sent forward the advance of his army under Gen. Twiggs, on the road to Jalapa. At the base of the grand eastern chain of the Cordilleras, the other divisions of the army came up, and the commander established a camp at Plan del Rio. Then lay before him an arduous and difficult ascent through a mountain-gorge. Across this way, and on the heights which commanded it, bristled the artillery of the invaded foe, 12,000 strong, commanded by Santa Anna, who declared that he would die fighting rather than "the American hosts should proudly tread the imperial capital of Azteca."

April 8.  
Army leaves Vera Cruz.

April 18.  
CERRO GORDO.  
M. force 12,000.  
Am. 8,500.  
—  
M. loss, k. and w. about 1,100.  
prisoners 3,000.  
Am. k. and w. 430.

6. Gen. Scott found that the Mexican position was so commanded by the batteries of the lofty height of Cerro Gordo that approach in front was impracticable. But, aided by the skill of his engineers, Lee and Beauregard, he turned to the left, causing to be made a new road, by which,—ascending along difficult slopes, and over deep chasms, his army might reach the rear

---

4. What places were captured by the navy? What was done in reference to collecting a revenue?—5. To what point did Gen. Scott move, and what was his position in regard to the Mexican army?—6. What great advantage was here gained by the American skill in engineering, and the sagacious foresight of the commander?

**P'T IV.** of the enemy's camp. After three days of secret labor, the road was made. On the 17th of April, the **P'D III.** commander published a general order for the next day,—showing how the battle was to be gained,—how the flying were to be pursued,—and how the greatest advantage was to be reaped from the victory. All was done as he commanded.

**CH. XI.** 7. About noon the steep ascent was won. The heights of Cerro Gordo were stormed by Twiggs' brigade,—and the enemy's camp, by a party led by Col. Harney, Gen. Shields,—(severely wounded,) and by Col. Riley. At two o'clock, P. M., the enemy were put to flight,—more than a thousand having fallen. Santa Anna and a part of his army had fled, and the eager pursuit had commenced. Scott, in his orders before the battle, had directed that the pursuers should each take two days' subsistence, and that wagons with stores should immediately follow, so that they need not return.

**1847.** 8. On the 19th, the pursuing squadrons entered and took possession of Jalapa. On the 22d, having now attained the summit of the eastern Cordilleras, General Worth displayed the American banner from the unresisting castle of Perote, the strongest fortress in Mexico, next to San Juan d'Ulloa. Thus by vigorously following up this remarkable victory, the enemy were unable to recover in time to make a stand in this, their strongest inland post; and thus, other battles were saved.

**April 22.** 9. Three thousand prisoners were taken at Cerro Gordo, among whom were four generals. General Scott dismissed them all upon parole, having neither food to sustain, nor men to guard them. Santa Anna's equipage and papers were secured. From Perote the army passed onwards, through that great table-valley between the grand chains of the Cordil-

(54 pieces of cannon and mortar were taken at Perote.)

---

**6.** What was his general order?—**7.** Give a sketch of the battle of Cerro Gordo. The pursuit of the flying. **8.** Of the places now occupied by the Americans.—**9.** What was taken at Cerro Gordo? What is here related of Puebla?



leras, called "Terras Frias," or the cold country. P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. XII.  
On the morning of the 15th of May, the advance un-  
der Worth entered Puebla, the second city of Mexico,  
containing 80,000 inhabitants. Eagerly did the Mex- **1847**  
ican men and women look out from their balconies,  
and from the roofs of their houses, to see these mighty  
conquerors. War-worn, and habited in the sober  
gray of the American army, the Mexicans accustomed  
to a gaudy uniform, looked upon them with disap-  
pointment; and could find no reason but one for their  
success. "Their leaders," said they, "are gray-  
headed men."

## CHAPTER XII.

State of the Army.—Its March.—Contreras.—Churubusco.

1. THE American Executive about this time, sent Nicholas P. Trist, as an agent to make the experiment, whether Mexico would now treat for peace. But the olive-branch was again rejected. The interruption of the army's activity caused by this unavailing effort for peace, was opportune. Its numbers were lessened by sickness; for the climate though pleasant, proved so unhealthy, that hundreds were in hospitals, and many died. The time for which large numbers of the volunteers were enlisted, expired; and many had deserted. Congress had, however, passed a law, February 11th, 1847, authorizing ten new regiments; and these being raised, reinforcements were sent by the way of Vera Cruz; and although not in sufficient numbers to admit of leaving such garrisons behind as would keep open his line of supplies, yet General Scott determined to move forward.

(700 died at Perote, 1800 were at one time in hospital at Puebla, and 1700 deserted in little more than a year.)

---

CHAPTER XII.—1. What experiment was now made by the American Executive? What was now the condition of the army?

**P'T IV.** 2. On the 7th of August he marched from Puebla  
**P'D III.** with 10,728 men, leaving more than 3,000 in hos-  
**CH. XII.** pitals,—and as a garrison under Col. Childs. Keep-  
 ing the several columns into which he had divided  
 the army, within supporting distance, and himself ac-  
 companying the van, General Scott moved forth with  
 his little army;—like a second Cortez, to encounter  
 the unknown numbers which would be brought  
 against him, at the coming death-struggle of an in-  
 furiated nation.

Aug. 7.  
 Scott's  
 march  
 from  
 Puebla  
 through  
 the Ter-  
 ras Frias.

3. The march of the Americans was now through  
 a beautiful and cultivated region, whose abundant  
 waters flowed pure and cool. Soon they began to  
 ascend the gradual slope of the great Cordilleras of  
 Anahuac, central between the east and western oceans.  
 On the third day, their toilsome march wound up  
 through steep acclivities. At length they reached  
 the summit; and three miles beyond Rio Frio, burst  
 upon their gaze, all the glories of the grand valley of  
 Mexico. Spreading far round and beneath, were its  
 mingled lakes, plains, cities, and cloud-capped moun-  
 tains. The giant peak of Popocatepetl was far to  
 their left; before them lay the lake Tezcuco; and be-  
 yond it, the domes and towers of the city of the  
 Montezumas.

Aug. 10.  
 First  
 view of  
 the grand  
 Valley.

4. On the 11th, the advance commanded by Gen.  
 Twiggs, rested at Ayotla, north of lake Chalco, and  
 fifteen miles from the capital. The remaining corps  
 were soon concentrated at small distances; some on  
 the lake's eastern border. The ground-plot of the  
 city had formerly been an island. What was once  
 the lake on which it stood, was now an oozy marsh.  
 Long straight causeways, easily raked by artillery,  
 led through this marsh to the several gates, from the  
 great roads by which the city was approached; and  
 much the longest was that connected with the road

Aug. 11.  
 Advance  
 at  
 Ayotla.

---

2. In what manner did General Scott with his army go  
 forth from Puebla?—3. Describe the march of the army and  
 the appearance of the country.—4. Where did the army rest,  
 and what was their position in regard to the Mexican capital?

from Vera Cruz. But before reaching the causeways P'T IV.  
was an exterior system of strong defences. P'D III.

5. By the Vera Cruz road, on which the army CH. XII.  
were, the city could not be approached, without first  
encountering the strongest of the exterior fortifica-  
tions, that of El Penon. "No doubt," says General  
Scott, "it might have been carried, but at a great  
and disproportionate loss, and I was anxious to spare  
the lives of this gallant army for a general battle,  
which I knew we had to win before capturing the  
city, or obtaining the great object of the campaign—  
a just and honorable peace."

6. The commander then moved his troops 27 miles ;  
they making a new road, directed by the engineers,  
over such sharp volcanic rocks and deep chasms, as  
the foe had not dreamed could be passed ; when,—  
having turned the lakes Chalco and Jochamileho,  
they encamped at St. Augustine, on the Acapulco  
road, eight miles south of Mexico. From the camp,  
looking towards the city, the defences on this road,  
were the fortress of Antonia ; and, a mile and a half  
further north, the strongly fortified hill of Churu-  
busco. These could be approached in front only by  
a dangerous causeway. By making a detour to the  
west, where lay yet other dangers, they might be  
reached from the left.

August  
15-18.  
Army  
marches  
from  
Ayotla to  
St. Au-  
gustine.

7. Two movements, ordered by the commander,  
were simultaneously made. Worth with Harney's  
cavalry went to menace Antonia in front ; while to  
the left, General Pillow's division, consisting of the  
brigades of Pierce and Cadwallader, conducted by  
the engineers, Lee, Beauregard, and others, made a  
road through craggy rocks of ancient lava ; whose  
crevices shot up the thorn-armed maguey, and whose  
deep chasms were filled with water. To cover and  
support the working party, was sent General Twigg's

18-19.  
A road  
made to  
Con-  
treras.

5. Why did Gen. Scott not approach the city by the Vera Cruz  
road?—6. To what position did he remove his army, and by  
what means? What was now his position in regard to the  
Mexican city and army?—7. What movements were next or-  
dered and effected?

P'T IV. division, made up of the brigades of Generals Riley  
P'D III. and Percifer Smith.

CH. XII.

19th.  
The  
troops  
within  
range of  
the guns  
of Con-  
treras.

8. In the afternoon of the second day, after accomplishing nearly three miles of this difficult road, the troops found themselves within cannon-range of the enemy's fortified camp at *Contreras*, commanded by General Valencia, with 6,000 men, surmounted by 22 heavy guns, and communicating by a good road with Mexico, and also with the main camp of Santa Anna, which was lying two miles nearer. Upon this road the American soldiers saw the Mexicans hurrying on to the scene of action.

Village  
of Ansal-  
da taken.

9. Fighting now begins, in which the divisions of generals Twiggs and Pillow, especially Riley's brigade, are engaged. They advance, though suffering from the enemy's fire. About sunset, the commander, now on the field with fresh troops, gives to Col. Morgan of the regular infantry, an order, which, aided by General Shields of the volunteers, he executes; taking the village of Ansalda, which lay on the road from the fortified camp, to that of Santa Anna. The enemy's line of reinforcements was now cut.

(† Of  
seven of-  
ficers sent  
by Scott  
after sun-  
down to  
carry or-  
ders, not  
one suc-  
ceeded in  
reaching  
Ansalda.)

10. Night,—cold, dark, and rainy—closed in. Comfortless was the condition of the troops, remaining without food or sleep, upon the ground. The officers at Ansalda, in their perilous position,—separated as they were from their commander by the almost impassable† lava-field; whose crags, on account of the rain-flood, were interspersed by torrents,—now found resources in their own genius, courage, and union.

11. General Percifer Smith proposed to set out at midnight, surprise and storm the camp at Contreras. From that moment, dark forebodings passed from the army, and each officer and man, as by spontaneous

---

8. What was now the position of the party sent to the left?  
—9. What was now done, and what advantage gained by the Americans?—10. What was the night of the 19th of August, and the condition of the troops? Where did they find resources?

movement, fell into his proper place. Gen. Shields P'T IV. extending his 600 men into a long line, and keeping P'D III. up fires, was interposed between the storming party CH. XII. and the camp of Santa Anna, with his 12,000 reserve. One messenger alone—Lee, the engineer—Morning of the 20th of August. found his dark and watery way over the lava-rocks, and carried to the gratified commander the tidings of the gallant attitude of his troops,—and also, a request of General Smith, for co-operation. General Scott complied, by sending with the messenger the force under Twiggs, to Contreras at five in the morning, to aid the storming party approaching the enemy's rear, by making a diversion in their front.

12. A little past midnight, General Smith sets forward, conducted by engineer Smith,—Col. Riley leading the van. The rain continues to fall in torrents, and their progress is slow. So profound is the darkness, that the men must touch each other as they move, lest they divide, and some be lost. At sunrise, they storm the intrenchments, and precipitate themselves upon the surprised Mexicans. Dismay and carnage prevail for seventeen minutes; when the camp is carried. Eighty-eight officers and 3,000 men are made prisoners. Thirty-three pieces of artillery are captured; among which are found two of those so honorably lost by O'Brien at Buena Vista. They are received with shouts of joy by the victors of Contreras; in which the commander, now present, heartily participates.

13. General Scott next directed a grand movement upon Churubusco, to which the victory already achieved, opened the way. Moving northeasterly by the road through St. Angel, he keeps the centre of the extended field, while General Worth on his extreme right, is driving the now terrified garrison from Antonia. General Shields, who at Contreras, had kept for hours the whole army of Santa Anna in check,

CON-  
TRERAS.  
Mexican  
force,  
7,000;  
12,000  
more in  
sight.  
Ameri-  
can force  
engaged  
4,500.

—  
Mex. loss,  
k. 700,  
prisoners,  
813, 88  
officers,  
generals.  
Am. k.  
& w. 66.

Antonia  
taken.

---

11. What part had Gen. Shields? What was done by Lee?—12. Describe the approach to Contreras, and the storming of the camp.



**P<sup>T</sup> IV.** was in command of the extreme left; still charged  
**P<sup>D</sup> III.** with the dangerous duty of keeping off the grand  
**CH. XIII.** Mexican army from the immediate object of attack.  
 In the centre, General Twiggs presses forward to Churubusco, and entering it from the west, attacks one of its two strong defences, the fortified church of San Pablo. In the mean time, Worth, joined by Pillow and Cadwallader, comes in from Antonia, and furiously carrying the stronger fortress, called *Pont du Tête*, or Bridge's Head, he turns its guns upon the citadel-church, which now surrenders.

August  
19 & 20.  
CHURUBUSCO.

14. Meantime, Shields, Pierce, and others, are fighting a bloody battle with Santa Anna, with fearful odds against them. Scott sent successive regiments to their aid. Churubusco was now taken,—the brave old General Rincon, its commander, having surrendered. Santa Anna abandoned the field. Worth and Shields pursued. Col. Harney with his dragoons dashed by them, and one of his officers, Captain Kearny, not hearing the call to return, followed the flying Mexicans to the very gate of the capital, in which the army of Santa Anna was now enclosed.

Entire  
Am. force  
4,052.

## CHAPTER XIII.

Armistice.—Molinos del Rey.—Chapultepec.—Mexico.

Generous  
proceed-  
ings of  
Scott.

1. THE commander, following up his victory, might now have entered Mexico. But he was not sent to conquer the country, but to “conquer a peace,” and he believed that the reduction of the capital would delay, rather than accelerate this result. He did not wish to drive the government away from the city dis-

**13.** Describe the approach to Churubusco, and the assault—**14.** Give a sketch of the closing scene of the victories of this great day.

**CHAPTER XIII.—1.** What were the reasons why General Scott now forbore to enter Mexico.

honored. "The army," says Scott in his dispatches, P'T IV. P'D III. CH. XIII.  
 "are willing to leave to this republic something on which to rest her pride,—and they cheerfully sacrifice to patriotism the eclat that would have followed an entrance, sword in hand, into a great capital."

2. Tacubaya now became the headquarters of the American army. The general-in-chief occupied the archbishop's palace, with its beautiful gardens. Here he negotiated with Mexican commissioners an armistice, as a step preparatory to a final peace. But the Mexicans would not agree to the terms proposed: and they violating the armistice by strengthening their defences, General Scott declared it at an end. The Mexicans then called on the provinces to come to their aid in mass; and by fire—or poison,—by any weapon, in any manner, to injure and destroy the invader.

Aug. 21.

24th. Armistice concluded.

Violated by the Mexicans.

3. From Tacubaya, Mexico was full in view—north-east, and distant three miles. North—bearing a little east—distant a mile—rose, in beautiful prospect, the fortified hill of Chapultepec; its porphyritic rocks abruptly descending on its southern and eastern sides,—while to the west, the hill fell gradually, with a gentle, wooded slope, till it met the fortified building of stone, called *El Molinos del Rey*, or the King's Mills. A quarter of a mile west of the fortified mills stood another stone fortress called Casa Mata. These were the obstacles which now barred the way of the Americans to the capital; and they constituted the supporting points of the Mexican army, ranged behind them, headed by Santa Anna, and amounting to fourteen thousand.

Scott's position in respect to Mexico and its defences.

4. The generals, Scott and Worth, went forth in person to reconnoitre, and they sent out their skilful engineers. Scott then gave the order for an assault on Molinos del Rey, committing its execution to

2. What efforts were now made for peace, and how did they result? What call was made upon all Mexican citizens?—

3. What was the position of the city, regarded from the American headquarters?—4. Give an account of the battle of Molinos del Rey?

P'T IV. Worth. A terrible battle was fought,—and an impor-  
 P'D III. tant but melancholy victory was won. The commanders  
 CH. XIII. had been deceived as to the enemy's strength, which  
 1847. was five times that of the assailing party. In the  
 Sept. 8. heat of the action, Major Wright, assisted by Mason  
 MOLINOS DEL of the engineers, fell upon the enemy's centre, and  
 REV. took his main field-battery; when so furiously did he  
 Mexican force charge to regain it, that of fourteen American officers,  
 14,000. eleven fell. Among the number were Wright and  
 Am. 3,200. Mason. One brigade lost its three senior officers,—  
 Mex. loss severe, but unknown. Col. M'Intosh and Major Waite wounded, and Col.  
 Pris. 800, Martin Scott killed. Casa Mata was blown up, and  
 52 officers. El Molinos dismantled.

Am. loss, k. 116, w. 665, including 49 officers.  
 5. It was at the beautiful hill of Chapultepec, where  
 once arose the veritable "Halls of the Montezumas."  
 Here was now the military school of Mexico, and the  
 last exterior defence of the successors of Cortez, to  
 that capital which he had so iniquitously taken, shed-  
 ding seas of blood, because "the Spaniards had a  
 disease of the heart, which nothing could assuage but  
 gold."† The God of battles, who had so signally  
 made the American armies the means of chastising  
 the Spanish Mexicans, for national cruelties early be-  
 gun, and long continued, again led them to victory.

(† See  
 Prescott's  
 Conquest  
 of Mex-  
 ico.)

6. On the night of the 11th of September, General  
 Scott caused to be erected, from the cannon taken in  
 former victories, four heavy batteries, bearing on  
 Chapultepec. Before night, on the 12th, the out-  
 works of that fortress, skilfully assailed by a can-  
 nonade directed by the American engineers, began to  
 give way. On the 13th was the battle. The officers  
 and men, were all promptly in the places assigned  
 them, by eight o'clock in the morning.

Sept. 11.  
 Four bat-  
 teries  
 erected.

13th.  
 CHAPUL-  
 TEPEC.

7. The roar of the American cannon ceases for a  
 moment. It is the signal for the assault. In an  
 instant the assailants are in rapid motion. General  
 Quitman hastens from the south, General Percifer  
 Smith from the southeast, and General Pillow, with

The for-  
 tress  
 stormed.

---

5. Where were the "Halls of the Montezumas?"—6. Re-  
 late the operations previous to the assault on Chapultepec.

Col. Clark, from the wooded slope on the west. The batteries throw shells into the fort over the heads of their friends, as they begin the furious attack. The garrison, though they fought with desperation, were overpowered. Some yield, and others attempt to retreat.

8. Meantime the supporting force under Santa Anna, in the rear of Chapultepec, is attacked and defeated by Gen. Worth. Directed by the commander, he pursues the enemy as he flies to the city, pressing forward to enter, by a circuitous route, the San Cosme gate on the northwest. Gen. Quitman, in the meantime, follows the flying foe to the city, by a route direct from Chapultepec; he being instructed to make a feint of storming the southwestern or Belen gate, near to the formidable citadel within,—in order to make a diversion from the real point of attack at San Cosme.

9. Gen. Scott meantime advanced with Worth into the suburb of San Cosme, where opposing batteries were taken; but he returned at night to Chapultepec, to look with a father's care to the condition of all,—the living, the wounded, and the dead. Worth, as instructed, remained in the suburb until morning. But Gen. Quitman, accompanied by Shields and Smith, rested that night within the city; having changed the feint which the commander ordered, into a real attack, by which they entered (though with considerable loss) the Belen gate. They had not yet passed the formidable citadel.

10. At four o'clock on the morning of the 14th, Gen. Scott having returned to San Cosme, the Mexican authorities sent him a deputation, desiring of him terms of capitulation; their army having fled a little after midnight. Gen. Scott replied, that the Americans would come under no terms, but such as were self-imposed, and demanded by honor,—by the

1847.

Sept. 13.  
Battles of  
Mexico.  
M. force  
more  
than  
20,000.  
Am.  
7,180.

M. loss,  
the  
whole  
army,  
except  
about  
6,000, k.,  
w., or  
deserted.  
Am. loss,  
Sept.  
12-14,  
k. 130—  
10 officers;  
703—68  
officers.

Sept. 14.  
MEXICO  
TAKEN.

(The  
Am.  
colors  
were  
hoisted  
at 7  
A. M.)

7. Describe the assault—the defeat and flight of the enemy.

—8. The pursuit by Worth—by Quitman?—9. What was now the conduct of Gen. Scott? The position of Worth? of Quitman?—10. What negotiations now took place?

P'T IV. spirit of the age, and the dignity of the American  
 P'D III. character. Worth and Quitman, as directed, moved  
 CH. XIII. cautiously forward,—Worth to the Alameda, and  
 Quitman to the Grand Plaza, where the victorious  
 army reared above the National Palace of Mexico, the  
 1847. stars and stripes of the Republic of America.

11. Three hours before noon, Gen. Scott made his  
 10 A. M. entrance, with escort of cavalry, and flourish of trum-  
 Gen. Scott's entrance. pets—into the conquered city of the Aztecs; and as  
 he approached the grand plaza—his towering figure  
 conspicuous as his fame—loudly and warmly was he  
 cheered, by shouts which arose from the hearts of his  
 companions in arms. The troops for twenty-four hours  
 now suffered from the anarchy of Mexico, more than  
 her prowess had been able to inflict. Two thousand  
 convicts, let loose from the prisons, attacked them  
 from the house-tops; at the same time, entering  
 houses and committing robberies. The Mexicans as-  
 sisting, these felons were quelled by the morning of  
 the 15th.

12. Gen. Scott gave to his army, on the day of  
 their entrance into Mexico, memorable orders con-  
 cerning their discipline and behavior. After directing  
 that companies and regiments be kept together, he  
 says, "Let there be no disorders, no straggling, no  
 drunkenness. Marauders shall be punished by courts  
 martial. All the rules so honorably observed by this  
 glorious army in Puebla, must be observed here. The  
 honor of the army, the honor of our country, call for  
 the best behavior from all. The valiant must, to win  
 the approbation of God and their country, be sober,  
 orderly, and merciful.—His noble brethren in arms,  
 will not be deaf to this hasty appeal from their com-  
 mander and friend."

13. On the 16th, he called on the army to return  
 public and private thanks to God for victory. On the  
 19th, for the better preservation of order, and suppres-

---

10. How did the two parties enter the city?—11. What is  
 said of Gen. Scott's entrance? How did the troops now suf-  
 fer?—12. What were now the orders of Gen. Scott?—13.  
 What was done on the 16th of September? on the 19th?



P'T IV. sion of crime, he proclaimed martial law. Thus pro-  
 P'D III tected by the American army, the citizens of Mexico  
 (M. XI) were more secure from violence, and from fear of rob-  
 bery and murder, than they had ever been under their  
 own flag.

## CHAPTER XIV.

Puebla.—Huamantla.—Atlixco.—Treaty of Peace.—Conclusion.

1. NOTHING was now asked of Mexico, conquered as she was, but to negotiate a treaty of peace, in which America stood ready to be generous. To bring forward a Mexican government, with whom peace could be made, became, at this period, the difficult task of the well-meaning of both nations.

2. Santa Anna, after leaving Mexico on the night of the 13th of September, was not heard of for some days. In the mean time, Col. Childs, commander at Puebla, whose effective force amounted to only 247  
 1847. men, and having 1,800 sick in the hospitals, had been  
 Sept. 22. Santa Anna at Puebla. closely besieged by the enemy, since the same date. On the 22d, the besiegers were encouraged by the appearance of Santa Anna, with some thousands of the remnant of his army. Col. Childs and his gallant band, though worn with watching, and wasted by fatigue, still refused the summons to surrender, and bravely continued their defence. But Santa Anna had heard of the approach of 3,000 recruits under General Lane,† on their march from Vera Cruz to reinforce Gen. Scott; and he left Puebla on the 30th, to go to Pinal, where they were daily expected. Gen. Lane, on his part, heard of the Mexican army,  
 († "A part left Vera Cruz, Oct. 1, a part under Maj. Lally left earlier.)  
 Oct. 9. Huamantla. M. loss. 150. Am. k. 13, w. 11.

CHAPTER XIV.—1. What was now the desire and the difficult task of the well-meaning of both nations?—2. What was the condition of the American troops at Puebla? What were Santa Anna's movements?



# CEDED TERRITORY, WITH PART OF MEXICO.

PACIFIC OCEAN

NEW CALIFORNIA

UPPER CALIFORNIA

LOWER CALIFORNIA

NEW MEXICO

TEXAS

COAHUILA

DURANGO

SONORA

CHIHUAHUA

ARIZONA

YUCATAN

VERMONT

MASSACHUSETTS

CONNECTICUT

NEW JERSEY

PENNSYLVANIA

MARYLAND

DELAWARE

VIRGINIA

NORTH CAROLINA

SOUTH CAROLINA

MISSISSIPPI

LOUISIANA

ARKANSAS

KENTUCKY

TENNESSEE

ALABAMA

MISSISSIPPI

FLORIDA

GEORGIA

SOUTH CAROLINA

NORTH CAROLINA

VIRGINIA

MARYLAND

DELAWARE

PENNSYLVANIA

NEW JERSEY

CONNECTICUT

MASSACHUSETTS

VERMONT

YUCATAN

CHIHUAHUA

SONORA

NEW MEXICO

LOWER CALIFORNIA

UPPER CALIFORNIA

NEW CALIFORNIA

PACIFIC OCEAN



and turning from his direct course, he encountered it P'T IV.  
at *Huamantla* ; fought, and defeated it. P'D III.

3. General Lane arrived, October 12th, at Puebla, CH. XIV.  
and relieved Col. Childs from a distressing siege of 1847.  
forty days. Lane again turned from his course to  
seek the enemy; and at *Atlixco*, ten leagues from  
Perote, he defeated a strong guerilla force under the  
well-known chief, General Rea. By these guerilla  
parties, of which *Atlixco* had been the headquarters,  
many Americans, found as stragglers, or in small  
parties, had been killed. Major Lally, in marching  
his command of 1,000 men from Vera Cruz to Jalapa,  
had lost 100 men, having been waylaid by them, with  
Rea at their head, four times.† In every instance,  
however, he defeated them with loss.

Oct. 18.  
Atlixco.  
Mex. loss,  
k. 219, w  
300.  
Am. k. 1.  
w. 1.  
Aug.  
10. At  
Paso  
Ovejas.  
12th, at  
Puente  
del Rey.  
15th, at  
Cerro  
Gordo.  
19th, at  
Las  
Animas.)

4. Santa Anna, now abandoned by his troops, re-  
signed his offices on the 18th of October, and soon  
became a fugitive. The supreme power passed into  
the hands of Señor Peña y Peña, by virtue of his of-  
fice as president of the Supreme Court. He forth-  
with sent his circulars, calling on the several states in  
pathetic language, to send deputies to Queretaro, to  
treat for peace. A Congress there assembled on the  
11th of November, which appointed four commis-  
sioners, to arrange with Mr. Trist the plan of a treaty.  
Meantime, that gentleman had lost the confidence  
of the American Executive, and his powers had been  
revoked. Nevertheless, with General Scott's appro-  
bation, he presumed in this emergency, to act.

Nov. 11.  
Mexican  
congress  
appoint  
commis-  
sioners.

5. On the 2d of February, the treaty was signed by  
Mr. Trist and the Mexican commissioners at the city  
of *Guadalupe Hidalgo*, and twenty days afterwards it  
was submitted by the President of the United States  
to the senate. That body adopted it with alterations.

1848.  
Feb. 2.  
The  
Treaty of  
Guadalupe is  
signed.  
22d. Laid  
before  
the Sen-  
ate of the  
U. S.

2. By whom and with what result was fought the battle of  
*Huamantla*?—3. Describe the further movements of General  
Lane—of Major Lally.—4. What change in the supreme  
power now occurred in Mexico? How was a congress called?  
When and where did it assemble, and what do?—5. When  
and where was the treaty of peace signed? What action was  
taken upon the treaty in the United States?

P'T IV. President Polk then appointed two gentlemen, Mr. P'D III. Sevier of the senate, and Mr. Clifford, attorney-general, CH. XIV. to proceed with the modified treaty to Queretaro. There, on laying it before the Mexican congress, the president eloquently urged its acceptance, and it was 1848. ratified by a large majority.

Feb. 23. 6. On the 21st of February, the beloved and ven-  
 Death of Ex-presi-erated patriot, John Quincy Adams, who, since his  
 dent J. Q. Adams, presidency, had served his country in the national legislature, fell from his seat during the debates of the house of representatives, struck by a fatal paralysis. Congress in both its branches suspended public action; and its members were waiting as around the couch of a dying father. He expired, in Christian hope and resignation, on the 23d; saying, "This is the last of earth."

Mar. 16. 7. In March, General Sterling Price moved with a  
 Rozales. force from New Mexico to Chihuahua; and from that  
 Force un-known city, sixty miles on the road to Durango; where he  
 Mex. loss, conquered, at *Santa Cruz de Rozales*, a Mexican army,  
 k. & w. 238. making prisoners the commanding general, Angel  
 Am. k. Frias, and forty-two other officers.—Peace was de-  
 and w. about 20. clared to the American army in Mexico, on the 29th  
 May 29. of May, by General Butler, who was, by order of the  
 Peace government, left in command of the army by General  
 proclaim-Scott; he being about to return to the United States.  
 ed in Mex-ico.

8. The treaty stipulated that all Mexico should be evacuated by the American armies within three months. Prisoners on each side were to be released; and Mexican captives, made by Indians within the limits of the United States, were to be restored. These limits, as they affect Mexico, are to begin at the mouth of the Rio Grande—thence to proceed along the deepest channel of that river to the southern boundary of New Mexico. From thence to the

Bound-aries.

---

5. What commissioners were appointed?—6. What occurred on the 21st of February?—7. Give some account of the battle of Santa Cruz de Rozales. When and by whom was peace proclaimed in the city of Mexico?—8. Mention some of the stipulations of the treaty. Describe the boundary between the United States and Mexico.

Pacific, they are to follow the river Gila, and the southern boundary of Upper California.

P'T IV.

P'D III.

CH. XIV.

9. Citizens of New Mexico and Upper California, are allowed a year to make their election—whether they will continue Mexican citizens, and remove their property, (in which case they are to receive every facility,) or whether they will remain, and become citizens of the United States.—In consideration of territory gained, the American government is to pay to Mexico fifteen millions of dollars; and also to assume her debts to American citizens, to the amount of three millions and a half more. Three millions were paid to Mexico in hand; congress having the preceding winter placed that sum with the president, in anticipation of such an event;—the remaining twelve millions to be paid in instalments.

1848.  
Citizens  
allowed a  
choice.Money  
paid for  
territory.

10. The territory of *Wisconsin* was admitted into the American Union as a state, on the 29th of May, 1848.—The Mexican treaty was brought home by Mr. Sevier; Mr. Clifford remaining in Mexico as American envoy. President Polk made his proclamation of peace between the two republics, on the 4th of July, 1848;—the first day of our seventy-third national year.

July 4.  
Peace  
pro-  
claimed.

11. The American armies have evacuated Mexico. Distinguished generals, and other officers, have been received by their country with the honors due to those who have so well sustained the national character,—not only for courage, activity, endurance. discipline, and military science,—but for the nobler virtues of humanity. The remains of other officers, who died in the service of their country, have been brought home to be honored, in death; and to find their last repose among their friends. And the soldiers too—they who fought so bravely for their native land,—

Return of  
the army.

---

9. What was stipulated respecting Mexican citizens in the ceded territory? What money was paid, and what yet remains to be paid by the United States as a consideration for the territory acquired?—10. What new state was added to the Union, and when? When did President Polk proclaim peace?—11. Concerning the return of the army what is said of the officers?



P'T IV. they have returned. Regiments that went forth full  
P'D III. and fresh, have returned,—smitten and scathed.

CH. XIV.

1848. 12. Many is the desolate hearth, to which the son,  
Fate of the com- the husband, the father, shall return no more. No  
mon sol- kindred eye shall weep at his grave. He is buried  
dier. with the undistinguishable dead, who fell in the for-  
eign battle-field, or died in the hospital. Thirty thou-  
sand American lives, it is calculated, have been sacri-  
ficed in this war; and about seventy-five millions of  
money expended. And we know that the sacrifice of  
Mexican life and property, has been still greater.  
The number of Mexican soldiers, who fell in battle,  
greatly exceeded that of the American;—and who  
can tell how many of their women and children were  
killed in the bombardment of their cities?

1847. 13. Let the value of money be estimated by the  
good it may be made to do, and we shall then see the  
magnitude of the evils which, in a pecuniary way,  
war inflicts. Ireland was visited with famine in the  
winter of 1846–7 from the failure of crops, especially  
that of the potato. The benevolent among us were  
moved with compassion, and contributed money and  
food to her relief. The government in one instance  
sent a public ship to carry provisions thus contributed.†  
The very heart of affectionate Ireland overflowed with  
gratitude; and England and Scotland, themselves suf-  
ferers in a less degree from the same cause, felt, and  
praised our liberality. Thus, we blessed others, and  
were ourselves blessed in return;—and the money  
which it cost us, was about half a million of dollars;  
whereas, we paid seventy-five millions, to kill and  
distress the Mexicans.

Time  
and per-  
sons to  
act for  
universal  
peace.

14. The time to act for the prevention of war, as  
of incendiarism, is when none is raging; and those to  
move first in the cause of peace, should be nations

---

12. What of the soldiers?—13. How may the value of  
money be estimated? What was the condition of Ireland and  
what the relief contributed by this country? How is the ex-  
pense of this good deed and that of the Mexican war contrast-  
ed?—14. What is the time and what the nations and persons  
to act for universal peace?

and men, of undoubted courage and ability in war. P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. XIV.  
1848  
 The Mexican contest has placed our Republic, for the present time, eminently in that position. No country has at any period shown braver soldiers, or better officers. Our government, from respect to the moral feeling of the nation, which wishes no territory gained by force, pays to conquered Mexico the full price of the lands acquired from her; yet is it none the less true, that these territories were won by the valor of our armies, and without conquest would not have been ours. They extend from ocean to ocean the full breadth of the grand platform on which stands the American nation; and the 250,000 emigrants, which Number of emigrants. come yearly to her shores, will soon people her waste places.

15. Could this great errand of "PEACE ON EARTH" be accomplished, and that by the instrumentality of this nation, then, with peculiar emphasis, might PROGRESS be made the watchword of the NINETEENTH CENTURY, and of the REPUBLIC OF AMERICA. Peace essential to progress.

14. What considerations show that the Mexican war has placed the American nation in a suitable position to act for peace?—15. What is the concluding remark?

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

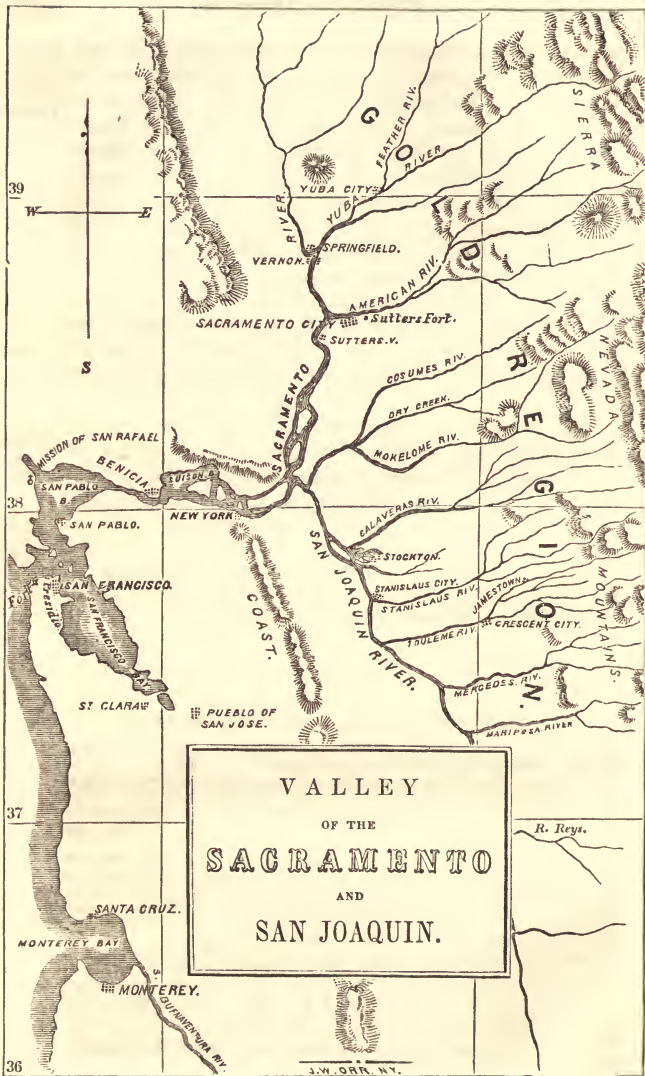
What event or epoch marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer.

The Missouri question was discussed in congress in 1820, and Missouri was admitted into the Union in 1821. Locate these dates. The tariff question was again agitated, and a bill for a new tariff passed in 1824. Lafayette arrived in the United States in 1824. Point out the place of this year.

John Quincy Adams was made president in 1825. Point out the place of this date. The tariff was amended in 1828. General Jackson was inaugurated in 1829. Point out the places of these dates. Black Hawk's war began in 1832. The nullification ordinance was approved by the governor of South Carolina in 1832. Mr. Clay's compromise bill passed in 1833. Point out the places of these events.

The Chickasaws and Choctaws emigrated in 1833; the Cherokees in 1838. Point out the places of these dates. Dade's battle occurred in 1835. Point to the place of that date. Mr. Van Buren was made president in 1837. Point out the place of that date. At what epoch does this period terminate? What is its date? Point to its place on the chronographer.

Let the teacher now select other dates, and require the pupils to locate them on the chronographer.



## APPENDIX.

### AMERICAN CALIFORNIA.

THIS portion of our newly-acquired domain has <sup>P'T IV.</sup> grown into sudden importance by the discovery of its <sup>P'D III.</sup> gold "placers." At this moment hundreds and thousands of our population are emigrating or preparing to emigrate thither. Every thing published which relates to California is eagerly read, and incorrect accounts of its early history are now going the rounds of the press.

New California was discovered in 1579 by Sir Fran- <sup>1579.</sup> cis Drake. In the summer of that year he coasted <sup>Sir Francis Drake discovers New California.</sup> a portion of the Pacific shore of North America to lat. 48°, for the purpose of discovering a passage back to the Atlantic.\* He went ashore, and naming the country New Albion, he took possession of it in the name of his sovereign, Elizabeth of England. But the English lost their right, as they sent out no colonies.

The Spanish under Cortez had discovered Old Cali-

\* The erroneous statements referred to may probably be traced to the Geographical Dictionary of McCulloch; a work whose general reputation is deservedly high; but which of course shares in human fallibility. He says, California "was in part discovered by Cabrillo, a Spanish navigator, in 1542." Mr. Mitchell, Mr. Edwin Bryant, and several periodicals, have followed this statement. But it was Cortez, the conqueror of Mexico, to whom the first discovery of California, as taken in its whole extent, is to be attributed. He had received a special commission from the king of Spain for such purposes. He first sent out Grijalva, who discovered the peninsula in 1534. He then went in person, and in 1536 explored the Gulf on both sides to the mouth of the Colorado. He then returned to Mexico, leaving Ulloa to prosecute his discoveries. A pilot by the name of *Castillo* accompanied the expedition, who on his return, made a map, laying down old California as a peninsula, though afterwards it was for many years supposed to be an island. Perhaps Drake believed that beyond this island he should find a strait through which he might pass to the Atlantic. But this hope shows clearly that the coast beyond, was then undiscovered; and consequently that Drake was the first European discoverer of New California.

**P'TIV.** fornia. He went in person, in 1536, and explored the  
**P'D III.** Gulf. About 1603 was sent by order of Philip III.  
**1603.** of Spain, Sebastian Viscaino to find suitable harbors  
 Viscaino's discovery. for an asylum to the Spanish East-India ships. He  
 discovered and took possession of the harbors of *St. Diego* and *Monterey*; giving on his return a glowing description of the beauty and fertility of the country. Many attempts of the Spaniards to colonize it proved ineffectual, on account of the hostility of the natives; whom the emigrants provoked by ill-usage. From that time forward however the Spaniards frequented the coast, on account of its valuable pearl-fishery.

The first permanent settlement in New California was a Franciscan mission at *St. Diego*, established in  
**1769.** 1769, only eighty years ago. Wearied with fruitless attempts and expenses, the Spanish king had given to the priests of the Franciscan order leave to occupy the country for the object of converting the natives to Christianity. They founded first four missions, and afterwards others, until the most fertile lands were divided into twenty-one missions, each occupying about fifteen miles square, of which the buildings were all contained in an enclosure made of *adobe*, or sun-dried bricks. To the principal missions was attached a *Presidio*, where was a quadrangular fort of adobe in which was stationed a company of soldiers, to protect the missions from the natives, and to aid in bringing their feeble and disorderly tribes into subjection to the priests. The result was, that about half the Indians became nominal Christians, and at the same time menial laborers for the priests,—almost their slaves.

Missions  
and Pre-  
sidios.

The order of things was not favorable to increase of population. The missions were made up of monks and nuns; and to these were added the soldiers of the presidios, not allowed by the priests to bring their wives to the country. No money was in circulation; and as for property, the *padre* of the mission controlled every thing with absolute power. No wonder then, that notwithstanding the country is one of the most healthy and fertile regions of the earth, a

The  
priests  
supreme.



blight like a death-shade, settled over the face of human society. A few individuals however, disregarding the prohibition of the priests, had taken their families into the country, and a small number of towns had thus sprung up; the largest of which, were Ciudad de los Angeles, St. Diego, and St. Francisco;† neither of which contained, in 1840, a thousand inhabitants. Indeed, within that period the whole number of white inhabitants in New California was estimated at only 5000—of mestizoes or mixed 2000, of natives 15,000; making in the whole of the fertile Pacific-valley only 22,000 souls.

†St. Francisco is now said to have 15,000.

This country during the Spanish rule constituted a part of the vice-royalty of Mexico or New Spain. When Mexico became a federal republic, not finding California sufficiently populous to form a state, she established over it a territorial government. First Monterey, and afterwards Los Angeles, was the residence of the governor. The Californians, like the Mexicans, sometimes had their revolutions, and declared themselves independent; but they returned to their allegiance, and were, at the breaking out of the war between the Republics of America and Mexico, governed as a territory of the latter. Señor de Castro was the military governor, and he made Los Angeles, then containing 1500 inhabitants, his capital. A few American emigrants had at this time penetrated the country, and were found by Col. Fremont settled in the rich valley of the Sacramento.

California a Mexican territory.

Col. Fremont, and the few able men who accompanied him, and were guided by his genius, united with these settlers, and under the “bear” flag, they declared themselves, as already related, an independent people; but subsequently, they pulled down the “bear” of California, and gladly raised the stars and stripes of America.

The “bear” revolution.

By the late Treaty, Mexico ceded New California to the American Republic. But a wretched framework of society, as we have seen, had been established there; and ordinarily the full river keeps the course of the rivulet, with which it began. But Providence

P<sup>T</sup>IV. had in view, as we trust, a higher destiny for this beautiful region; and by its intervention we hope that even gold, which has been the ruin of so many lands, may be made a blessing to this.

In the month of February, 1848, while the treaty with Mexico was yet pending, a private discovery of gold was made on the grounds of the wealthy agriculturist Capt. Sutter, who built the fort standing at the junction of the American River with the Sacramento; and who being a native of Switzerland, has there laid down the plan of a city which he calls New Helvetia. Mr. Marshall, the agent of Capt. Sutter, was sent by him twenty-five miles up the South Fork of the American to build a saw-mill. He observed gold existing in scales, washed down with dirt, in the mill-race. The discovery became known. The precious metal was found in other localities. The Mormons,—other American settlers,—and all of every race and nation, who heard and could labor, hastened to dig for it, in the upper places, or to wash it from the sands of the river-beds. Rumors of Californian gold reached the Atlantic shores. These were converted to certainty by the message of President Polk to Congress at the opening of the session, Dec., 1848. Among the documents accompanying the message, was a letter from the governor of California to the American Executive.

Gov. Mason went in person to the gold “diggings” and “washings” called placers. They are also called mines; but since no gold has yet been found in its original position, this term is not properly applied.

On the 4th of July,—while, at Washington, the President was proclaiming peace under the new treaty, by which California passed from Mexico to the American Republic,—the governor of the province was at Sutter’s Fort on his way to the gold region. As he passed along he found houses deserted, and fields of wheat going to ruin; their owners having deserted them to dig for gold. Such had been the quantities already found, that labor, and all the comforts and necessities of life, bore an enormous price. Capt. Sutter paid his wagon-maker and blacksmith \$10 per day; and re-

Feb.  
Discovery of the  
gold  
placers.

Presi-  
dent’s  
message.

Gov.  
Mason  
visits the  
gold re-  
gion.

ceived \$500 per month for the rent of a two-story <sup>P<sup>T</sup> IV.</sup> house within his fort. Gov. Mason next followed the <sup>P<sup>D</sup> III.</sup> South Fork of the American to the mill where the **1848** discovery was first made, and where two hundred persons were employed in gathering gold. He then pursued the course of the stream further into the mountains, where other parties were similarly engaged. He next crossed over to Weber's Creek, an affluent of the South Fork. Through all the way, gold was found by the hundreds who were seeking it; —especially in the beds of the streams and in the dry ravines, where water-courses had once existed. In a little gutter two men had found 17,000 dollars worth. Two ounces was an ordinary yield for a day's work.

Gold found in abundance.

Other public functionaries of California, and private individuals, have given similar, or still more glowing accounts. The mint at Philadelphia assayed some of the specimens and found them rich. The region over which this mineral wealth exists is said to pass over some hundreds of miles. California has therefore become the one luminous point in the American horizon to which all eyes are attracted. A memorial is now before Congress petitioning that body to grant aid in opening a railroad across the Isthmus of Darien. The memorialists speak thus of the prospects of American California in regard to its probable increase.

An extensive region.

“It is believed by many who have had the best opportunities of forming an opinion, that 100,000 emigrants will go to that territory within a year from this time. At the expiration of three years, if the reports of the mineral wealth of California shall be found true, it would not perhaps be regarded as visionary to suppose that at least half a million of people will have found their way to it.”

Prospective importance of California.

Between the 7th of December, 1848, and the 20th of January, 1849, *ninety-nine* vessels are said to have left the ports of the United States for California. Of these, 80 went by the way of Cape Horn, 14 by Chagres and Panama, and the remainder stopped at more northern ports; the emigrants to pass through Mexico and Texas. Fifty-two of the vessels sailed

P'T IV. from New York, and 29 from the ports of New Eng-  
 P'D III. land. From the newspapers of the day we learn that  
 1848. a number of vessels are now ready to sail. A great  
 many emigrants from the older states will go the  
 land route;—taking families, provisions, tools, and  
 furniture, in large wagons, each drawn by six oxen.  
 Most of these will go by the South Pass of the Rocky  
 Mountains—the Mormon settlement at the south end  
 of the Salt Lake,—by Humboldt's River, and thence  
 through the Pass of the Sierra Nevada. For this  
 journey, 90 days are calculated. Other emigrants  
 will take the southern route by Santa Fé, the Río del  
 Norte, and the Gila, around the southern extremity of  
 the Sierra Nevada. It is supposed that the emigrants  
 from the western states, will exceed in number those  
 from the eastern.

Emi-  
 grants  
 and their  
 routes.

Whether this is true or not, it is certain that many  
 of our ablest and most enterprising citizens are now  
 on the wing, of whom numbers are intending to settle  
 in that salubrious clime. God grant that nobler  
 views than the mere love of gold accompany them  
 thither. May they feel with a deep sense of responsi-  
 bility that they are going to lay the foundations of a  
 new and an important state. Let them look back for  
 an example to their forefathers. Like them, may they  
 be temperate, virtuous, and public-spirited. They  
 will find that trials await them, which will call forth all  
 their fortitude. Let their faces be sternly set against  
 anarchy, the scourge, and too often the destroyer of  
 free governments. To this end let them UPHOLD LAW,  
 FOUND SCHOOLS, OBSERVE THE SABBATH, AND MAINTAIN  
 PURE CHRISTIANITY.

The  
 founders  
 of a state.

THE  
CONSTITUTION  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

*Framed during the year 1787, by a convention of delegates, who met at Philadelphia, from the states of New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia.*

---

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

Preamble.

ARTICLE I.

SECT. I.—All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a congress of the United States, which shall consist of a senate and house of representatives.

Legislative powers.

SECT. II.—1. The house of representatives shall be composed of members, chosen every second year by the people of the several states, and the electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature.

Its source.

2. No person shall be a representative, who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen.

Eligibility of representatives.

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to servitude for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number

Manner and ratio of representation and taxation.



of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each state shall have at least one representative: and, until such enumeration shall be made, the state of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

**Vacancies.** 4. When vacancies happen in the representation<sup>a</sup> from any state, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

**Speaker. Impeachments.** 5. The house of representatives shall choose their speaker, and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

**Senators, two from each state.** **SECT. III.—1.** The senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years: and each senator shall have one vote.

**Arrangement for a choice of one-third every second year.** 2. Immediately after they shall be assembled, in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments, until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

**Eligibility to office.** 3. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen.

**Presiding officer.** 4. The vice-president of the United States shall be president of the senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. The senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

**Power of trial in impeachments and** 6. The senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath, or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief-justice shall preside: and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

**penalty.** 7. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

**Sections.** **SECT. IV.—1.** The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each

state by the legislature thereof; but the congress may, at any time by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

2. The congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall, by law, appoint a different day. Meeting of congress.

SECT. V.—1. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide. Their organization.

2. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member. Rules,

3. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journals.

4. Neither house, during the session of congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting. and adjournment.

SECT. VI.—1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place. Compensation and privileges.

2. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person, holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuation in office. Plurality of offices.

SECT. VII.—1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the house of representatives; but the senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills. Origin of bills;

2. Every bill which shall have passed the house of representatives and the senate shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the president of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it, but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other their course in becoming laws.

house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the congress, by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3. Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the senate and house of representatives may be necessary, (except on a question of adjournment,) shall be presented to the president of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him; or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the senate and house of representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

Approval  
and veto  
powers.

SECT. VIII.—The congress shall have power—

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises; to pay the debts, and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States.

Of the du-  
ties and  
power of  
congress.

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States.

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes.

4. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States.

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures.

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States.

7. To establish post-offices and post-roads.

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries.

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court.

10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations.

11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land or water.

12. To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years.

13. To provide and maintain a navy.

14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces.

15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions.

16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the

militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia, according to the discipline prescribed by congress.

17. To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district, (not exceeding ten miles square,) as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings:—and

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department, or office thereof.

SECT. IX.—1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the congress, prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

Personal  
taxes

2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

Right of  
trial.

3. No bill of attainder, or ex-post facto law, shall be passed.

Attainder.

4. No capitation, or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census, or enumeration, herein before directed to be taken.

Capita-  
tion.

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state. No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue, to the ports of one state over those of another; nor shall vessels, bound to or from one state, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

Commer-  
cial  
revenue.

6. No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

Treasury.

7. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

Interdic-  
tion of  
titles.

SECT. X.—1. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex-post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

Conserva-  
tion of  
powers  
vested in  
the Union.



Further  
defined.

2. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws: and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any state on imports and exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States, and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of congress. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any duty on tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war, in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay

## ARTICLE II.

The chief  
magis-  
trate.

SECT. I.—1. The executive power shall be vested in a president of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the vice-president, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

The man-  
ner of his  
election

2. Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in the congress; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

by the  
people;

3. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate. The president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the house of representatives shall immediately choose, by ballot, one of them for president: and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list, the said house shall, in like manner, choose the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the president, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors, shall be the vice-president. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the senate shall choose from them by ballot, the vice-president.

by the  
house of  
represent-  
atives,

and of the  
vice-presi-  
dent.



4. The congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes: which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

5. No person, except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president, neither shall any person be eligible to that office, who shall not have attained the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

Require-  
ment for  
office.

6. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice-president; and the congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as president, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.

Proviso in  
case of  
death or  
removal.

7. The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive, within that period, any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Compensation, and

8. Before he enters on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath, or affirmation:

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of president of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

Oath of  
office.

SECT. II.—1. The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

His duties

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law. But the congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

and pow-  
ers in mak-  
ing treat-  
ties,

3. The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the senate, by granting commissions, which shall expire at the end of their next session.

filling va-  
cancies,  
and

SECT. III.—He shall, from time to time, give to the congress

convening  
of con-  
gress.

information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient ; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper ; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers ; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

Removal  
from office.

SECT. IV.—The president, vice-president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III.

The judi-  
ciary, and  
method of  
investi-  
ture.

SECT. I.—The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the congress may, from time to time, ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

Their  
powers.

SECT. II.—1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority ; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls ; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction ; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party ; to controversies between two or more states, between a state and citizens of another state, between citizens of different states, between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states, and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

Rules of  
procedure.

2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the congress shall make.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury ; and such trials shall be held in the state where the said crime shall have been committed ; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the congress may, by law, have directed.

Nature of  
treason  
and

SECT. III.—1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2. The congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted. how pre-  
sided.

#### ARTICLE IV.

SECT. I.—Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof. Guaranty  
of state  
rights.

SECT. II.—1. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states. and equal  
ization.

2. A person, charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having the jurisdiction of the crime. State re-  
quisition.

3. No person, held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law, or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due. and sur-  
render.

SECT. III.—1. New states may be admitted by the congress into this Union, but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state; nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the legislatures of the states concerned, as well as of the congress. New  
states.

2. The congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory, or other property, belonging to the United States; and nothing in this constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular state. and public  
lands.

SECT. IV.—The United States shall guarantee to every state in this Union, a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive, (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence. Protection  
of form of  
govern-  
ment.

#### ARTICLE V.

The congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of this constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be pro- Amend-  
ments of  
the consti-  
tution.

with pre-  
vision. posed by the congress: Provided, that no amendment, which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, shall, in any manner, affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrages in the senate.

## ARTICLE VI.

Recogni-  
tion of  
antecedent  
claims.

1. All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this constitution, as under the confederation.

Basia of  
govern-  
ment con-  
solidated,

2. This constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, any thing in the constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

and obli-  
gation of  
its officers.

3. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath, or affirmation, to support this constitution; and no religious test shall ever be required, as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

## ARTICLE VII.

Constitu-  
tion.

The ratification of the conventions of nine states, shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution, between the states so ratifying the same.

*Done in convention by the unanimous consent of the states present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord, one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the Independence of the United States of America, the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names*

Time of  
adoption.

The Constitution, although formed in 1787, was not adopted until 1788, and did not commence its operations until 1789. The number of delegates chosen to this convention was sixty-five, of whom ten did not attend, and sixteen refused to sign the Constitution. The following thirty-nine signed the Constitution:—

*New Hampshire.*—John Langdon, Nicholas Gelman.

*Massachusetts.*—Nathaniel Gorham, Rufus King.

*Connecticut.*—William Samuel Johnson, Roger Sherman.

*New York.*—Alexander Hamilton.

*New Jersey.*—William Livingston, David Brearley, William Patterson, Jonathan Dayton.

*Pennsylvania.*—Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Mifflin, Robert

Morris, George Clymer, Thomas Fitzsimmons, Jared Ingersoll, James Wilson, Gouverneur Morris.

*Delaware.*—George Read, Gunning Bedford, jr., John Dickinson, Richard Bassett, Jacob Broom.

*Maryland.*—James M<sup>c</sup>Henry, Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer, Daniel Carroll.

*Virginia.*—John Blair, James Madison, jr.

*North Carolina.*—William Blount, Richard Dobbs Spaight, Hugh Williamson.

*South Carolina.*—John Rutledge, Charles C. Pinkney, Charles Pinkney, Pierce Butler.

*Georgia.*—William Few, Abraham Baldwin.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, *President.*

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

## AMENDMENTS

*To the Constitution of the United States, ratified according to the Provisions of the Fifth Article of the foregoing Constitution.*

ART. I.—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the rights of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

Religious  
toleration

Rights of  
the press,  
petition.

ART. II.—A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed.

The  
militia.

ART. III.—No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ART. IV.—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

Search  
warrant  
and  
seizures.

ART. V.—No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service, in time of war, or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process

Present-  
ment of  
grand  
juries.

Judicia-  
safe-  
guards.



of law ; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

**ART. VI.**—In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation ; to be confronted with the witnesses against him ; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

**ART. VII.**—In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact, tried by jury, shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

**ART. VIII.**—Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

**ART. IX.**—The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

**ART. X.**—The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

**ART. XI.**—The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States, by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

**ART. XII.**—The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot, for president and vice-president, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves ; they shall name, in their ballots, the person voted for as president, and, in distinct ballots, the person voted for as vice-president ; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate.

The president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes for president, shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have such a majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as president, the house of representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But, in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to

a choice. And if the house of representatives shall not choose a president, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice-president shall act as president, as in the case of the death, or other constitutional disability of the president.

The person having the greatest number of votes as vice-president, shall be the vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have a majority, then, from the two highest numbers on the list, the senate shall choose the vice-president—a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

But no person, constitutionally ineligible to the office of president, shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.



## MRS. EMMA WILLARD'S SERIES OF SCHOOL HISTORIES AND CHARTS.

---

- I. WILLARD'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES, OR REPUBLIC OF AMERICA. 8vo. Price \$1.50.
  - II. WILLARD'S SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES. 63 cts.
  - III. WILLARD'S AMERICAN CHRONOGRAPHER. \$1.50.
- 
- I. WILLARD'S UNIVERSAL HISTORY IN PERSPECTIVE. \$1.50.
  - II. WILLARD'S TEMPLE OF TIME. Mounted, \$1.25. Bound, 75 cts
  - III. WILLARD'S HISTORIC GUIDE. 50 cts.
  - IV. WILLARD'S ENGLISH CHRONOGRAPHER.

---

### WILLARD'S UNITED STATES.

The *Hon. Dan. Webster* says, of an early edition of the above work, in a letter to the author, "I KEEP IT NEAR ME, AS A BOOK OF REFERENCE, ACCURATE IN FACTS AND DATES."

---

"THE COMMITTEE ON BOOKS OF THE WARD SCHOOL ASSOCIATION RESPECTFULLY REPORT:

"That they have examined Mrs. Willard's History of the United States with peculiar interest, and are free to say, that it is in their opinion decidedly the best treatise on this interesting subject that they have seen. As a school-book, its proper place is among the first. The language is remarkable for simplicity, perspicuity, and neatness; youth could not be trained to a better taste for language than this is calculated to impart. It places at once, in the hands of American youth, the history of their country from the day of its discovery to the present time, and exhibits a clear arrangement of all the great and good deeds of their ancestors, of which they now enjoy the benefits, and inherit the renown. The struggles, sufferings, firmness, and piety of the first settlers are delineated with a masterly hand."—*Extract from a Report of the Ward School Teachers' Association of the City of New York.*

---

"We consider the work a remarkable one, in that it forms the best book for general reading and reference published, and at the same time has no equal, in our opinion, as a text-book. On this latter point, the profession which its author has so long followed with such signal success, rendered her peculiarly a fitting person to prepare a text-book."—*Boston Traveller.*

---

"MRS. WILLARD'S SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.—It is one of those rare things, a good school-book; infinitely better than any of the United States Histories fitted for schools, which we have at present."—*Cincinnati Gazette.*

---

"We think we are warranted in saying, that it is better adapted to meet the wants of our schools and academies in which history is pursued, than any other work of the kind now before the public. The style is perspicuous and flowing, and the prominent points of our history are presented in such a manner as to make a deep and lasting impression on the mind. We could conscientiously say much more in praise of this book, but must content ourselves by heartily commending it to the attention of those who are anxious to find a good text-book of American history for the use of schools."—*Newburyport Watchman.*

## CHAMBERS' EDUCATIONAL COURSE.

### THE SCIENTIFIC SECTION.

---

The Messrs. Chambers have employed the first professors in Scotland in the preparation of these works. They are now offered to the schools of the United States, under the American revision of D. M. REESE, M. D., LL. D., *late Superintendent of Public Schools in the city and county of New York.*

- I. CHAMBERS' TREASURY OF KNOWLEDGE.
  - II. CLARK'S ELEMENTS OF DRAWING AND PERSPECTIVE.
  - III. CHAMBERS' ELEMENTS OF NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.
  - IV. REID & BAIN'S CHEMISTRY AND ELECTRICITY.
  - V. HAMILTON'S VEGETABLE AND ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY
  - VI. CHAMBERS' ELEMENTS OF ZOOLOGY.
  - VII. PAGE'S ELEMENTS OF GEOLOGY.
- 

"It is well known that the original publishers of these works (the Messrs. Chambers of Edinburgh) are able to command the best talent in the preparation of their books, and that it is their practice to deal faithfully with the public. This series will not disappoint the reasonable expectations thus excited. They are elementary works prepared by authors in every way capable of doing justice to their respective undertakings, and who have evidently bestowed upon them the necessary time and labor to adapt them to their purpose. We recommend them to teachers and parents with confidence. If not introduced as class-books in the school, they may be used to excellent advantage in general exercises, and occasional class exercises, for which every teacher ought to provide himself with an ample store of materials. The volumes may be had separately; and the one first named, in the hands of a teacher of the younger classes, might furnish an inexhaustible fund of amusement and instruction. Together, they would constitute a rich treasure to a family of intelligent children, and impart a thirst for knowledge."—*Vermont Chronicle.*

---

"Of all the numerous works of this class that have been published, there are none that have acquired a more thoroughly deserved and high reputation than this series. The Chambers, of Edinburgh, well known as the careful and intelligent publishers of a vast number of works of much importance in the educational world, are the fathers of this series of books, and the American editor has exercised an unusual degree of judgment in their preparation for the use of schools as well as private families in this country."—*Philad. Bulletin.*

---

"The titles furnish a key to the contents, and it is only necessary for us to say, that the material of each volume is admirably worked up, presenting with sufficient fulness and with much clearness of method the several subjects which are treated."—*Cin. Gazette.*

---

"We notice these works, not merely because they are *school books*, but for the purpose of expressing our thanks, as the 'advocate' of the educational interests of the people and their children, to the enterprising publishers of these and many other valuable works of the same character, the tendency of which is to diffuse useful knowledge throughout the masses, for the good work they are doing, and the hope that their reward may be commensurate with their deserts."—*Maine School Advocate.*



# MATHEMATICAL WORKS,

IN A SERIES OF THREE PARTS:

ARITHMETICAL, ACADEMICAL, AND COLLEGIATE.

BY CHARLES DAVIES, LL.D

~~~~~

## I. THE ARITHMETICAL COURSE FOR SCHOOLS.

1. PRIMARY TABLE-BOOK.
2. FIRST LESSONS IN ARITHMETIC.
3. SCHOOL ARITHMETIC. (Key separate.)
4. GRAMMAR OF ARITHMETIC.

## II. THE ACADEMIC COURSE.

1. THE UNIVERSITY ARITHMETIC. (Key separate.)
2. PRACTICAL GEOMETRY AND MENSURATION.
3. ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA. (Key separate.)
4. ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY.
5. ELEMENTS OF SURVEYING.

## III. THE COLLEGIATE COURSE.

1. DAVIES' BOURDON'S ALGEBRA.
2. DAVIES' LEGENDRE'S GEOMETRY AND TRIGONOMETRY.
3. DAVIES' ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY.
4. DAVIES' DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY.
5. DAVIES' SHADES, SHADOWS, AND PERSPECTIVE.
6. DAVIES' DIFFERENTIAL AND INTEGRAL CALCULUS.

---

## . DAVIES' LOGIC AND UTILITY OF MATHEMATICS.

This series, combining all that is most valuable in the various methods of European instruction, improved and matured by the suggestions of more than thirty years' experience, now forms the only complete consecutive course of Mathematics. Its methods, harmonizing as the works of one mind, carry the student onward by the same analogies and the same laws of association, and are calculated to impart a comprehensive knowledge of the science, combining clearness in the several branches, and unity and proportion in the whole. Being the system so long in use at West Point, through which so many men, eminent for their scientific attainments, have passed, and having been adopted, as Text Books, by most of the colleges in the United States, it may be justly regarded as our

NATIONAL SYSTEM OF MATHEMATICS.

---

*Parker's Natural Philosophy.*

---

**NATURAL AND EXPERIMENTAL PHILOSOPHY,  
FOR SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES.**

BY R. G. PARKER, A. M.,

*Author of "Rhetorical Reader," "Exercises in English Composition," "Outlines of History," etc., etc.*

---

**I. PARKER'S JUVENILE PHILOSOPHY.**

**II. PARKER'S FIRST LESSONS IN NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.**

**III. PARKER'S SCHOOL COMPENDIUM OF PHILOSOPHY.**

The use of school apparatus for illustrating and exemplifying the principles of Natural and Experimental Philosophy, has, within the last few years, become so general as to render necessary a work which should combine, in the same course of instruction, the theory, with a full description of the apparatus necessary for illustration and experiment. The work of Professor Parker, it is confidently believed, fully meets that requirement. It is also very full in the general facts which it presents—clear and concise in its style—and entirely scientific and natural in its arrangement.

---

"This work is better adapted to the present state of natural science than any other similar production with which we are acquainted."—*Wayne Co. Whig.*

"This is a school-book of no mean pretensions and no ordinary value."—*Albany Spectator.*

"We predict for this valuable and beautifully-printed work the utmost success."—*Newark Daily Advertiser.*

"The present volume strikes us as having very marked merit."—*N. Y. Courier.*

"It seems to me to have hit a happy medium between the too simple and the too abstract."—*B. A. Smith, Principal of Leicester Academy, Mass.*

"I have no hesitation in saying that Parker's Natural Philosophy is the most valuable elementary work I have seen."—*Gilbert Langdon Hume, Prof. Nat. Phil. N. Y. City.*

"I am happy to say that Parker's Philosophy will be introduced and adopted in 'Victoria College,' at the commencement of the next collegiate year in autumn; and I hope that will be but the commencement of the use of so valuable an elementary work in our schools in this country. The small work of Parker's (Parker's First Lessons) was introduced the last term in a primary class of the institution referred to, and that with great success. I intend to recommend its use shortly into the model school in this city, and the larger work to the students of the provincial Normal School."—*E. Ryerson, Superintendent of Public Instruction of Upper Canada.*

"I have examined Parker's First Lessons and Compendium of Natural and Experimental Philosophy, and am much pleased with them. I have long felt dissatisfaction with the Text-Books on this subject most in use in this section, and am happy now to find books that I can recommend. I shall introduce them immediately into my school."—*Hiram Orcutt, Principal of Thetford Academy, Vermont.*

"I have no hesitation in pronouncing it the best work on the subject now published. We shall use it here, and I have already secured its adoption in some of the high-schools and academies in our vicinity."—*M. D. Leggett, Sup. of Warren Public Schools.*

"We are glad to see this little work on natural philosophy, because the amount of valuable information under all these heads, to be gained from it by any little boy or girl, is inestimable. It puts them, too, upon the right track after knowledge, and prevents their minds from being weakened and wasted by the sickly sentimentality of tales, novels, and poetry, which will always occupy the attention of the mind when nothing more useful has taken possession of it."—*Mississippian.*

*Fulton & Eastman's Book-keeping.*

---

**A PRACTICAL SYSTEM OF BOOK-KEEPING.**

BY LEVI S. FULTON & G. W. EASTMAN.

Containing three distinct forms of Books, adapted for the Farmer, Mechanic, and Merchant—to which is added a variety of useful forms for practical use viz.: Notes, Bills, Drafts, Receipts, &c., &c. Also a Compendium of Rules of Evidence applicable to Books of Account, and of Law in reference to the Collection of Promissory Notes, &c.

---

**BOOK-KEEPING BLANKS.** (Two Nos. in a set.)

*Adapted to Fulton & Eastman's Book-keeping.*

The use of these Blank Books will be found very important in familiarizing the scholar with the forms requisite to the keeping of accounts according to Fulton & Eastman's system.

---

"I have examined with much satisfaction Fulton & Eastman's System of *Book-Keeping*, and take pleasure in recommending its adoption to my immediate friends and others. It is simple and easily reduced to practice, and possesses a peculiar adaptation to the wants of the community for which it is designed. The plan for Merchants' Books, which I examined more critically than other portions of the work, is very neat, compact, and economical, and must ensure a great degree of accuracy in keeping accounts."—*Elijah Bottom, Book-keeper for John M. French & Co., Rochester, N. Y.*

---

"I have examined Messrs. Fulton & Eastman's 'Practical System of Book-Keeping,' and am pleased with the work. As a branch of Education, Book-Keeping is well deserving a high estimation; and, I will add, there is none of equal importance and utility more generally neglected, particularly in our public schools. The work is plain, simple, and comprehensive, and well adapted to meet the wants of the business community. In many respects I deem it superior to any other work of the kind with which I am acquainted. I shall recommend it to the schools under my charge."—*John T. Mackenzie, Town Superintendent.*

---

"FULTON & EASTMAN'S BOOK-KEEPING.—We had supposed that, in the multiplicity of works on Book-Keeping, hardly any thing valuable remained to be suggested by later authors, should any such present themselves. But we have been convinced of our short-sightedness in examining the work with the above title, now before us. The work is principally designed for schools—for common schools—but should be in the hands of every Farmer, Mechanic, and Merchant in the land. It opens with a system of account-keeping for farmers, followed by one for mechanics, and this, in turn, by an admirable and comprehensive system of mercantile Book-keeping, which, for its simplicity, and time and labor saving properties, possesses advantages over all other systems with which we are acquainted."—*Wayne Co. Whig.*

---

"We are very much pleased with the design and execution of this work. It is exceedingly practical; being by single entry, containing three different forms of books, for the Farmer, the Merchant, and Mechanic. To these are added notes, bills, drafts, receipts, and a compendium of rules of evidence applicable to books of account, and of law in reference to the collection of promissory notes. A work of such a character, and of so much practical value, speaks for itself, and stands in need of no commendation from us to ensure it a large sale among all classes."—*Albany Spectator.*

---

"I should think it admirably adapted as a Text-Book for schools, and the study of it of much greater importance than it has hitherto been considered. I hardly know whether the Book is of more importance to scholars in school, or to Farmers, Mechanics, or business men. The system, to which is added a variety of useful 'Forms,' which most business men have occasion to use more or less, is certainly well worth the price of the Book, to any man transacting business to the amount of twenty-five dollars a year."—*E. L. Jones, Book-keeper, Michigan.*

*Northend's Elocutionary Works.*

---

# ELOCUTIONARY WORKS,

BY CHARLES NORTHEND,  
PRINCIPAL OF THE EPPES SCHOOL, SALEM, MASS.

---

- I. NORTHEND'S LITTLE SPEAKER.
  - II. NORTHEND'S AMERICAN SPEAKER.
  - III. NORTHEND'S SCHOOL DIALOGUES.
- 

## I. NORTHEND'S LITTLE SPEAKER.

"THE LITTLE SPEAKER, AND JUVENILE READER.—Mr. Northend is known, both as an experienced teacher, and as the author of the 'American Speaker,' and other educational works. The object of this little work is, to provide the means for exercising quite young pupils in declamation. Mr. Northend justly remarks, that the longer exercises in declamation and composition are delayed, the more difficult it will be to awaken an interest in them. This little volume is well adapted to its purpose."—*Vermont Chronicle.*

---

## II. NORTHEND'S AMERICAN SPEAKER.

"AMERICAN SPEAKER.—This is an admirable book—and as the exercise of declamation, of late, is considered essential to a good and finished education, and is introduced into our best schools as an important element, we hope that this volume of well-selected pieces, compiled with great care by the author from our best writers, will find its way into the hands of every school boy."—*Barnstable Patriot.*

---

"AMERICAN SPEAKER, by Charles Northend, Principal of the Eppes School, Salem.—In this work, Mr. Northend seems perfectly to have accomplished the object he had in view. The selections are made with perfect taste, and afford an ample variety, to meet all occasions. Wherever a work of this description is wanted, this may be safely recommended, as possessing every desirable attribute. It is for sale by all our book-sellers."—*Salem (Mass.) Gazette.*

---

"It is the best compilation of the kind we have ever examined. The selections are of a high character, and an elevated moral tone is prominent throughout the work. The book is divided into three parts—the first being composed of sixty-two prose exercises; the second, of thirty-four interesting dialogues; and the last, of seventy short poems. We hope this book will soon be extensively introduced into our schools. The author truly remarks in the preface, 'The advantages of frequent practice in speaking are so many and so great, that it should receive more prominence in all our schools.'"—*Salem (Mass.) Advertiser.*

---

## III. NORTHEND'S SCHOOL DIALOGUES.

"The character of the author of this work is a guarantee that it is a book of good practical common sense—one that will take hold of the youthful mind, and delight and interest it. A cursory examination has fully confirmed us in this favorable opinion. The author has selected such dialogues as contain good sentiments, and such as will have a salutary influence on the mind of the young."—*Teacher's Advocate.*

---

"The selections manifest an intimate knowledge of the wants of the young, a scrupulous regard to the sentiments inculcated, and an eye to combined instruction and amusement. They are preferable to any other books of the same character with which we are acquainted, from the greater variety of the selections, and from their being culled to a considerable extent from the works of modern authors. Children tire of old, threadbare pieces, however good they may be; and novelty has ever for them peculiar attraction."—*Gloucester Times.*

---

*Parker's Rhetorical Reader.*

---

PARKER'S RHETORICAL READER. 12mo.

**Exercises in Rhetorical Reading**, designed to familiarize readers with the pauses and other marks in general use, and lead them to the practice of modulation and inflection of the voice. By R. G. PARKER, author of "Exercises in English Composition," "Compendium of Natural Philosophy," &c., &c.

---

This work possesses many advantages which commend it to favor, among which are the following:—It is adapted to all classes and schools, from the highest to the lowest. It contains a practical illustration of all the marks employed in written language; also lessons for the cultivation, improvement, and strengthening of the voice, and instructions as well as exercises in a great variety of the principles of Rhetorical Reading, which cannot fail to render it a valuable auxiliary in the hands of any teacher. Many of the exercises are of sufficient length to afford an opportunity for each member of any class, however numerous, to participate in the same exercise—a feature which renders it convenient to examining committees. The selections for exercises in reading are from the most approved sources, possessing a salutary moral and religious tone, without the slightest tincture of sectarianism.

---

"I have to acknowledge the reception through your kindness of several volumes. I have not as yet found time to examine minutely all the books. Of Mr. Parker's Rhetorical Reader, however, I am prepared to speak in the highest terms. I think it so well adapted to the wants of pupils, that I shall introduce it immediately in the Academy of which I am about to take charge at Madison, in this state. It is the best thing of the kind I have yet found. I cannot say too much in its favor."—*John G. Clark, Rector of the Madison Male Academy, Athens, Ga.*

---

"Mr. Parker has made the public his debtor by some of his former publications—especially the 'Aids to English Composition'—and by this he has greatly increased the obligation. There are reading books almost without number, but very few of them pretend to give instructions how to read, and, unluckily, few of our teachers are competent to supply the defect. If young persons are to be taught to read well, it must generally be done in the primary schools, as the collegiate term affords too little time to begin and accomplish that work. We have seen no other 'Reader' with which we have been so well pleased; and as an evidence of our appreciation of its worth, we shall lay it aside for the use of a certain juvenile specimen of humanity in whose affairs we are specially interested."—*Christian Advocate.*

---

"We cannot too often urge upon teachers the importance of reading, as a part of education, and we regard it as among the auspicious signs of the times, that so much more attention is given, by the best of teachers, to the cultivation of a power which is at once a most delightful accomplishment, and of the first importance as a means of discipline and progress. In this work, Mr. Parker's volume, we are sure, will be found a valuable aid."—*Vermont Chronicle.*

---

"The title of this work explains its character and design, which are well carried out by the manner in which it is executed. As a class-book for students in elocution, or as an ordinary reading book, we do not think we have seen any thing superior. The distinguishing characteristic of its plan is to assume some simple and familiar example, which will be readily understood by the pupil, and which Nature will tell him how to deliver properly, and refer more difficult passages to this, as a model. There is, however, another excellence in the work, which we take pleasure in commending; it is the progressiveness with which the introductory lessons are arranged. In teaching every art and science this is indispensable, and in none more so than in that of elocution. The pieces for exercise in reading are selected with much taste and judgment. We have no doubt that those who use this book will be satisfied with its success."—*Teacher's Advocate.*



*Science of the English Language*

---

CLARK'S NEW ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

A Practical Grammar, in which WORDS, PHRASES, and SENTENCES are classified, according to their offices, and their relation to each other: illustrated by a complete system of Diagrams. By S. W. CLARK, A. M. Price 50 cts.

---

"It is a most capital work, and well calculated, if we mistake not, to supersede, even in our best schools, works of much loftier pretension. The peculiarity of its *method* grew out of the best practice of its author (as he himself assures us in its preface) while engaged in communicating the science to an *adult* class; and his success was fully commensurate with the happy and philosophic design he has unfolded."—*Rahway Register*.

---

"This new work strikes us very favorably. Its deviations from older books of the kind are generally judicious and often important. We wish teachers would examine it."—*New York Tribune*.

---

"It is prepared upon a new plan, to meet difficulties which the author has encountered in practical instruction. Grammar and the structure of language are taught throughout by analysis, and in a way which renders their acquisition easy and satisfactory. From the slight examination, which is all we have been able to give it, we are convinced it has points of very decided superiority over any of the elementary works in common use. We commend it to the attention of all who are engaged in instruction."—*New York Courier and Enquirer*.

---

"From a thorough examination of your method of teaching the English language, I am prepared to give it my unqualified approbation. It is a plan original and beautiful—well adapted to the capacities of learners of every age and stage of advancement."—*A. R. Simmons, Ex-Superintendent of Bristol*.

---

"I have, under my immediate instruction in English Grammar, a class of more than fifty ladies and gentlemen from the Teachers' Department, who, having studied the grammars in common use, concur with me in expressing a decided preference for 'Clark's New Grammar,' which we have used as a text-book since its publication, and which will be retained as such in this school hereafter."—*Professor Brittan, Principal of Lyons Union School*.

---

"Clark's Grammar I have never seen equalled for *practicability*, which is of the utmost importance in all school-books."—*S. B. Clark, Principal of Scarborough Academy, Maine*.

---

"The Grammar is just such a book as I wanted, and I shall make it *the* text-book in my school."—*William Brickley, Teacher at Canastota, N. Y.*

---

"This original production will, doubtless, become an indispensable auxiliary to restore the English language to its appropriate rank in our systems of education. After a cursory perusal of its contents, we are tempted to assert that it foretells the dawn of a brighter age to our mother tongue."—*Southern Literary Gazette*.

---

"I have examined your work on Grammar, and do not hesitate to pronounce it superior to any work with which I am acquainted. I shall introduce it into the Mount Morris Union School at the first proper opportunity."—*H. G. Winslow, A. M., Principal of Mount Morris Union School*.

---

"Professor Clark's new work on Grammar, containing Diagrams illustrative of his system, is, in my opinion, a most excellent treatise on 'the Science of the English Language.' The author has studiously and properly excluded from his book the technicalities, jargon, and ambiguity which so often render attempts to teach grammar unpleasant, if not impracticable. The inductive plan which he has adopted, and of which he is, in teaching grammar, the originator, is admirably adapted to the great purposes of both teaching and learning the important science of our language."—*S. N. Sweet, Author of "Sweet's Elocution."*

## PROFESSOR BROOKS'S GREEK AND LATIN CLASSICS.

~~~~~

**THIS** series of the **GREEK** and **LATIN CLASSICS**, by N. C. Brooks, of Baltimore, is on an improved plan, with peculiar adaptation to the wants of the American student. To secure accuracy of text in the works that are to appear, the latest and most approved European editions of the different classical authors will be consulted. Original illustrative and explanatory notes, prepared by the Editor, will accompany the text. These notes, though copious, will be intended to direct and assist the student in his labors, rather than by rendering every thing too simple, to supersede the necessity of due exertion on his own part, and thus induce indolent habits of study and reflection, and feebleness of intellect.

In the notes that accompany the text, care will be taken, on all proper occasions, to develop and promote in the mind of the student, sound principles of Criticism, Rhetoric, History, Political Science, Morals, and general Religion; so that he may contemplate the subject of the author he is reading, not within the circumscribed limits of a mere rendering of the text, but consider it in all its extended connections—and thus learn to *think*, as well as to *translate*.

### **BROOKS'S FIRST LATIN LESSONS.**

This is adapted to any Grammar of the language. It consists of a Grammar, Reader, and Dictionary combined, and will enable any one to acquire a knowledge of the elements of the Latin Language, without an instructor. It has already passed through five editions. 18mo.

### **BROOKS'S CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES.** (*In press.*)

This edition of the Commentaries of Cæsar on the Gallic War, besides critical and explanatory notes embodying much information, of an historical, topographical, and military character, is illustrated by maps, portraits, views, plans of battles, &c. It has a good Clavis, containing all the words. Nearly ready. 12mo.

### **BROOKS'S OVID'S METAMORPHOSES.** 8vo.

This edition of Ovid is expurgated, and freed from objectionable matter. It is elucidated by an analysis and explanation of the fables, together with original English notes, historical, mythological, and critical, and illustrated by pictorial embellishments; with a Clavis giving the meaning of all the words with critical exactness. Each fable contains a plate from an original design, and an illuminated initial letter.

### **BROOKS'S ECLOGUES AND GEORGICS OF VIRGIL.** (*In press.*)

This edition of Virgil is elucidated by copious original notes, and extracts from ancient and modern pastoral poetry. It is illustrated by plates from original designs, and contains a Clavis giving the meaning of all the words. 8vo.

### **BROOKS'S FIRST GREEK LESSONS.** 12mo.

This Greek elementary is on the same plan as the Latin Lessons, and affords equal facilities to the student. The paradigm of the Greek verb has been greatly simplified and 1 valuable exercises in comparative philology introduced.

### **BROOKS'S GREEK COLLECTANEA EVANGELICA.** 12mo.

This consists of portions of the Four Gospels in Greek, arranged in Chronological order; and forms a connected history of the principal events in the Saviour's life and ministry. It contains a Lexicon, and is illustrated and explained by notes.

### **BROOKS'S GREEK PASTORAL POETS.** (*In press.*)

This contains the Greek Idyls of Theocritus, Bion, and Moschus, elucidated by notes and copious extracts from ancient and modern pastoral poetry. Each Idyl is illustrated by beautiful plates from original designs. It contains a good Lexicon.

---

*Page's Theory and Practice of Teaching.*

---

THEORY AND PRACTICE OF TEACHING;  
OR THE  
MOTIVES OF GOOD SCHOOL-KEEPING.

BY DAVID PAGE, A. M.,

LATE PRINCIPAL OF THE STATE NORMAL SCHOOL, NEW YORK.

---

"I received a few days since your 'Theory and Practice, &c.,' and a capital *theory* and capital *practice* it is. I have read it with unmingled delight. Even if I should look through a critic's microscope, I should hardly find a single sentiment to dissent from, and certainly not one to condemn. The chapters on *Prizes* and on *Corporal Punishment* are truly admirable. They will exert a most salutary influence. So of the views *sparsim* on moral and religious instruction, which you so earnestly and feelingly insist upon, and yet within true Protestant limits. IT IS A GRAND BOOK, AND I THANK HEAVEN THAT YOU HAVE WRITTEN IT."—*Hon. Horace Mann, Secretary of the Board of Education in Massachusetts.*

---

"Were it our business to examine teachers, we would never dismiss a candidate without naming this book. Other things being equal, we would greatly prefer a teacher who has read it and speaks of it with enthusiasm. In one indifferent to such a work, we should certainly have little confidence, however he might appear in other respects. Would that every teacher employed in Vermont this winter had the spirit of this book in his bosom, its lessons impressed upon his heart!"—*Vermont Chronicle.*

---

"I am pleased with and commend this work to the attention of school teachers, and those who intend to embrace that most estimable profession, for light and instruction to guide and govern them in the discharge of their delicate and important duties."—*N. S. Benton, Superintendent of Common Schools, State of New York.*

---

*Hon. S. Young* says, "It is altogether the best book on this subject I have ever seen."

---

*President North, of Hamilton College,* says, "I have read it with all that absorbing self-denying interest, which in my younger days was reserved for fiction and poetry. I am delighted with the book."

---

*Hon. Marcus S. Reynolds* says, "It will do great good by showing the Teacher what should be his qualifications, and what may justly be required and expected of him."

---

"I wish you would send an agent through the several towns of this State with Page's 'Theory and Practice of Teaching,' or take some other way of bringing this valuable book to the notice of every family and of every teacher. I should be rejoiced to see the principles which it presents as to the motives and methods of good school-keeping carried out in every school-room; and as nearly as possible, in the style in which Mr. Page illustrates them in his own practice, as the devoted and accomplished Principal of your State Normal School."—*Henry Barnard, Superintendent of Common Schools for the State of Rhode Island.*

---

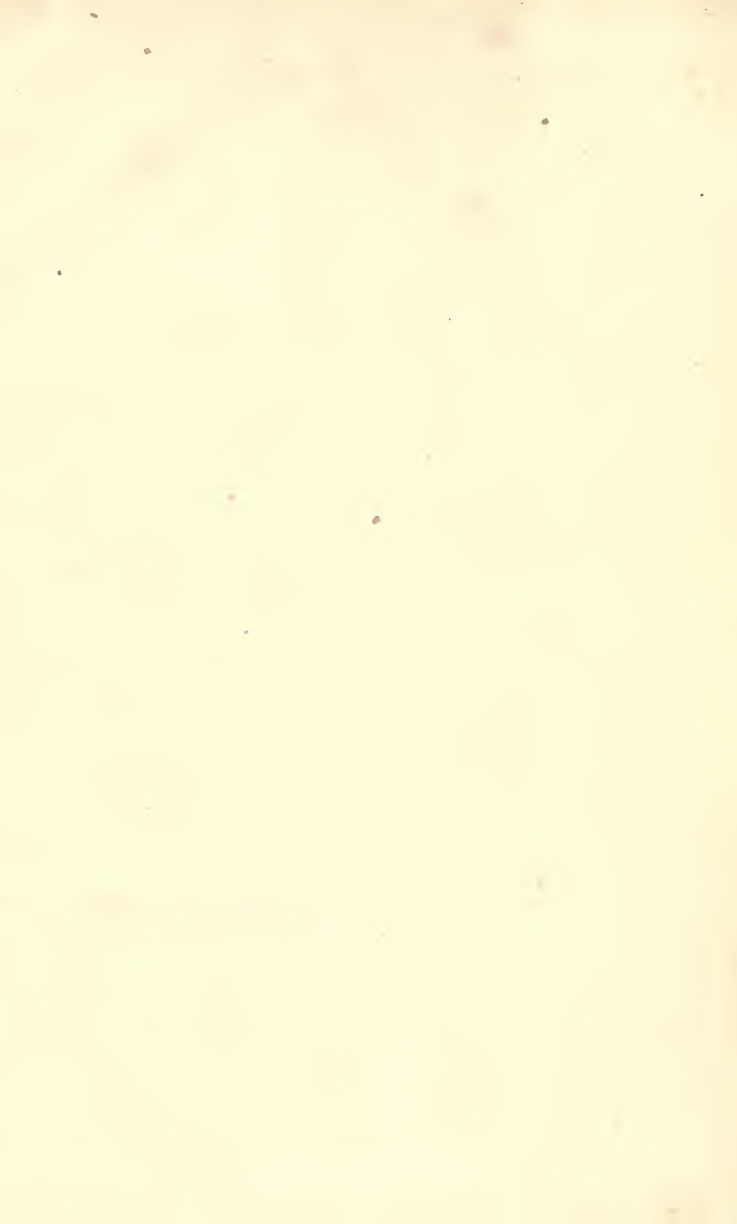
"The 'Theory and Practice of Teaching,' by D. P. Page, is one of the best books of the kind I have ever met with. In it the theory and practice of the teacher's duties are clearly explained and happily combined. The style is easy and familiar, and the suggestions it contains are plain, practical, and to the point. To teachers especially it will furnish very important aid in discharging the duties of their high and responsible profession."—*Roger S. Howard, Superintendent of Common Schools, Orange Co., Vt.*

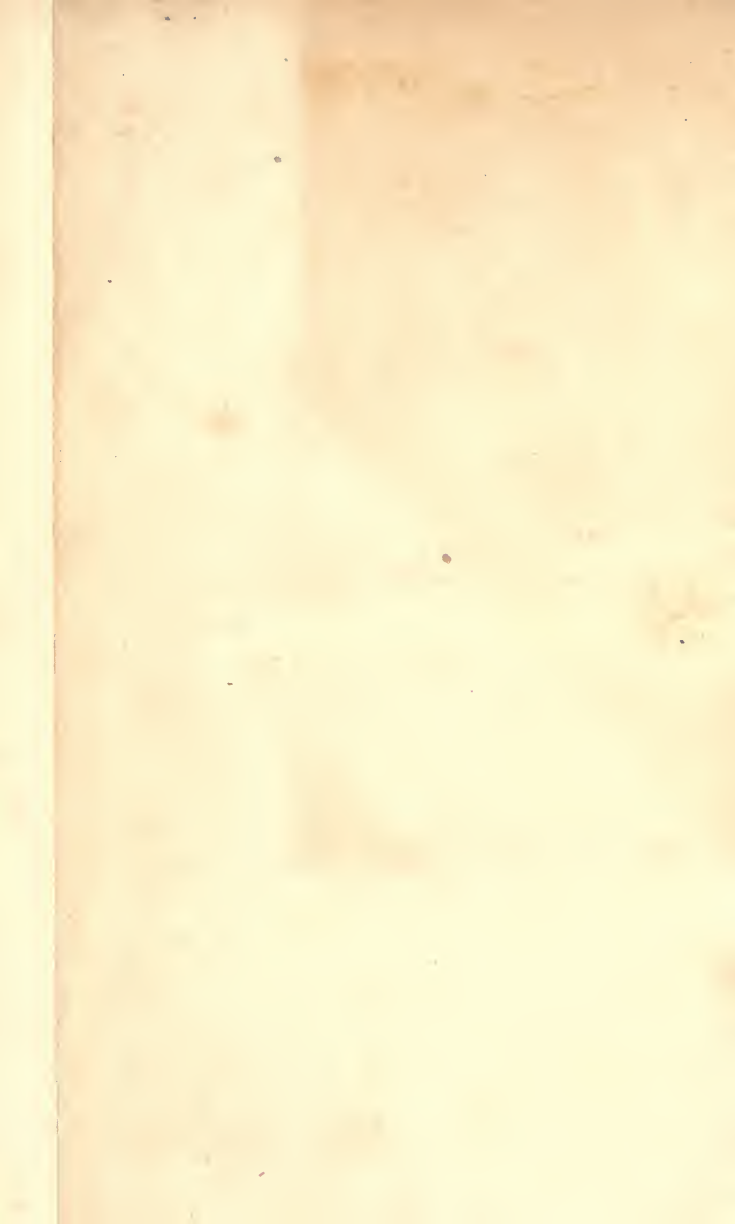
---



















14 DAY USE  
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED  
**LOAN DEPT.**

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or  
on the date to which renewed.  
Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

2 May 62  
**ICLF (N)**

**REC'D LD**

**MAY 16 1962**

**REC'D CIRC DEPT**

**JUN 23 '74**

**FEB 21 1967 6 0**

**DEC 14 2000**

**MAR 16 67-11 AM**

**REC'D LD**

**APR 21 1974 4 7**

**LIBRARY USE JUN 13 '80**

**REC. CIR. JUN 13 '80**

**MAY 08 2000**

YB 20638

9800 ?  
Willard

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

